WORKING PEOPLE OF THE WHOLE WORLD, UNITE!
CONTENTS

LET US RISE UP FOR TERRITORIAL INTEGRITY AND NATIONAL REUNIFICATION

New Year Address to the Whole Nation, January 1, 1949.................................1

PARTY MEMBERS MUST STUDY HARD

Talk to Members of the Party Cell at Samhwa, Sain Sub-county,
Sunchon County, South Phyongan Province, January 5, 1949 .........................12

ON IMPROVING THE WORK OF THE MANGYONGDAE SCHOOL FOR BEREAVED FAMILIES OF REVOLUTIONARIES

Concluding Speech at a Meeting of the Political Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of North Korea, January 22, 1949 ......................19

THE EXECUTION OF THE TWO-YEAR NATIONAL ECONOMIC PLAN IS A MATERIAL GUARANTEE FOR NATIONAL REUNIFICATION

Speech at the Second Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly
of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, February 1, 1949 ......................26

ON IMPROVING AND STRENGTHENING THE WORK OF PARTY ORGANIZATIONS

Concluding Speech at the Fifth Meeting of the Central Committee
of the Workers’ Party of North Korea, February 13, 1949 .................................42

1. On Strengthening Party Organizational Work .................................................44

2. On Strengthening Party Ideological Education..............................................49
3. On Tightening Party Guidance in the Work of Economic Construction .................. 53

4. On Improving the Work of the United Front and Strengthening
   Guidance to Social Organizations ............................................................................. 59

ON THE TASKS OF INTERIOR SERVICE PERSONNEL

Speech at a Meeting of Senior Officials of All Units
under the Ministry of the Interior, February 15, 1949 .................................................. 62

ON IMPROVING THE COLLEGIATE INSTRUCTION
OF SOCIAL SCIENCE SUBJECTS

Concluding Speech at a Meeting of the Presidium of the Central
Committee of the Workers’ Party of North Korea, April 18, 1949 ................................. 72

DON’T GIVE UP EVEN AN INCH OF LAND TO THE ENEMY

Instruction to the Cadres of the Third Security Brigade under the Security
Bureau of the Ministry of the Interior, May 10, 1949 .................................................. 79

WHAT POLITICAL PARTIES AND SOCIAL ORGANIZATIONS
SHOULD DO IN CONNECTION WITH THE FORMATION OF
THE DEMOCRATIC FRONT FOR THE REUNIFICATION
OF KOREA

Speech at the 37th Session of the Central Committee of the Democratic
National United Front of North Korea, May 16, 1949 .................................................. 83

ON THE FORMATION OF THE DEMOCRATIC FRONT
FOR THE REUNIFICATION OF KOREA

Report at the Sixth Meeting of the Central Committee
of the Workers’ Party of North Korea, June 11, 1949 .................................................. 92

ON THE MERGER OF THE WORKERS’ PARTIES OF NORTH
AND SOUTH KOREA INTO THE WORKERS’ PARTY OF KOREA

Report to the Joint Plenary Meeting of the Central Committees
of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea, June 30, 1949 .......................... 100
1. The Historical Necessity of Merging the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea .................................................................................................................. 101

2. The Immediate Task Before Our Party ........................................................................ 111

CONCLUDING SPEECH AT THE JOINT PLENARY MEETING OF THE CENTRAL COMMITTEES OF THE WORKERS’ PARTIES OF NORTH AND SOUTH KOREA

June 30, 1949........................................................................................................................................... 117

ON EXECUTING STATE LAWS THOROUGHLY AND OBSERVING STATE SECRETS STRICTLY

Concluding Speech at the 20th Plenary Meeting of the Cabinet of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, July 12, 1949......................................................... 123
1. On Thorough Execution of State Laws......................................................................................... 123
2. On Strict Observance of State Secrets......................................................................................... 127

LET US CARRY OUT THE TWO-YEAR NATIONAL ECONOMIC PLAN VICTORIOUSLY

Speech at the Fourth Meeting of Managers of Factories and Enterprises under the Ministry of Industry, July 19, 1949......................................................................................... 130

LET US FIRMLY DEFEND THE PEOPLE’S DEMOCRATIC SYSTEM BY THE LAW

Speech at a Meeting of the Chief Prosecutors of Provincial, City and County Prosecutor’s Offices, July 20, 1949........................................................................................................ 142

LET US STRENGTHEN TACTICAL TRAINING

Speech to Officers Who Took Part in a Tactical Exercise of the Infantry Battalion Held at the First Central Military Academy, July 20, 1949................................................................. 154

FOR IMPROVING THE WORK OF STATE CROP AND STOCK FARMS AND DISPLAYING THE ADVANTAGES OF THE STATE ECONOMY
Concluding Speech at a Meeting of the Officials of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry and State Crop and Stock Farms, July 25, 1949 ................. 158

THE PEOPLE’S ARMY MUST DEVELOP INTO A MODERN REGULAR ARMY

Speech at the Meeting of the Officers of Unit No. 655 of the Korean People’s Army, July 29, 1949 ................................................................. 165

ON THE MANIFESTO REGARDING THE MEASURES FOR THE PEACEFUL REUNIFICATION OF THE COUNTRY

Talk with the Press Corps from Central Newspapers, August 2, 1949 ......................... 183

LET US FURTHER IMPROVE THE COMBAT READINESS AND FIGHTING POWER OF THE UNIT

Talk with the Soldiers of Unit No. 238 of the Korean People’s Army, August 26, 1949 ................................................................. 187

LET US TRAIN COMPETENT AGRONOMISTS IN GREATER NUMBERS

Talk with the Teaching Staff and Students of the Wonsan Agricultural College, August 30, 1949 ................................................................. 192

TO DEFEND THE WATERS OF THE COUNTRY IMPREGNABLY

Talk with the Workers of the Wonsan Shipyard and Naval Servicemen at the Site of Building Patrol Ship No. 41, August 30, 1949 ......................... 198

THE FIRST ANNIVERSARY OF THE FOUNDING OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA

Report to the Fourth Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, September 9, 1949 ...................... 201

YOU SHOULD BECOME THE PEOPLE’S ARMY COMMANDERS WELL PREPARED MILITARILY AND POLITICALLY

Speech at a Banquet Given on the Occasion of the Third Graduation Ceremony of the First Central Military Academy, October 2, 1949 ..................... 223
ON MAKING SUFFICIENT PREPARATIONS
FOR THE ENFORCEMENT OF UNIVERSAL
COMPULSORY PRIMARY EDUCATION

Talk to Officials of the Ministry of Education, October 6, 1949 ........................................229

THE PRESENT SITUATION AND THE IMMEDIATE
TASKS OF THE PEOPLE’S ARMY

Speech to Students of the Infantry Commanders’
Training Course at the First Central Military Academy,
October 27, 1949 ................................................................................................................236

WE MUST MAKE WEAPONS BY OUR OWN
EFFORTS TO ARM OURSELVES

Talk to Representatives of Factory No. 65, October 31, 1949 .................................................245

CHANGED CIRCUMSTANCES AND CONDITIONS
DEMAND A NEW WORK ATTITUDE

Speech at the Conference of Economic and Trade Union
Activists from the Industrial Field, November 19, 1949 ..........................................................249

CONCLUDING SPEECH AT THE SECOND PLENARY
MEETING OF THE CENTRAL COMMITTEE OF THE
WORKERS’ PARTY OF KOREA

December 18, 1949 ..................................................................................................................264

TOWARDS EXPANDING AND STRENGTHENING THE AIR FORCE

Talk with Servicemen at the Graduation Ceremony of Fliers
and Ground Crew of Unit No. 867 of the Korean People’s
Army, December 18, 1949 .......................................................................................................271

SOME TASKS BEFORE WRITERS AND ARTISTS
AT THE PRESENT TIME

Instructions to Writers and Artists, December 22, 1949 ..........................................................275
BE CADRES EQUIPPED WITH ADVANCED SCIENCE, TECHNOLOGY AND PATRIOTISM

Speech at the First Graduation of the Faculty of Physics and Mathematics of Kim Il Sung University, December 28, 1949 ........................................... 285

ADDRESS TO ALL THE PEOPLE OF THE REPUBLIC ON THE OCCASION OF THE NEW YEAR 1950

January 1, 1950 .................................................................................................................. 292

LET US UNITE ALL THE PATRIOTIC, DEMOCRATIC FORCES FOR THE GREAT CAUSE OF NATIONAL REUNIFICATION

Speech at the Third Congress of the Chondoist Chongu Party of North Korea, January 19, 1950 ................................................................. 298

TOWARDS A FURTHER DEVELOPMENT OF AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERY

Speech at the Joint Meeting of Leading Officials in the Fields of Agriculture, Forestry and Fishery, January 25, 1950 ................................. 305

ON SETTING UP FARM MACHINE HIRE STATIONS

Concluding Speech at the Fourth Plenary Meeting of the Cabinet of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, February 8, 1950 ......................... 316

1. On Setting Up State Farm Machine Hire Stations ....................................................... 316

2. On Carrying Through the 1950 National Economic Development Plan ................. 318

TASKS BEFORE THOSE WHO WORK AT NONFERROUS ORE MINES IN THE CARRYING OUT OF THE TWO-YEAR NATIONAL ECONOMIC PLAN

Speech at the Consultative Meeting of Managers and Model Workers from Major Nonferrous Ore Mines, February 14, 1950 .............................. 325

TASKS BEFORE THE PEOPLE IN THE FIELD OF TRANSPORT IN FULFILLING THE TWO-YEAR NATIONAL ECONOMIC PLAN
Speech at a Joint Meeting of Employees under the Ministry of Transport and Activists of the Trade Union of Transport Workers, 
February 21, 1950 ..................................................................................................................335

ON RECTIFYING THE DEFECTS REVEALED IN THE FULFILMENT OF THE NATIONAL ECONOMIC PLAN

Speech at the Fifth Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, February 28, 1950 .......................341

THE PRESENT SITUATION AND THE TASKS BEFORE THE SECURITY FORCES

Speech at a Meeting of Officers of the Security Forces under the Ministry of the Interior, March 14, 1950 ........................................................................349

ON REORGANIZING THE SYSTEM OF GUIDANCE AND MANAGEMENT OF LOCAL INDUSTRY

Concluding Speech at a Meeting of the Organizing Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, March 24, 1950 .........................376

1. On Remodelling the System of Guidance and Management of State-Owned Local Factories ...........................................................................................................378

2. On Reorganizing the System of Guidance and Management of the Cooperatives .........................................................................................................382

ON INCREASING THE PRODUCTION OF NONFERROUS METALS

Concluding Speech at a Small Meeting of the Cabinet of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, March 28, 1950 ..................................................387

THE KOREAN PEOPLE’S STRUGGLE FOR THE BUILDING OF A UNIFIED, INDEPENDENT DEMOCRATIC STATE

May 1950 ..................................................................................................................................394

1...............................................................................................................................................394

2...............................................................................................................................................396

3...............................................................................................................................................407
BE WELL ACQUAINTED WITH YOUR WEAPONS AND EQUIPMENT

Talk to Soldiers of the First Company, First Battalion, Unit No. 603 of the Korean People’s Army, May 23, 1950 ..............................................415

LET US STEP UP COMBAT PREPARATIONS

Talk to Soldiers of Unit No. 749 of the Korean People’s Army, June 5, 1950 .................................................................420

THE ACUTE SITUATION PREVAILING IN OUR COUNTRY AND THE IMMEDIATE TASKS BEFORE INTERIOR SERVICE ORGANIZATIONS

Speech to the Directors of Provincial Interior Service Departments, June 22, 1950 ........................................................................423
Dear fellow countrymen,

Greeting the new year of 1949, I would like to offer honour and best wishes on behalf of the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea to all the people of the Republic who achieved splendid results last year in the struggle for the building of an independent, sovereign state.

The year 1948 was one in which the most brilliant achievements were attained in the annals of our nation’s struggle for reunification and independence. Last year we were not able to reunify the whole country and win complete independence and sovereignty. Nevertheless, we prepared bases and conditions for achieving national reunification and the building of a completely independent and sovereign state in the not too distant future.

Last year we enacted the Constitution of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, which legally consolidates all the successes achieved in north Korea during the three years since liberation through the democratic reforms and construction, and which indicates to all the people the road our country has to take.

Last April here in Pyongyang the Joint Conference of Representatives of Political Parties and Public Organizations in North
and South Korea was held. This move shattered all the US imperialist
and reactionary rumours about the so-called inability of Koreans to
reunify their country and build an independent, sovereign state by their
own efforts. The meeting demonstrated to the whole world that the
opposite is the case.

At the conference, representatives with different political points of
view strongly demanded the withdrawal of foreign troops from our
territory in order to tide over the crisis of national division prevailing in
our country. They unanimously declared that they would oppose and
condemn the UN Temporary Commission on Korea, an instrument to
carry out the US imperialist policy of colonial enslavement, that they
would reject as traitorous the May 10 separate elections to be held
under the manipulation of the US military government authorities and
would never recognize any “government” to be set up as a result of the
“elections”. They also declared that they would never approve or be
bound by any “treaty” or “agreement” to be concluded by such a
“government”.

Upholding the decision of the April north-south joint conference,
the Korean people both in the north and the south, rose up in a heroic
struggle to save the nation. They rejected the ruinous May 10 separate
elections, thoroughly isolating the treacherous puppet government
cobbled together by the nefarious imperialists. We established the
DPRK through the victorious elections of the Supreme People’s
Assembly in which 77.52 per cent of the south Korean electorate and
99.97 per cent of the north Korean electorate participated. This clearly
illustrates that south Korea’s treacherous puppet government is
completely isolated from all the Korean people, whereas our Republic
enjoys full support from the people in both north and south Korea.

In 1948 the Constitution of the DPRK was promulgated in our
country and the Central Government of the Republic established. The
Soviet Union, Czechoslovakia, Poland, Romania, Hungary, Bulgaria
and the Mongolian People’s Republic recognized our Republic. This is
a most splendid achievement in our nation’s history of struggle, and a
glorious victory for us Korean people.
The Central Government of the Republic is composed of representatives of north and south Korean political parties and social organizations representing all strata of the Korean people; it is a genuine central organ of power that represents and fights for the interests of all the Korean people. After its establishment a grandiose nationwide movement was launched throughout north and south Korea to celebrate the birth of the Republic and to support the Central Government.

The people in the northern half of Korea celebrated the establishment of the Republic and expressed their firm resolve to support the Central Government by starting an all-people, patriotic nation-building movement to consolidate further the successes they had won in the democratic reforms, build up the political and economic foundations of the Republic and exceed the targets set in the national economic plan for 1948.

By holding aloft the banner of the Republic the people in the southern half of Korea are carrying on a heroic popular resistance to crush south Korea’s puppet government in spite of the enemy’s monstrous repression and massacre. The popular resistance and the mutinies of the “National Defence Army” units in Ryosu, Sunchon, Kurye, Taegu, Mt. Odae, Mt. Jiri, Mt. Halla and elsewhere in south Korea showed the people’s strong determination to fight for final victory in order to defend the Republic and bring about territorial integrity.

Thus in 1948, though they failed to win territorial integrity and complete independence and sovereignty, our people carried on a great, glorious struggle for the creation of an independent democratic state. Thus they laid solid foundations which will enable them to accomplish the cause of reunification of north and south in the near future and fly the banner of the Republic over our land with its long history.

Dear fellow countrymen, brothers and sisters,

Following the proclamation of the DPRK and the establishment of the Central Government, the Soviet Government, upon a request made by the Supreme People’s Assembly at its First Session, decided to withdraw its armed forces from our territory by the end of December 1948. This decision was carried out completely by December 26. On
that day the people in the northern half of Korea gave a warm send-off to the last group of Soviet troops, leaving by train. Thus the withdrawal of the Soviet armed forces was complete and final.

However, the southern half is still occupied by US troops and, what is even more sinister, the Japanese forces, our enemies of long standing, are trying to gain a foothold again. To weaken the Korean people’s powerful struggle for the withdrawal of US troops and to hoodwink them, the US imperialists are clamouring, of late, about the “removal to Japan” and “partial withdrawal” of US occupation forces from south Korea. This is nothing but an evil manoeuvre to deceive the Korean people, because they are afraid of the Korean people’s powerful struggle for US troops’ withdrawal. The Korean people are firmly resolved to fight more fiercely, until all US troops are forced out of our territory.

Why is it that US troops are unwilling to leave our country, hampering the reunification of north and south ardently desired by the Korean people and desperately trying to stay on in south Korea on a long-term basis? In a nutshell, it is because the US imperialists want to subjugate the southern half of our country for ever and to drive our nation into colonial slavery again by manipulating south Korea’s traitorous reactionary puppet government which has a concentration of pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation.

The US authorities and pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation in south Korea have been shaken by the Korean people’s increasing demand for the simultaneous withdrawal of US troops following the Soviet troops’ withdrawal from north Korea, and are engaged in all sorts of ruses to cook up lame excuses in order to keep their troops in our territory permanently. The quislings within south Korea’s puppet government whose lives are protected only under US army auspices are spreading rumours about “southern expedition”, “the People’s Army’s invasion of the south” and “civil war”. They are desperately begging for the permanent stationing of US troops even by holding a “rally to rouse the whole nation for the prolongation of the withdrawal of US troops”.

While begging foreign troops to stay in our territory, they are brazenly and blatantly exclaiming that they are “striving for complete
independence and sovereignty” and “striving to build an independent state free from foreign interference”. These actions are being done to deceive our people.

With a view to “legalizing” the prolonged stationing of their army in south Korea, the US authorities again submitted the Korean question to the Third Session of the UN General Assembly and coerced this body to adopt an unlawful resolution on the question.

At the Third Session of the UN General Assembly, just as at the Second Session, the US delegation rejected the participation of the genuine representative of the Korean people in the discussion, by setting their hand-raising machine in motion. This was done because the US imperialists feared that the Korean people’s real representative would expose to world public opinion the true nature of their colonial enslavement policy carried out in the southern half of our country over the past three years. So the US delegation disguised as the Korean people’s “representative” a person belonging to the south Korean puppet government which supplicates the presence of foreign troops on our native soil, standing in complete isolation from all the Korean people and only maintaining life under the protection of the US bayonet. They made sure that with his presence at the session the UN General Assembly adopted the “resolution” “legalizing” the prolonged stationing of US troops in south Korea.

Just like the previous unlawful resolution, the one adopted at the Third UN General Assembly Session without the participation of the rightful representative of the Korean people will be foiled as it will be strongly opposed and rejected. The Korean people will not recognize or be bound by any resolution illegally adopted without the participation of their representative.

The pro-Japanese elements, traitors to the nation and other quislings in south Korea are frenetically propagandizing the unlawful resolution of the Third UN General Assembly Session and the forthcoming arrival in south Korea of another UN Commission on Korea which is to be formed in accordance with this resolution. This commission will be almost the same as the former UN Temporary Commission on Korea, the only alteration
being the exclusion of a Canadian representative from its body. The pro-Japanese collaborators, traitors and other reactionaries are boasting about this unlawful resolution in a frantic attempt to appease and pacify the popular feeling of unrest in south Korea and continue their present precarious lives, isolated from the rest of the people.

No amount of bragging or false information, however, will be able to deceive the heroic south Korean people, who have risen up in the save-the-nation struggle for the country’s complete independence, sovereignty and territorial integrity under the unfurled banner of the People’s Republic, or hide the treacherous crimes of the traitorous puppet government which is selling out the country and the nation.

The Korean people are well aware of the fact that while the UNTCOK has been utilized as a lever by the US imperialists to divide our country and colonize south Korea, the UNCOK will be used only as a tool of aggression to legalize the prolonged presence of US troops in south Korea and make our country their permanent colony through the ROK-US Military Agreement, ROK-US Agreement on Economic Assistance and other country-selling agreements.

In November 1947 when the Second Session of the UN General Assembly was sending the UNTCOK the US imperialists talked about the “withdrawal of foreign troops at the earliest practicable date”. Yet they have not withdrawn their troops from south Korea though more than a year has elapsed. Now, when the UNCOK is being dispatched, they are trying to keep their troops over a prolonged period, clamouring that “foreign troops will be withdrawn at the first possible opportunity”. But the Korean people are very knowledgeable about this deceptive scheme of the US imperialists.

It is ridiculous, indeed, that the puppet nations themselves instruments of US imperialist aggression, which have nothing to do with our country and people, and the Chinese Guomindang “government” whose fate hangs in the balance are boasting about their efforts to help mediate on our behalf for national unity.

It is the Korean people and nobody else who can build our country into a completely independent and sovereign state and bring about
territorial integrity, and we will positively achieve the country’s reunification and full independence by our own efforts.

Dear fellow countrymen,

What is to be done if we are to build an independent, sovereign state and bring about our territorial integrity in the near future?

All the Korean people must unite more firmly around the Government of the DPRK and wage a fierce save-the-nation struggle for territorial integrity.

The people in the northern half of Korea must channel all manpower and material forces to further consolidate and promote the successes achieved in the democratic reforms over the past three years since liberation, to strengthen the political and economic foundations of the Republic and to cement the democratic base in the Republic.

The new year of 1949 begins with the inauguration of our Two-Year National Economic Plan, which should be fulfilled by the end of 1950. This will enable us to attain and even surpass by far the highest level of production before liberation in all spheres of our national economy, so that the economic basis of the DPRK will be consolidated further and the people’s material and cultural standards of living will rise quickly.

We must create new branches of industry such as the machine-building industry, so as to guarantee the self-reliance in the development of our industries. Particularly, we must satisfy the people’s vital demands by more than doubling the production facilities in the textile industry and other spheres of light industry.

In 1950 the gross output value of the state industries will double that of 1948, and the volume of production in the key industries such as the ferrous-metal, machine-building and chemical industries will increase remarkably.

In light industry we will produce, among other items, rayon fabrics, new products—1,200,000 metres in 1949 and 6,000,000 metres in 1950— and in 1950 rayon yarn will more than treble and cotton fabrics more than double in production as against the 1948 figures.

Agriculture will also make great strides. By 1950 the sown areas will have expanded considerably, out of which the area of rice fields
will increase by 5.5 per cent. In the state investment sector 25 irrigation projects will be completed in 1949 and 18 in 1950, so that an additional area of over 8,200 hectares in 1949 and over 7,200 hectares in 1950 will come under irrigation. As a result, the gross grain output will increase much more than in 1948.

We envisage great progress and expansion in transport, communications, construction, public health and all other spheres of the national economy.

In the educational and cultural fields we must complete all preparations for starting compulsory primary education in 1950. We must build a great number of primary and junior middle schools and training of large numbers of teachers must be taken in hand for schools of different levels through normal and teachers training colleges, normal schools and teachers training centres.

In order to raise the workers’ technical qualifications and train skilled workers we must expand the network of technical schools at workplaces and short-term training centres.

When the people in the northern half of Korea have victoriously fulfilled the Two-Year National Economic Plan by their concentrated efforts, a stronger economic foundation will be laid for the building of a fully independent, sovereign state. The country will prosper culturally and the people’s material and cultural standards of living will rise further.

Unless the economic and cultural foundations of the Republic are firm, we cannot build a completely independent and sovereign state or free our nation of its economic and cultural backwardness, the pernicious legacy of prolonged Japanese imperialist colonial rule.

The workers in the northern half of Korea must ensure the prosperity of the Republic and expedite territorial integrity by carrying on a mass struggle for increased production at factories, mines and railway transport to exceed the targets of the Two-Year National Economic Plan which aims at laying a rock-firm economic basis for the Republic.

The peasants in the northern half of Korea should effectively carry out the Two-Year National Economic Plan for the development of
agriculture to produce more food and raw materials for industry and build a strong food supply base for the Republic, so as to contribute actively to the save-the-nation struggle to expedite territorial integrity and build a completely independent, sovereign state.

Those engaged in the spheres of science, culture, arts and public health in the north must devote all their energies and talents to eliminate our country’s cultural backwardness which is the direct result of Japanese imperialist colonial rule. They must speedily develop science and culture and improve health services for the people, thus promoting their welfare, serving the country and people, and build up the Republic’s scientific, cultural, art and health centres.

The students and youth in the northern half of Korea must be trained in advanced science and technology. They must be imbued with a patriotic, democratic idea of working faithfully for the country and people. This will enable them to become competent cadres and the future masters of the nation.

The People’s Army must be always ready to defend the victories already won by the people in the northern half of Korea. It must be ready to repulse the aggressive forces which attempt to recolonize our country, crush the reactionary forces which try to sell out the country and people and guarantee our nation’s territorial integrity and security.

All the officers and men must acquire advanced military skills and be well versed in handling various kinds of weapons. The officers must be skilled commanders and the men good soldiers, so that our People’s Army will be a disciplined and organized force with great combat efficiency.

The interior service personnel must strive to defend firmly the victories and democratic order already achieved by the people in the northern half of Korea, securely protect the property of the state and people and opportuneily expose and crush all attempts and plots of the reactionary forces which betray the country and nation.

Fellow countrymen in the southern half of Korea,

The Central Government of the Republic is well aware of the miserable conditions you are in under the rule of the US imperialists and their lackeys, the pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation.
The peasants in the southern half are suffering from poverty and hunger because of the feudal landownership system and the harsh exploitation and plundering by the landlords. The workers have lost their jobs and are starving and trembling in cold in the streets; the women are subjected to inhuman maltreatment, contempt and insult, deprived of any human rights or liberty.

The Central Government of the Republic firmly believes that the day will definitely come in the not too distant future when the peasants in the southern half, like those in the north, will become owners of land receiving the benefits of the agrarian reform, the workers will enjoy the benefits of the Labour Law and the women, the benefits of the Law on Sex Equality so as to become the full-fledged masters of their country.

The heroic struggles fought by the people in the southern half for the last three years since liberation to win the country’s reunification, complete independence and sovereignty and their achievements will reflect their glory for ever and all the Korean people will not forget their heroic bloody battles.

Today the people in the southern half of Korea are faced with the task of waging the save-the-nation struggle more extensively, united closely under the banner of the DPRK, to achieve the territorial integrity, independence and sovereignty of the country.

Our fellow countrymen in the southern half of Korea must fight more fiercely for the withdrawal of US troops from our soil, and expose the true colours of the UNCOOK which lends validity to the US imperialist policy of colonial enslavement. They must bring to light all the country-selling agreements concluded by the puppet government, reject and obliterate all its “laws” and traitorous “administrative policies”. Our compatriots in the south, in coordination with the patriotic mutinies of the “National Defence Army”, must wage the save-the-nation struggle more vigorously to overthrow the treacherous puppet government and achieve territorial integrity and the country’s complete independence and sovereignty.

Dear fellow countrymen, brothers and sisters,

The pro-Japanese collaborators and traitors to the nation in south
Korea are showing their true colours more and more in the open. Those who were faithful lackeys of Japanese imperialism, oppressing and exploiting the Korean people in the past, have now become agents of US imperialism and, with its backing, are carrying on their abominable criminal activities. Some of the south Korean quislings call for a fratricidal war, clamouring for a “northern expedition” like a puppy who is not afraid of a tiger.

These quislings who are isolated from the people and are selling the country now advocate a fratricidal war. But before long they will be tried and executed by all the Korean people rallied under the banner of the Republic. They will be made to disappear once and for all from this country which has a long history as a single nation.

In spite of the frantic manoeuvres of the international forces of reaction and traitors at home, the wheels of history move inexorably towards a victory of the people, a victory of truth and democracy.

The Korean nation is one, so are our people. Therefore, they will never be divided by anyone, no matter how frantically these attempts are made.

The Central Government of the Republic is convinced that all the Korean people’s grand save-the-nation struggle for reunification, freedom and independence will frustrate the US imperialist policy of colonializing our country, overthrow the traitorous puppet government, the den of the pro-Japanese elements and traitors in south Korea who are selling out the country and nation, and will bring about territorial integrity and complete national independence and sovereignty in the near future.

Let all of us Korean people unite more firmly around the Central Government of the Republic and rise up in the nationwide struggle for territorial integrity and the building of a fully independent and sovereign state under the banner of the Republic.

Long live the reunified Korean people!

Long live the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea!
PARTY MEMBERS MUST STUDY HARD

Talk to Members of the Party Cell at
Samhwa, Sain Sub-county, Sunchon County,
South Phyongan Province
January 5, 1949

Today I attended the study session of the Samhwa Party cell and observed how the Party members were studying. This session clarified to me that the Samhwa Party cell has so far made great efforts to intensify studies among its members. The Party members’ zeal to study is high and their level of knowledge is quite adequate.

At today’s session you studied the significance of the democratic reforms. We can say that the quality of the lecture and the Party members’ debate was considerably high. In a short period—a little more than three years—after liberation our rural Party members, particularly, women members, have made much progress. The ri Women’s Union chairman did extremely well in the debate on the significance of the agrarian reform. In the past, our women were mistreated and humiliated both at home and in public, shackled to feudal conventions. And now, they have become Workers’ Party members and take part in political study debates. This fact in itself is a strong indication of how far they have progressed.

Party members should not only work well but also study hard. Only when they gain knowledge can they look ahead and fight on confidently.

For 15 years the anti-Japanese guerrillas steadily fought Japanese imperialism and attained victory in the face of great hardships. They
had to push their way through deep snows and cross countless steep mountains; they had to fight grim battles every day with the army and police of the Japanese imperialists, who were armed to the teeth. Our soldiers had no warm shelter and lacked clothes and food. But they always lived optimistically and fought bravely.

What, then, enabled them to have such conviction and courage? The reason is that in spite of the severe handicaps facing them, they studied hard and grasped the righteousness of their revolutionary cause and looked confidently ahead to the day of victory. The greater the hardships, the more they studied, and this invigorated and encouraged them. Our Party members must study harder if they are to fight on with a firm conviction of victory, just as the anti-Japanese guerrillas had done previously.

Only when Party members study hard can they correctly analyse and solve any problems that arise and lead the masses. They are the vanguard fighters of the working masses. If they are to play the vanguard fighters’ role properly, they must study more than anybody else and raise their political, ideological and professional levels. When they attain considerable knowledge, they can then educate and guide others.

Having Party members intensify their studies is essential also to the qualitative consolidation of Party ranks.

As our Party has developed into a mass party and its ranks have grown rapidly, there are quite a few members whose political and ideological attainments are low. Raising their political and ideological levels is a major guarantee in strengthening the Party organizationally and ideologically. We must intensify Party studies so as to enhance in a positive manner Party members’ political and ideological levels.

The situation prevailing in our country at present and the revolutionary tasks before us urgently demand that Party members intensify their studies.

Since the Syngman Rhee puppet government was rigged up last year by the US imperialists, they have intensified their colonial enslavement policy in south Korea. They are also making frenetic
military preparations to invade the northern half of Korea. In this situation our people are confronted with the heavy responsibilities of building up the democratic base in the north, politically, economically and militarily, and waging a valiant struggle to attain a unified independent, sovereign state.

In order to carry out our important tasks successfully, all Party members must study harder and perform their duties satisfactorily.

Now then, what should the Party members study and how?

First of all, they must study our Party’s lines and policies well.

The Party’s lines and policies indicate the road to the building of a new, democratic Korea and set forth the tasks to be carried out by our Party members and the people plus the ways and means to implement them. They are the sole guiding compass for all our activities. Only when Party members clearly understand Party lines and policies, can they properly carry out the building of the nation and efficaciously perform their duties the way the Party requires.

At today’s study session, one of our comrades stated that in order to drive US imperialists out of south Korea and reunify the country, we must give a telling blow to the south. This shows that he has not really studied our Party’s policy of national reunification. Our Party’s documents clearly explain the policy of peacefully reunifying the country by the Korean people’s own efforts and the specific means for its implementation. He is unaware of our Party’s policy because he has not studied it.

You must bear in mind that if you do not study the Party lines and policies, you will talk and act in the same manner, contrary to the Party’s intentions. Therefore, Party members must study them extensively and deeply.

We must know, and know well, particularly the document of our Second Party Congress, the 20-Point Platform and the Political Programme of the Government of the Republic published at the First Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly. Thus all Party members will have a clear idea of the Party’s lines and policies on building a unified and prosperous, democratic and fully independent, sovereign
state, and must make every endeavour to carry them through.

If you are to be well aware of the Party’s lines and policies you should regularly read the Party newspaper and other gazettes.

The Party newspaper reflects the lines and policies set forth by the Party for each period. Its leading articles are, in reality, in line with the Party’s directives. Therefore, Party members are duty bound to read them, as well as peruse other gazettes carefully. If you read the newspapers regularly, you will be well informed of what is happening here at home and abroad.

Party members should not only deeply study the Party’s lines and policies but also study agro-techniques and farming methods in greater detail.

This year we have launched the carrying out of the Two-Year National Economic Plan which is of tremendous significance in consolidating the democratic base in the northern half of Korea and laying material foundations for national reunification. During the Two-Year Plan the agricultural spheres have the weighty task of increasing production quickly, so that the northern half of Korea will have more than enough food and also be able to supply the fast-developing industries with an adequate amount of raw materials. If the rural Party members are to carry out this task successfully, they must not only have greater loyalty to the Party and country but also be in possession of technical and economic knowledge and have professional abilities. The rural Party members, unaware of agro-techniques and farming methods, cannot farm properly and, however hard they may try to be faithful to the Party at heart, they are not able to fulfil the Party’s tasks opportune and correctly.

They should make steady efforts to acquire agricultural knowledge and advanced farming techniques and should be zealous in attending the training courses to master these techniques. Thereafter, they will be able to actively apply advanced methods in farming.

If Party members are to increase their knowledge, they should rid themselves of formalistic tendencies and study intensively.

To study intensively means to grasp deeply the essence and
contents of a problem and master and apply the solutions learned through study in one’s actual work and life.

Party members study for the purpose of equipping themselves with qualifications as Party members and contributing actively to nation-building. Therefore, they should study any subject substantially and clearly understand what they have learnt. No matter what efforts you make, it will be pointless to study a subject cursorily and gain just a smattering of knowledge. Such knowledge cannot but be superficial.

The debate by some of you comrades here at today’s session indicates that they do not study properly. A while ago, when the significance of the democratic reforms was debated, a comrade was asked if there were any people who did not like the reforms, and he replied that no one dislikes them. This suggests that he has not gone into the democratic reforms deeply enough. People, who were given land, naturally approved of the democratic reforms, but there is no reason why the landlords and capitalists who were deprived of their lands or factories should approve of these measures. At every opportunity they try to recover the lands and factories from us and destroy the people’s power which gave land to the peasants. The landlords bitterly hate to see the peasants till this land distributed among them and lead happy and contented lives. You comrades must not just support the democratic reforms, but must be aware of the fact that there are those who disapprove of the democratic reforms and sharpen your vigilance of the enemy.

Party members should study well to master all they have learned.

Study should be closely combined with practical activities. It should in no way become study for study’s sake. The more the Party members study, the further they should improve their Party lives and farm work. They must, therefore, conduct their studies in close context with their practical activities, so that they will be a model to the masses in and out of work and render active service in the cause of nation building.

Party members should always study voluntarily. Studies done reluctantly under any supervision cannot be successful.
They should regard studying as their foremost responsibility and study hard of their own accord whether they are supervised or not. They must not fail to attend Party cell study sessions and apply themselves to learn with sincerity. They must also be exemplary in their studies at adult education schools. All Party members must study and study in every spare moment, anywhere, anytime.

The Party cell should regularly guide, assist and supervise its members in their studies. It should give its members definite assignments suited to their qualities and levels of preparedness, and render them active help so that they can carry out the assignments properly. The Party cell should also hold study and reading sessions from time to time and share with each other their good experience which they have accumulated during their studies. The Party cell should frequently arrange round-table talks on politics and assign its committee members and activists to guide and inspect the Party members’ studies regularly.

The Party cell should have a deep concern in raising the role of the lecturers.

Party members’ political and ideological levels depend largely upon the role of the lecturers who are responsible for guiding them in their studies. Only when the lecturers perform their role properly, is it possible to raise Party members’ political and ideological levels quickly and establish good study habits thoroughly.

The Party cell should provide the lecturers with adequate studying materials and make available to them proper working conditions in order that they may make suitable preparations for their lectures. The Party cell should also check the outlines of the lectures in good time and regularly summarize the work of the lecturers and give them active help to enable them to carry out their responsibilities satisfactorily.

The lecturers should give good discourses. Lecturers should not use difficult words or speak in a formal manner or as if they were giving dictation. They should speak in plain words and use specific examples in their lectures, so that Party members can fully understand the contents of the speech. It is important, therefore, to prepare good
lecture plans which are closely related to the actual conditions prevailing in the units concerned.

The lecturers should make sure that a discussion is conducted not by making a formal stilted speech on the contents of the lectures given to the Party members, but by making an informal talk of sorts, linking it with their actual conditions. For example, if the Law on the Agrarian Reform is debated, they should see to it that they deliberate not only on its contents but also discuss the contrast in the peasants’ lives before and after the agrarian reform. Then the Party members can understand matters more clearly.

The lecturers should not confine themselves to giving lectures and merely guiding the debate in study sessions; they should give supplementary lectures to those Party members who have missed study sessions. They should always go among the Party members and give substantial help to those whose scholastic attainments are under par.

If the lecturers are to give proper guidance and assistance to Party members in their studies, they must raise their own levels decisively. Therefore, they must study and study harder than anybody else to steadily raise their political, ideological and professional levels.

I hope you, comrades, will study well and hard in order to effectively carry out the honourable mission of Party members in the struggle for the country’s reunification and the building of a prosperous, democratic and completely independent, sovereign state.
ON IMPROVING THE WORK OF THE MANGYONGDAE SCHOOL FOR BEREAVED FAMILIES OF REVOLUTIONARIES

Concluding Speech at a Meeting of the Political Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of North Korea

January 22, 1949

Improving the work of the Mangyongdae School for Bereaved Families of Revolutionaries is very important in bringing up the children of deceased revolutionaries to be ardent revolutionaries. Hence the necessity of running this school well and conducting its education properly. I have mentioned this at the school and at every given opportunity. However, the report and discussion regarding the school indicate that there are quite a few defects in the work being done at the school.

The Mangyongdae School for Bereaved Families of Revolutionaries is a school set up for the children of the communists and patriots who died while fighting arms in hand against the Japanese imperialist marauders or while working underground. The students who study there are the future pillars of the Korean revolution. As such this school should train them to be indomitable revolutionaries who can carry forward the revolution undaunted by any adversity.

However, the Mangyongdae School for Bereaved Families of Revolutionaries has educated the students in an unprincipled manner. They have been indulging them, and this is not in keeping with the
character of the school and its mission. For example, the school authorities have not allowed the students to repair broken desks and chairs nor do cleaning. It is good discipline for the students to keep their surroundings clean and repair the desks and chairs. I was told that senior officials of the school criticized the teachers for having the students perform cleaning tasks, instead of highly acclaiming and encouraging such good deeds. This is very wrong.

If you indulge these young people because they are parentless, you cannot bring them up to be ardent revolutionaries. The plant that has grown in the field exposed to the weather has a strong stem and is highly resistant, but the one that has grown comfortably in a hothouse is very weak and inert. We can say that the same is true of men. We must not make these precious children of revolutionaries as weak as hothouse plants.

At present the puppet Syngman Rheeites view the fact with great trepidation that these children are being brought up to be revolutionaries. The children are most intent on avenging the deaths of their parents killed by the enemy and most firmly determined to become genuine revolutionaries of Korea to carry forward the work initiated by their fathers and mothers.

If the Mangyongdae School for Bereaved Families of Revolutionaries only indulges these splendid children, just permitting them to read books in the classrooms, they will only make them bookworms and not revolutionaries. We built the school not to train nobles or gentlemen scholars but to train them to be unflinching revolutionaries.

Even in those grim days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle, we opened Children’s Corps schools at our guerrilla bases to rear CC members to be indomitable revolutionary fighters. Among the children who attended these schools there were many sons and daughters of our revolutionary comrades who had fallen in action. The situation was difficult as we were fighting Japanese imperialism. However, we were concerned about their studies and training so that we would in time have reserve forces who would carry on with the Korean revolution. At that time we built large Children’s Corps schools. We managed to
provide the children with school things as well as clothes, footwear and even food.

But we were not permissive in our attitudes towards them. We did not keep them cooped up in a classroom only to study or sing songs. Even in difficult days when the enemy perpetrated “punitive attacks” frequently, we gave the Children’s Corps members military training as well and when the enemy’s “punitive attacks” were heavy we took the young people along with us and taught them how to write and how to use guns.

Once in the early spring of 1936 we stopped in at Maanshan on our way from north Manchuria to Mt. Paektu. At that time there were a few dozens of Children’s Corps members there, who were poorly dressed and ill-fed by the wicked fellows. I was pained, indeed, to see the sad-looking faces of these youngsters who were ragged and starved. I provided them with new clothes procured with the 20 won given me by my mother when I was setting out for the revolutionary struggle and took them along with me.

Since we were fighting a guerrilla warfare, it was a great burden, indeed, to have the children with us. But we did it in order to bring them up into indomitable revolutionary fighters and staunch communists because they were after all the future pillars of the Korean revolution. The best school for the revolutionary is the trial of revolutionary struggle. The Children’s Corps members, who grew up amid revolutionary storms, joined the guerrillas later and all of them fought unflaggingly and courageously against the Japanese imperialist marauders. They became true revolutionaries.

It is a sacred duty and revolutionary obligation for us communists to train the children of the dead revolutionaries to be staunch revolutionaries.

During the days of battle against the Japanese imperialists, our revolutionaries who sacrificed their lives, made their last wish which was to bring up their children as fine revolutionaries. If we fail to bring them up in an upright and sturdy manner, it would not only cause great damage to the revolution but would also make it impossible to carry out the wishes of the revolutionary martyrs.
At present, unlike the days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle, we have every condition and every possibility of bringing these young people up well. We have a true people’s government, good teachers, educational books and excellent school buildings. Therefore, if only the school officials would make an effort, they can train the children to be staunch revolutionaries.

How, then, are we to educate them to become indomitable revolutionaries?

We must first intensify the political and ideological education of the students. This is a prerequisite to arming them firmly with progressive ideas and making true revolutionaries out of them.

The school must intensify the education of the students to arm them closely with our Party’s lines and policies and activate their class consciousness.

Among the students of the Mangyongdae School for Bereaved Families of Revolutionaries there are many who witnessed the heroic death of their parents during battles with the enemy. Therefore, if the school gives them a sound education, they will soon be able to distinguish friend from foe clearly and will have a deeper hatred for him.

The school must give the students a regular and substantial education to enhance their class consciousness so that they will study and behave in a responsible manner and be clearly aware of how they should live and learn and for whom.

Next, it is necessary to improve the education of general rudimentary knowledge.

In the past, the students of the Mangyongdae School for Bereaved Families of Revolutionaries grew up uneducated, suffering humiliation and maltreatment on the “charge” of having revolutionary parents. In its educational activities the school must consider this and endeavour to educate these youngsters thoroughly in basic general knowledge. The period of the students’ education is a process of forming their revolutionary world outlook, based on materialistic dialectic; therefore, the education in basic general knowledge is of great
importance in facilitating the formation of their world outlook.

Intensifying the education of the students in rudimentary knowledge, in keeping with their level of preparedness, the school should see to it that the children acquire an extensive knowledge of nature and society and should endeavour to lay a solid foundation for their higher education. It is particularly necessary to motivate these young students towards acquiring advanced science and techniques.

Along with the education in rudimentary knowledge, the school should step up military education.

This is an important aspect in the training of the students in general as well as in the light of the situation prevailing in our country. The US imperialists are in the south and our country has not yet been reunified. As long as imperialism remains in the world, we have to be fully prepared to build up the nation’s defences and turn out excellent military officers. The school should intensify military training and equip the students with a military knowledge which will enable them to command platoons. They should not only be prepared militarily, but also firmly trained physically.

Training the students in revolutionary practice is an important means to develop them to be ardent revolutionaries.

Only when they are continually trained in this way, will they be indomitable revolutionaries who will not flinch under any hardship or adversity. The school should train the students by tightening their organizational life and discipline while at the same time giving them manual labour projects to perform. They should also be made to frequent productive factories and villages, and conduct brisk political information and art circle activities.

The school should organize the daily routine of the students so well that they are always lively and optimistic.

The students of the school are gloomy and out of spirits. It is because they were ragged and hungry, ill-treated and humiliated before. The school should endeavour to arrange diverse extracurricular activities so that the students will live happily and grow fit, playing musical instruments and football.
The standard of teaching should be improved decisively in order to meliorate the education of the students.

The students’ real ability depends mainly on the quality of teaching. When the teachers are highly qualified, the students’ ability increases. The teachers should intensify their studies so as to improve their qualifications. Special attention must be paid to requiring teachers to possess a rich military knowledge. Thus, if they teach and graduate a hundred students, all will become competent people.

The school’s organizational structure should also be amended.

It is better to switch over all the work and organizational setup of the school to a military way. In other words, the school should conduct all work—from the students’ daily life to the management of the school—in a well-regulated, military system so that the students will live under strict military discipline. Since the Mangyongdae School for Bereaved Families of Revolutionaries is to be run in this way, its administrative direction and educational guidance should be undertaken by the Ministry of Education and the military education of the students should be assisted by the Ministry of National Defence.

The Ministry of Education has quite neglected its leadership of the school, considering that the school is supposed to be under the direction of the Ministry of National Defence. It is the officials of the Education Ministry who are mainly responsible for the unsatisfactory execution of the education at the school. From now on the Ministry of Education must direct the school in a responsible way.

If they are to improve the school’s affairs, the teaching staff should work together as a team. Only then can they succeed in carrying out the heavy revolutionary task assigned to the school.

I was told that at present, military instructors and teachers at the school occasionally wrangle with each other over precedence. They should not do so. They are all equal; they just have different assignments. They all work together towards the common goal of bringing up the bereaved children.

The leading officials of the school, too, should work in unity, helping one another. If they are not united, they cannot conduct the education of
the students properly or establish discipline within the school.

The disunity in the ranks of teaching staff is caused by the lack of ability on the part of the school Party organization. The Party is a political organization in which revolutionaries are united; it is a weapon for struggle. However, the school Party organization has forgotten its duties and failed to combat negative factors among the teaching staff. As it did not do its bit, the officials’ imperfections have accumulated to such an extent that they are criticized even at the Political Committee meeting today.

On their return, the school authorities must hold a Party cell meeting of the teaching staff and severely criticize the shortcomings of the staff revealed so far in their work and daily life, so as to rectify them. The school Party organization must tighten Party organizational life among the cadres and Party members so that they will keep improving the Party spirits and strengthen their comradely solidarity.

Party concern should be directed towards the education of the children of revolutionaries. These children are our most valuable asset. We should spare nothing to help them.

At present some of our officials are not finely attuned to the upbringing of these children. Local Party organizations are neglecting the work of searching for the bereaved children and sending them to the school. Certain officials do not guarantee the timely supply of coal to the school.

Each Party organization and every official must clearly understand the objective and significance of the setting up of the Mangyongdae School for Bereaved Families of Revolutionaries and pay close attention to the work of bringing up the bereaved children.

Party organizations at all levels should look for children of dead revolutionaries scattered in provinces and send them to the school. At the same time, they should opportunistically meet the requests made by the Mangyongdae School for Bereaved Families of Revolutionaries.

I hope that in keeping with the spirit of today’s meeting, you will rectify your mistakes as soon as possible and bring about a new turn in the education of the children of our dead revolutionaries.
Fellow deputies,

The Second Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly is bringing its work to a satisfactory conclusion, after having successfully discussed, amid the great expectations of the whole nation, important items on the agenda such as the Two-Year Plan for the Development of the National Economy, the foreign policy of the Government of the Republic and the elections of people’s committees at all levels.

The complete unanimity of views of the deputies on all subjects discussed at this meeting clearly indicates the strong solidarity of all our democratic political parties, social organizations and the people of all strata of society. The success achieved at this session has clearly shown once again that our Supreme People’s Assembly elected by all the Korean people is the genuine, supreme legislative body of a new, democratic Korea that represents the interests of the whole nation and the will of all the people, and strives for the country’s reunification, independence, and the welfare of the people.
I firmly believe that all the decisions we have taken on the items discussed at this meeting will be welcomed by our people and enjoy their unreserved support and that all the people will do their best to implement them.

Deputies,

This Supreme People’s Assembly session summed up the brilliant victory achieved in the execution of last year’s national economic plan. It also deliberated on the Two-Year Plan for the Development of the National Economy which will bring even greater success and happiness to our people.

The national economic plan for 1948 was fulfilled triumphantly because all the people rallied firmly around the Government of the Republic, with great patriotic zeal to make their country rich and strong, and supported all its policies and devoted all their energies and talents towards implementing these policies. It is also due to the fact that the Government of the Republic and the people’s committees at all levels, the people’s real organs of power, maintained close relations with the people and steadily raised the working people’s zeal for production, rightly organizing and guiding their efforts for increased production.

With the fulfilment of the national economic plan for 1948, the democratic base in the northern half of Korea was consolidated. The nation’s economic foundations have been further strengthened and there were marked improvements in our people’s material and cultural standards of living.

The total industrial output of the state and cooperative organizations for 1948 exceeded plan targets by 2 per cent and industrial production increased by as much as 50.6 per cent as compared with 1947. The Pyongyang Chemical Factory was rebuilt completely and the Kangso Electrical Machinery Factory and Pyongyang Machine Plant newly built. The expansion of the Kilju Pulp Mill, the building of the Nampho Sheet-glass Factory and the rebuilding of the Aoji Chemical Factory were also completed before schedule. This helped us to normalize production this year.
Our working class has always been the nucleus in the struggle for the country’s prosperity, progress and democratization. Once again last year, they displayed a high degree of patriotic enthusiasm and innovation, thus enabling the industrial spheres to carry out the plans with success, and contributing greatly towards the rehabilitation and development of our industry.

The workers, technicians and office employees of the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory were the forebearers for a nationwide emulation drive for increased production. They appealed to all the factories and enterprises to fulfil the national economic plan for 1948 one month ahead of schedule, and themselves actually fulfilled their yearly plan targets by 10.5 per cent on November 28, a month ahead of the set time. Not only was the output of fertilizers increased far above the pre-liberation level but also the quality improved markedly, so that they earned the honour of winning the pennant of the Cabinet of the Republic. Considerable successes were achieved and last year’s plans were also completed ahead of schedule by the Hwanghae Iron Works, Ryongsong Machine Plant, Hochongang Power Station, Chonnaeri Cement Factory, Aoji Coal Mine, Koksan Mine, Sinuiju Textile Mill and many other factories and enterprises.

The workers of the Hochongang, Suphung and Jangjingang Power Stations and other sectors of the power industry invented and produced large quantities of spare parts needed for rebuilding and repairing generators and transformers. They rendered yeoman service for quickly increasing power generation capacities. The workers of the Aoji Coal Mine, Sadong Coal Mine and other fields of the coal-mining industry rid themselves of outmoded Japanese methods in mining and introduced new techniques, thus more than trebling labour productivity and making huge profits for the state. The workers at the Songhung, Suan and Komdok Mines submitted a number of original proposals which are highly conducive to raising labour efficiency substantially and lowering production costs in ore mining. In the chemical industry the proposals for innovation and inventions made by the workers at the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory and Pongung Chemical Factory brought
about substantial results. As for the machine-building industry, the workers of the Nampho Dockyard made a mould-drying furnace which uses less fuel; those at the Ryongsong Machine Plant devised water-wheel buckets; and those at the Sinuiju Machine Plant remodelled the steel mould-drying furnace to be fed on anthracite, thus earning considerable profits for the state.

Most of the Korean technicians, who previously worked under the maltreatment of the Japanese imperialists and capitalists, now are patriotic intellectuals who are serving the country and people. They are significantly contributing towards the rapid reconstruction and development of our industry.

An engineer at the Aoji Coal Mine cast aside the old room-and-pillar method and introduced a 120-metre longwall mining method which had been unthinkable in the days of Japanese imperialism. This marked the beginning of a great innovation period in our coal-mining industry. The technicians of the Pongung Chemical Factory introduced a process of synthesizing alcohol with acetylene by using carbide, which made it possible to save more than 100,000 sok of grain a year in the production of alcohol. The chief engineer of the Pyongyang Chemical Factory not only made a great contribution to hastening the rebuilding project of the Chongjin Spinning Mill, but also made a number of creative proposals for rebuilding his factory on the basis of his rich experience, thus enabling the completion of the rehabilitation project one month ahead of schedule. The contribution of the chief engineer of the Chongjin Spinning Mill was in markedly improving the quality of rayon yarn thus lowering the production cost by 42.4 per cent as against 1947. The chief engineers of the Songjin Steel Plant and Hwanghae Iron Works are examples of patriotic progressive technicians in our country today. They are dedicating all their energy and zeal to the advancement of technology and are held in high esteem by the state and enjoy the great confidence of the workers.

In the field of transport, too, many successes were achieved and last year’s transportation plan was completed splendidly. Special mention should be made of those engaged in this field who smashed the old
conception that had been fostered in them during the rule of Japanese imperialism that transport capacity decreases in winter compared with summer. They taught a valuable lesson that with greater effort and zeal, transport capacity can be maintained on a normal level even in winter. Thus the winter freightage of 1948 was guaranteed at the same tempo as in the summer. They successfully completed the projects to electrify sections of the railway track between Yangdok and Chonsong, and between Kaego and Koin, which have sharp gradients and where traffic is most strained, on the Pyongyang-Wonsan line and Manpho line. All these facts unequivocally show how fast our railway system which did not have a single Korean engine driver in the Japanese imperialist days, has been developed by our employees’ efforts within three years of liberation.

Last year we won a great victory in agriculture, too.

Immediately after liberation the food situation in north Korea was extremely difficult. The harsh plunder by Japanese imperialism and landlords had left our peasants so impoverished that they were short of food for their own needs, let alone supplying the state and workers with provisions.

The agrarian reform enacted through our people’s power eliminated the source of ancient feudal exploitation. Land was distributed to the tillers and all possible measures have been taken to develop agricultural productivity speedily. As a result, the peasants, now owners of their land, were given greater incentives for productivity and agricultural production began to rise as never before. The total grain yield in 1947 was 170,000 tons more than in 1946. In 1948 it was 600,000 tons more than the previous year, or 2,670,000 tons, which is far above the level of the pre-liberation year of 1944.

There are many examples of progressive, patriotic peasants achieving splendid success in the struggle to increase the yields of crops.

A peasant in Cholwon County, Kangwon Province, raised the per-hectare yield of rice to 12 tons, or approximately four times the average figure; another peasant in Pakchon County, North Phyongan
Province, reaped three times the average rice crop by increasing the per-hectare yield to nine tons. Still another peasant in Sinchon County, Hwanghae Province, increased the per-hectare crop of wheat to four tons; a peasant in Jaeryong County, Hwanghae Province, augmented the per-hectare yield of cotton to more than two tons. The secret of the record-breaking bumper crops brought about by these model peasants lies precisely in the fact that they introduced advanced farming methods, such as ploughing in autumn and spring at the correct time, ameliorating the soil, sowing good seed, producing adequate manure and weeding repeatedly. Anybody can obtain a bumper crop by applying such techniques and working zealously.

Thanks to the successes achieved in agricultural production, the northern half of Korea, where previously the food situation was very poor, now acquired self-sufficiency in food. This is a proud achievement of our peasants and a great victory of all the people of our country.

The successes achieved by our people last year for the economic construction are tremendous. Yet, this is but a first step in our solemn advance towards the building of a rich and strong, independent, sovereign state. Still greater and harder tasks lie ahead of us.

During this Second Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly we discussed the Two-Year Plan for the Rehabilitation and Development of the National Economy (1949-50) and adopted an ordinance on it.

Why, then, are we drawing up a two-year perspective plan, instead of a yearly plan as before? Firstly, because our national economy has advanced more and a greater advancement is envisaged. We drew up two yearly plans and fulfilled them successfully, and during this period almost all major factories and enterprises were rebuilt and the scope of industrial production expanded. The link between different fields was greatly strengthened and the foundations for the normal development of the national economy were basically laid. Under these circumstances we are now in a position to visualize clearly the development of our national economy for a longer period. With yearly plans alone, we are no longer able to develop our industry with proper
perspectives. The precious experience gained in planning is now our asset to map out long-range plans, and guarantee their proper execution.

Therefore, the Government of the Republic has drafted the Two-Year National Economic Plan (1949-50), and submitted it to the Supreme People’s Assembly at the current session for discussion; the ordinance has been adopted.

Fellow deputies,

The Two-Year Plan is setting forth massive and important tasks for all the people in the northern half of Korea.

In the industrial sectors they have to completely reconstruct the factories not yet rehabilitated, expand the enterprises now in operation and there should be optimum utilization of the equipment, thereby far surpassing the pre-liberation level in the volume of industrial production. Particularly, industry must be rid of its colonial lopsidedness, the noxious aftermath of Japanese imperialist rule. We must strengthen its technical equipment and quickly develop the machine-building industry so that we can manufacture the necessary machinery and spare parts by ourselves for all fields of the national economy. It is also essential to develop light industry so as to satisfy the people’s vital demands. We must direct great attention to developing the textile, daily-necessities and food industries. We must lay special emphasis on the development of the textile industry to solve the clothing question for the people.

Only by building industry in this way can we further the development of all spheres of the national economy. In particular, rapid increase in agricultural production can be achieved by fully supplying the countryside with necessary farm implements and daily necessities of the peasants. Only when we have a developed industry will we have laid the firm foundations for an independent national economy, which would guarantee the country’s independence, prosperity and progress.

What is important to ensure successfully a planned development of the national economy is to speedily transport supplies for production
and goods for mass consumption on schedule. Particularly, the rapid growth of industrial and agricultural production and the development of goods distribution, forecast in the Two-Year Plan, demand a further augmentation of freightage. Those who are engaged in the field of transport should repair locomotives and wagons, raise the utilization of means of transport in every possible way and tighten order and discipline so as to surpass their quotas as envisaged in the Two-Year Plan.

Devoting all their energies, talents and zeal, all workers, technicians and office employees must strive to fulfil the militant tasks given to the industrial and transport spheres without fail.

In order to achieve the country’s complete reunification and to liberate the people in the southern half as soon as possible from the miserable plight they are forced to live in, the working men and women in the northern half must fight more resolutely and steadfastly.

To surpass the targets set by the Two-Year Plan we must efficiently organize production and manpower, encourage new technical devices developed by workers and technicians, enhance labour efficiency and improve the quality of products. In particular we must correctly carry out piecework and bonus systems in all fields, so as to increase the workers’ incentive for production and also arouse their voluntary enthusiasm to a great extent.

What is vitally important in raising labour productivity, improving the quality of products, and making the technical innovation movement a success is to build up the ranks of our own technical personnel and uplift the level of the working people’s skills. While ruling over our nation for 36 years, the Japanese imperialists prevented the Korean youth from any access to the opportunities for learning modern science and technology. As a result, we buckled down to the building of a new life after liberation, handicapped by not having technical cadres of our own. Therefore, to tide over our greatest difficulties in economic construction, it is imperative for us to train them in the industrial and transport spheres.

We have taken measures to train technicians and skilled people at
the sites of production and through various short training courses. At
the same time, national measures have been adopted to raise large
numbers of leading technical personnel from among our younger
generation.

Veteran technicians should help experienced skilled workers to
become technicians and the latter in turn help the new recruits to
become skilled also. We must learn from one another, so that we
come an army of expert technicians. We must boldly promote old
and new technicians as well as highly experienced workers, to cadres,
to guide our production, and then we must provide them with every
possible facility to develop their techniques, so as to rapidly solve the
problem of technicians and skilled people.

In addition, we are training large numbers of high and middle-grade
teachers at the institutes of higher learning and specialized schools
which were built by us after liberation. At present, over 13,000
students are studying at 11 institutes of higher learning and over
17,000 students at 55 technical schools. More than 500 selected youth
are learning advanced sciences and techniques in foreign countries.
Meanwhile, more than 10,000 technicians are being trained at
numerous factory technical schools, and in 1950 as many as 2,000
technicians working at production sites will receive higher education
through collegiate correspondence courses.

Thus, in two years, or in 1949-50, over 10,100 technicians and
experts will be trained and we will have basically overcome the
bottlenecks caused by the shortage of technical cadres.

However, our country is still far from freeing itself completely from
its technical lag; we will need more technicians and experts in the
future. It goes without saying that when the country is reunified and we
have to rebuild and run the devastated factories and enterprises in the
southern half of Korea by our own efforts, we will need more technical
cadres. We should continue to pay great attention to training excellent
technicians in large numbers. Moreover, in order to enrol more sons
and daughters of the working people in technical schools and colleges,
we should grant scholarships to 80 per cent of the students.
In training technical personnel it is quite important to educate them to have a high sense of national pride and great ambition. We must decisively destroy the wrong notion still prevailing in the minds of some people—that “we can’t catch up with Japanese technicians.” We must work with a conviction that, though we are learning science, developing industry and technique much later than others, we can learn much faster, devise better machinery than anybody else and build a strong national industry.

One of the important aspects in ensuring the success of the plan is to effect a strict national accounting and control on materials. Factories and enterprises have numerous quantities of materials on hand which the state has not yet made an inventory of. Besides, the practices of wasting precious resources still persist. Managers at some factories and enterprises do not include all the materials available on hand in their inventory sheets, while keeping them hidden somewhere. These materials are then included in the production reports in order to show that their production targets have been exceeded. Some even go so far as to work in collusion with black marketeers in embezzling state property. It is impossible to eliminate these negative practices without establishing order and system and tightening accounting and control.

We must fully educate managerial officials in the industrial spheres towards acquiring the correct perspective on state property and the spirit of strictly observing state discipline, while at the same time improving the management and operation of factories and enterprises. Also we must tighten accounting and control, thereby eliminating the wastage of materials or the encroachment upon state property.

The tasks envisaged for agriculture during the Two-Year Plan are also tremendous. In order to exceed these tasks we must expand the area of arable land and raise the utilization of the land in every way, while directing all our efforts to increasing the per-hectare yields of crops.

We must vigorously implement the Phyongnam irrigation project for which a state investment of 1,200 million won is envisaged, in order to guarantee the irrigation of a wide area of rice fields in and around Anju and Phyongwon. Also, we must definitely introduce
advanced farming methods and apply an adequate amount of chemical fertilizers supplied by the state as well as home-made manure to the fields.

In cultivating industrial crops it is important to concentrate their planting on suitable soil and raise their yields. From this year on, we should pick out areas suitable for cotton and have the peasants living there plant it on the major portion of the arable land. At the same time, we should wage a campaign through which people at farmhouses will be motivated to plant lots of mulberry trees and produce silkworms at every house.

All peasants must realize that good farming is their contribution to nation building. They must exceed the targets set for agriculture under the Two-Year Plan by displaying a high degree of patriotic zeal and creativity, so as to turn the northern half of Korea into an area self-sufficient in food, provide the fast developing industry with enough raw materials and enhance their standard of living.

Fellow deputies,

The great significance of the Two-Year National Economic Plan adopted by us at this session lies not only in the fact that it strengthens the economic foundation of the northern half of Korea and elevates its people’s living standard, but also in that it provides a dependable material guarantee for national reunification. The successful completion of this plan will arouse the impoverished and starved people of the south more forcefully in their struggle for national independence and reunification. It will provide the material conditions for rapidly restoring the ruined south Korean economy, stabilizing and enhancing their standard of living after the country has been reunified.

Last April, as you are all aware, the joint conference of representatives of north and south Korean political parties and social organizations with differing political views and ideas was held. In accordance with the policy unanimously adopted then, general elections were held in north and south Korea, which led to the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea being established. Of course, since US troops have not withdrawn from south Korea, our country is
not yet reunified. Still all the people in north and south Korea support the Government of our Republic as the sole, legitimate government in Korea and are united firmly around it. Our election of the Supreme People’s Assembly in accordance with the general will of the people of north and south Korea and our formation of the Government of the DPRK were a timely step in tiding over the danger of national division created in our country, and opened up wide vistas for the democratic national reunification.

Presently, it is the US imperialists who are stubbornly opposing and hampering our nation’s independence and sovereignty and the country’s reunification. With a view to pursuing their sinister colonial subjugation policy in Korea, they twice disrupted the work of the USSR-US Joint Commission, and turned down the Soviet Government’s just proposal to effect a simultaneous withdrawal of Soviet and American troops from Korea and leave the Korean question to the Koreans themselves. Instead the US imperialists placed this question on the agenda of the UN, thus bringing into south Korea the so-called UN Temporary Commission on Korea, a US imperialist instrument for Korean aggression, with which to rig up an anti-people puppet government in south Korea. The south Korean puppet government, a den of reactionary quislings, has done nothing but signing various treacherous agreements by which to sell Korea to the US. This reactionary puppet government has not been able to solve any problems for the Korean people; it is neither willing nor able to do so.

As the treacheries to the nation have been brought to light and this regime is being constantly isolated from the Korean people, the south Korean traitors are desperately begging for the prolonged stationing of US troops for the purpose of sustaining their lives under the latter’s protection.

Now that the legitimate, unified government of the Korean nation has been set up and on the request of the Korean people Soviet troops have already withdrawn completely from our soil, under no pretext whatsoever can the US imperialist army of aggression continue to occupy the southern half of Korea.
In order to pursue their policy of aggression in the whole of Korea and legalize their prolonged stay in south Korea, the US imperialists once again illegally placed the Korean question on the agenda of the UN General Assembly at its Third Session. The result of this move was the setting up of the new UN Commission on Korea. They can never cheat or intimidate the Korean people by such trickery. All the Korean people have categorically rejected the UNCOK, a tool for the implementation of the US imperialist policy of colonization of Korea. No Korean welcomes the UNCOK, the US imperialist instrument of aggression, except quislings such as Syngman Rhee, Kim Song Su and Ri Pom Sok who are selling out the interests of the country and nation for their own personal interests.

The most important and urgent task before the Korean people today is to bring about the immediate withdrawal of US troops from south Korea. Once they are out, the Korean question will be solved according to the wishes of the Korean people themselves free from any confusion or difficulty. The struggle for the immediate withdrawal of US troops is precisely the struggle for the country’s liberty, independence and reunification and it is in the interests of the whole nation. Korea is for the Koreans, and the Korean question must be solved by the Korean people themselves.

Every Korean who loves his country and desires the reunification of his nation should courageously rise up in the national struggle to force US troops out of his territory.

Those who have been deceived by the reactionary elements and followed them blindly should realize their mistakes and come over to the side of the people, before it is too late. If they sincerely wish to do so we will join hands with these misguided people, without asking about their past crimes.

It is another story with treacherous elements like Syngman Rhee, Kim Song Su and Ri Pom Sok. We shall never forgive them for their numerous crimes of selling out the country and national interests, persecuting and slaughtering innocent Koreans. They shall be put on trial by all the people.
Of late, “Prime Minister” Ri Pom Sok and other quislings in the puppet government are engaged in preposterous demagogies against our Republic. Some time ago they started a rumour that big riots had broken out in 13 north Korean cities. This time they spread the rumour that a great riot occurred in the area of Haeju. In the northern half of Korea where the people have become the masters of the government, such a thing has not occurred and is an impossibility. Therefore, it is not accidental when the people of the Haeju area say that the puppet “Prime Minister” of south Korea is like a mad dog barking at the moon. There is a Korean saying that “he who is in a house on fire, gives the fire alarm.” Apparently, in south Korea ruled by the so-called “President” Syngman Rhee and “Prime Minister” Ri Pom Sok, riots take place frequently and they are very scared of them.

Moreover, the quislings of the south Korean puppet government are clamouring daily for a “northern expedition”. It seems they do not comprehend what the “northern expedition” would bring them.

The democratic base in the northern half of Korea has been further strengthened politically and economically.

We have the People’s Army which is formed by the sons and daughters of the working people. It is unboundedly faithful to the country and people and capable of stoutly defending the victories and the democratic institutions won by the people. As a genuine people’s armed force, our People’s Army has blossomed into a powerful army which can repulse any reactionary forces and all acts of aggression. If the pro-Japanese elements, traitors to the nation and other reactionaries dare to conduct a “northern expedition” they will be completely annihilated by the united and awakened Korean people and their armed forces.

The organs of our people’s power must be strengthened.

The decision adopted by the Supreme People’s Assembly at this Second Session on the elections of provincial, city, county, sub-county and ri people’s committees is designed to further democratize and strengthen our local bodies of power. Through elections we should elect the best representatives of the people, send them to the organs of
power to considerably enhance the prestige and function of the local power bodies of the Republic and forge closer links between the power organs and the masses of the people. We should explain to the people through extensive information work the significance and wholly democratic nature of the forthcoming elections. We must actively organize and enlist the political enthusiasm of people of all strata so as to ensure another glowing political victory.

Fellow deputies,

In the international arena today the might of the democratic camp including the Soviet Union is continuously increasing and the entire situation is developing more favourably towards our people’s cause of justice. This imbues the Korean people in their fight for the country’s liberty, independence and reunification, with a greater conviction of victory.

In neighbouring China, the people’s struggle for national freedom and liberation is victoriously on. Within a few months the Chinese People’s Liberation Army liberated the whole of northeast and north China, and recently has liberated Beijing, their 4,000 years old capital. Having crossed the Yangzi, the Chinese Liberation Army is now advancing towards Nanjing. Jiang Jieshi, who has thrown overboard the interests of the Chinese people and perpetrated all sorts of criminal activities, has already packed up and does not know where to flee—to Taiwan, Hong Kong or to the US. The Chinese people will definitely crush the last desperate resistance of the reactionary quislings and will completely liberate the entire country.

The US imperialists boasted that they would aid Jiang Jieshi to the end, but of late, their fervour is cooling off God knows why. But they are making a last frantic attempt to free themselves, howsoever slightly, from the political and economic crisis that faces them. In Indonesia, too, they instigated the Dutch imperialists to spill the people’s blood. Therefore, our people are closely watching every move of the US imperialists, who are pursuing policies of aggression and plunder all over the world. We are increasing our vigilance against their sinister plot to align themselves with the Japanese
militarists, the sworn enemy of our nation.

What is of vital importance in our Republic’s foreign policy is to strengthen our fraternal friendship and solidarity with the peoples of the countries in the democratic camp and to establish closer economic cooperation with these countries. We will have stronger ties of friendship with the Soviet people and will always go along with them. We should also continually promote our friendly and cooperative relations with the people’s democratic countries such as Poland, Czechoslovakia, Bulgaria, Romania, Hungary and Mongolia, which have recognized the DPRK and established diplomatic relations with our country.

Today as a full-fledged member of the world democratic camp, our Republic enjoys support from freedom-loving people all over the world.

Victory will certainly come to the Korean people who are marching forward towards the country’s reunification and independence and a bright future, with the active support and encouragement of the Soviets and all other progressive peoples under the flying banner of the Democratic People’s Republic.
Comrades,

At this Fifth Meeting of the Party’s Central Committee we analysed the meetings held by Party cells, primary Party organizations and sub-county Party organizations to review their work during the nine months following the Second Party Congress. We also discussed other questions of how to improve on the leadership of the Party, enhance the role of Party organizations in the task of fulfilling the Two-Year National Economic Plan and how to achieve definite success in the elections of members to the provincial, city and county (district) people’s committees.

I am now going to tell you how we can improve and strengthen the work of Party organizations.

It is now ten months since our Party’s Second Congress, during which time a great deal of Party work has been successfully accomplished.

As has been unanimously pointed out in the report and during the debate, since the time of the Second Party Congress, there is improvement in the functioning of the Party organizations, particularly that of Party cells, primary organizations and sub-county
organizations. Also the vanguard role of Party members has increased. Thanks to the devotion and initiative shown by the Party organizations and their members, we triumphed in last year’s elections of deputies to the Supreme People’s Assembly to establish the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, and the 1948 national economic plan was successfully completed. As a result, our Party’s prestige was further enhanced among the masses and they came to place deeper confidence in our Party.

Since the Second Party Congress, our Party has strengthened and developed into being a strong political force. The Party’s ranks have been consolidated not only qualitatively but also have greatly increased in number. Today, our Party has more than 800,000 members; and wherever there are the masses, whether it is a factory, a farming community or a fishing village, Party cells have been formed and are actively at work. In this manner, our Party has established deeper roots among the broad sections of the working people.

It is to our great credit that our Party has won the total confidence of the masses and struck deep roots among them. This is a precious asset for the development of our Party, a firm guarantee for greater success in its future work. Party organizations should work harder, basing themselves on the successes already achieved.

At its Second Congress, our Party set forth vital tasks for strengthening the democratic base in the northern half of Korea, hastening the accomplishment of the historic cause of national reunification and consolidating the Party qualitatively. If we are to fulfil these tasks satisfactorily, we must improve and strengthen the work of Party organizations in a decisive fashion.

The Party’s lines and policies are executed through Party organizations operating at different levels. However correct the Party’s lines and policies are, they will be mere scraps of paper, if Party organizations fail to play their role effectively. Therefore, improving and strengthening their work is the main factor in the successful execution of the Party’s lines and policies. At present our Party organizations at different levels are unable to conduct their work as
required by the Central Committee. In this situation it is all the more necessary to improve and strengthen the work of these organizations. We must further improve the work of all these organizations to be able to successfully implement the vital tasks set forth by the Second Party Congress.

1. ON STRENGTHENING PARTY ORGANIZATIONAL WORK

Party organizational work is one of the inner-Party affairs, which Party organizations must always take care of on their own. Party organizational work has to be intensified, as it has a very great bearing on building up the Party’s ranks and implementing the Party’s lines and policies. Therefore, all Party organizations must, first and foremost, exert their efforts to strengthen this work.

An important aspect of Party organizational work is the proper expansion of the Party’s ranks.

A party is a political organization wherein the party members are united. It will be possible for the party to maintain the purity of its ranks and develop itself on a sound basis only when the work of increasing its membership is properly conducted.

However, as has been revealed by the recent guidance and inspection conducted by the Party Central Committee of the organizations in North Hamgyong and North Phyongan Provinces, quite a few of them have failed to increase the Party membership in accordance with the Party Rules.

A major drawback in the task of increasing the membership is that there are tendencies to advertising and at the same time to closing the door to new members. Some Party organizations are too rigid and demanding, and reject those who should be admitted, claiming that “they are lacking in political awareness” or “they do not know
anything. On the other hand, during the elections of the deputies to the Supreme People’s Assembly last year, a certain county Party organization in North Hamgyong Province invited many people to collectively join the Party, without ascertaining their background. Its chairman, with Party seal and membership cards in hand, visited each of those enrolled, and bestowed Party membership cards upon them. Because of such shortcomings in the work of increasing the Party membership, eligible persons are unable to join the Party’s ranks, while alien and dishonest elements worm their way in.

Party organizations should increase their membership strictly in accordance with Party and class principles.

Since our Party is the vanguard of the workers, peasants and working intellectuals, their best elements must join its ranks. Our working class includes a considerable number of excellent people tried and tested in the struggle after liberation for the building of a new, democratic Korea. There are also many activists and progressive people among the peasants and working intellectuals, who must be boldly enrolled into the Party.

In accordance with the Party Rules, it is important to strictly follow the admission procedure in each case while enrolling new members. Otherwise, it will be impossible to prevent dishonest and alien elements from insinuating themselves into the Party’s ranks. Therefore, Party organizations should examine the individual applicants, and admit only those who are fully qualified to join.

Party organizations must not only follow Party and class principles in increasing their membership, but also register them accurately. At present, certain Party organizations do not promptly register the newly enrolled members nor do they exclude those who are missing, or have been expelled from the Party membership list. This is not the right thing to do. Party organizations should conduct the registration of their members strictly in accordance with the stipulated system.

Next in importance in Party organizational work is to induce all the members to participate wholeheartedly in Party life.

Party life is the practical activity undertaken by the members to
meet the requirements of the Party Rules. It is the political activity involved in striving to attain the Party’s objectives. Only when the members are active in their participation, can the Party become a militant one, and achieve successes in the execution of the revolutionary tasks before it.

Active participation of Party members in the meetings is an important aspect of Party organizational life. Party organizations should pay profound attention to encourage their members to take an active part in the meetings.

For this purpose it is necessary to raise the political and ideological consciousness of the members and run the Party meetings well.

What, then, should we do to conduct Party meetings well?

Firstly, it is necessary to prepare thoroughly for the meeting. We should pick out the right subjects to be discussed and carefully draw up the report and resolutions to be submitted to the meeting. The report should, in principle, be prepared by the one who submits it. For example, if the Party cell chairman is to deliver the report, he must write it himself, and if the vice-cell chairman is to do so, then he must also draft it himself. If you read out mechanically a report prepared by another person, the meeting cannot be a success. Party organizations should assist in the drafting of reports, taking into full account the specific situation of the units concerned and the Party members’ wishes. The reports and resolutions for the Party meetings should be correctly drafted, and at the same time the members should be made to prepare themselves fully for the debate. This will result in their participating actively in the meetings.

It is also necessary to intensify criticism at the meetings and fully guarantee inner-Party democracy, which is one of our major organizational principles. Only when this is fully ensured, can Party members express their opinion freely and take an active part in the discussion of problems. But some Party organizations still fail to fully guarantee inner-Party democracy. A member of a certain Party organization was aware of some grave defects in the junior cadres but did not discuss them at the meetings and instead, he complained a few
months later to a higher Party body. This tends to occur partly because Party members are still at a low political and ideological level, but more so, because inner-Party democracy is not guaranteed. If suppression of inner-Party democracy is tolerated even in the smallest instance, it will be impossible to raise the Party members’ creativity and enthusiasm or intensify criticism. Therefore, Party organizations must give inner-Party democracy full play so that every Party member can advance constructive views freely and take an active part in criticism.

We must make sure that, in adherence to Party Rules, meetings are conducted regularly, and that all members, without exception, participate in the meetings. At present a considerable number of Party cells and primary Party organizations do not hold meetings regularly, as provided for in the Party Rules; therefore, it is a good idea to fix a couple of “Party days” a month exclusively for meetings. On “Party days” members should attend these Party meetings only, instead of taking part in various other gatherings or public activities which have nothing to do with Party work.

If we are to make the members participate actively in Party life, we must give them assignments regularly. Party assignments should be given to each and every Party member according to their suitability. After assigning them their tasks, we should regularly check how they are being carried out and give them appropriate advice and assistance. Before giving them new ones, their previous assignments should be checked to see whether they have been properly carried out. Thus all Party members will always be active in implementing their assignments.

Another important aspect of Party organizational work is to establish iron discipline within the Party, build up all leadership bodies and particularly strengthen its cells.

The Party cell is our Party’s basic organization to which the members belong and in whose activities they participate. When the cell is strong, it is possible to give correct guidance to the members in their Party life and develop our Party to be a powerful one.

In order to strengthen the Party cell, it is necessary to train many core elements.
The political and ideological preparedness of the Party cell members varies. Even within a cell some of the members have a stronger Party spirit than others; some of them are well-prepared politically and ideologically, while others are not. This situation in the Party cells raises the urgent problem of developing cell nuclei who will be influential in tempering the members’ Party spirit and enhancing their political and theoretical levels through their practical activities. So, since the first days of its founding, our Party has invariably considered the development of cell nuclei to be an important task in the qualitative consolidation of the Party.

Party organizations should build the ranks of cell nuclei with the best Party members and work patiently to better their level. They should regularly organize short training courses to raise the cell nuclei’s political and theoretical levels and teach them the Party’s working methods as well as help improve their qualifications through practical work.

Yet another important aspect of Party organizational work is to strengthen the guidance and inspection of the organizations and improve the Party workers’ style of leadership.

Party organizations should conduct concrete guidance and inspection of the organizations at lower echelons.

To do this, it is important first to know how they are executing the Party’s lines and policies, decisions and directives, and help them in their implementation.

At present quite a few Party organizations are not thoroughly carrying them out. This is mainly because their guidance and inspection is neglected. From now on, Party organizations must establish the habit of regularly guiding and scrutinizing the work of the lower bodies, and advise them in the execution of the Party’s lines and policies, decisions and directives. Thus they will make sure that the policies of the Party Central Committee are carried through in all spheres and units.

A coherent system of guidance and inspection of Party cell work should be set up. At present this is being done by county Party
committees, sub-county Party committees and primary Party committees respectively, so that their guidance cannot but be unsystematic. Such laxity hampers the strengthening of Party cells. From now on the guidance and inspection of Party cells should be conducted by county Party committees directly, with sub-county and primary Party organizations working as their assistants.

Senior officials should take the work of guidance and inspection upon themselves, in order to make a success of it. If they do not do so and entrust it instead to their subordinates, it cannot be successful. Senior officials of Party committees at different levels should go down to the lower echelons for guidance and should themselves undertake the actual work of supervising and advising, and resolve the difficult problems of the lower echelons by relying upon the collective wisdom of the guidance group members. Thus will they be able to improve upon the work of lower Party organizations.

The style of leadership of Party workers must be improved decisively.

Some Party workers do not visit the lower echelons; they just remain in their offices, issuing work plans. Even when they do visit them, they tend merely to find fault. Party workers must sweep away their formalistic, bureaucratic style of leadership and should persevere in their endeavours to acquire the right leadership style with emphasis on giving substantial help to their subordinates. They should visit lower echelons in a planned way and fully prepared, and should grasp each specific situation before they effectively advise them according to their needs.

2. ON STRENGTHENING PARTY IDEOLOGICAL EDUCATION

Party ideological education is one of the important inner-Party
affairs, to be undertaken along with Party organizational work. Only by improving the level of education in ideology can we firmly arm the members and working people with our Party’s lines and policies and raise their class consciousness, thereby forcefully rousing them in the struggle to carry through these lines and policies.

But, at present, Party education in ideology has quite a few shortfalls which must be rectified quickly. This work is far from keeping pace with present-day developments and is also being conducted in an extremely formalistic way. Many Party organizations are only engrossed in doing hasty work, and do not conduct the ideological education of Party members and working people purposefully and patiently.

Party organizations must quickly eliminate the formalistic trends hitherto followed while educating in ideology, and improve and strengthen this work in consistence with the present developments in the country.

They should first work well to firmly imbue the Party members and working people with our Party’s lines and policies and Marxist-Leninist theory. Our Party’s lines and policies are the compass for all our activities. When Party members and working people are firmly impregnated with the Party’s lines and policies, only then can they think and act according to the Party’s requirements and strive devotedly for the building of democracy and national reunification. Party organizations should efficiently explain and propagate the Party’s lines and policies among Party members and working people, considering this to be the first and foremost task of Party education in ideology. At the same time they should also explain and propagate Marxist-Leninist theory in close context with our country’s reality, so that all Party members and working people apply it correctly to our revolutionary practices.

Next, it is necessary to intensify class education among Party members and working people.

The present situation in our country urgently demands this. The US imperialists are making frantic efforts to stamp out the progress we
have made in the building of democracy in the northern half of Korea and make colonial slaves out of the Korean people. The reactionaries hiding themselves amongst us are also hand in glove with the US imperialists and the puppet Syngman Rheeites in manoeuvring to overthrow our democratic institutions. Were we to avert our eyes from this situation and neglect the class education of Party members and working people, they would get drunk with their present happy life, and their fighting spirit against the imperialists and exploiting classes would be paralysed. Then we could not but return to colonial slavery. Party organizations should apprise Party members and working people of the criminal aggressions of the US imperialists and the malicious nature of the exploiting classes, so that they will hate them and fight uncompromisingly against the class enemies.

Educating Party members and working people in the spirit of enduring hardships is one of the major tasks to be steadily carried on in Party ideological education. We are making revolution now. We must be aware that we may come across many bottlenecks and hardships on the revolutionary road in the future, and must be ready to overcome them by our own efforts. Party organizations must educate their members and working people to have the indomitable spirit of overcoming whatever obstacles and hardships they meet with, without hesitation or vacillation.

If we are to be successful in Party ideological education, we must continue to improve our methods, make effective use of the means of information and motivation and properly manage the information and motivation work system.

Improvements should be made in the quality of the Party cell study session and its management. At present the quality of the study session is very poor and a considerable number of Party members fail to grasp what they have learnt at the session. This is because the lecture plans are not prepared to suit the Party members’ level of understanding, nor are the lecturers qualified enough. Most of the lecturers do not understand what they have learnt at their training courses and are just conveying it to the Party members mechanically. This cannot improve
the quality of the Party cell study session. Party organizations must pay strict attention to preparing lecture plans which suit the level of the Party members, while building up the ranks of lecturers with excellent people and raising their political and theoretical levels. At the same time regular courses should be held for improving their qualifications, and a system be established, whereby many competent lecturers can be trained, as well as a reserve force be formed.

They must rationally organize and run the self-study classes and systematically conduct supplementary lectures in political theory, debates and question-and-answer sessions in order to guide and assist the Party members belonging to these classes. They should give supplementary lectures to the Party members of the senior self-study class, so as to enable them to grasp Marxist-Leninist theory thoroughly along with their main study subjects. Those of the junior self-study class, too, should be given supplementary lectures in order to better their understanding of their main study subjects. In guiding and assisting the self-study class members in the pursuit of their courses, it is important to make the most of the Party libraries at the provincial, city and county Party committees. These libraries must provide the self-study class members with the reference books they need, and can also be used by them for regularly holding talks and debates concerning their studies. Party organizations should check and advise on the drawing up and execution of the study plans by the Party members of the self-study class and review their courses in various ways.

Party organizations should not only properly run the Party cell study sessions and self-study classes, but also pay minute attention to the various courses held by social organizations. They should send qualified lecturers to guide and assist at the study classes of social organizations.

The lecture meeting is one of the very important methods of information and education work. At such gatherings, our Party explains and disseminates its lines and policies and informs about the internal and external situation to Party members and other non-Party
masses. Therefore, holding well-planned lecture meetings is of great significance in forcefully inspiring the members and other non-Party masses to carry out Party policy. Party organizations should be flexible in organizing this work. They should prepare lecture outlines suitable to the audience and have competent lecturers and Party workers delivering them.

The educational work of the Central Party School and other training institutes must be improved, in order to develop large numbers of good Party cadres.

3. ON TIGHTENING PARTY GUIDANCE IN THE WORK OF ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION

At the Second Party Congress we stressed that the Party should not only become a party capable of leading the masses politically, but should also be a party of builders capable of uplifting and directing the economy of the country. Our Party should supervise and lead the work of economic construction, since it strives to build a prosperous, independent, sovereign state and keep improving the people’s material and cultural standards of living. Only by tightening Party leadership over economic construction, is it possible to carry out this work according to the Party’s plan, so as to rehabilitate and develop the national economy, the material basis of an independent and sovereign state, and systematically improve the people’s material and cultural standards of living.

Providing the work of economic development with Party leadership, means ensuring that this work is carried out with the assistance of political organizational work.

At present, however, many Party organizations are undertaking their leadership over economic affairs in an administrative manner, regarding this work in the same light as the state’s leadership over
administrative and economic affairs.

As was criticized at this meeting, a certain committee under the Hungnam City Party Committee did not visit the factory Party cells to take a look at their specific situation and give them assistance; instead, they called the subordinates and held meetings frequently and called for reports on production statistics, thus replacing Party leadership to economic construction. They summoned factory Party cell chairmen and held joint meetings during working hours on 24 occasions within a month. This attitude exerted a negative influence upon the subordinates. A certain factory Party cell chairman furnished his cell office lavishly and directed production on the telephone without stirring from his swivel chair. He busied himself with paper work with the aid of a personal assistant, whom he had no right to have.

The practice of providing administrative assistance, instead of Party leadership, to economic construction is to be found not only in the industrial but also in the agricultural spheres.

All Party organizations must overcome this practice and instead, give guidance through purely political methods.

What is important to provide the work of economic construction with Party leadership is to arouse the political zeal of the working masses by explaining to them the Party’s economic policy and the importance of their economic tasks.

It is the working masses who are directly in charge of production. Without arousing their political zeal, we cannot expect success in the economic buildup. Their political zeal is greatly enhanced when they correctly grasp our Party’s demands and become deeply aware of their responsibility. Party organizations must explain and propagate widely our Party’s economic policy and the importance of their immediate economic tasks to the working masses so that they will have a high degree of political enthusiasm and bring their wisdom and creativity into full play in their efforts for production.

Party forces must be appropriately assigned to all fields of production and the vanguard role of Party members must be enhanced,
as this is one of the important aspects of Party leadership in the work of economic construction. Only when this is done, can the Party’s lines and policies be correctly disseminated and carried through in all spheres of production. Party organizations should assign Party members to all units of production and make sure that none is left without a member being attached to them. In particular, the best Party members should be assigned to the more difficult units of production. Party organizations should intensify their work with their members and make sure that they become standard-bearers, who are deeply conscious of their duties, and are always the first to tackle difficult tasks and lead the masses by providing them with practical examples. They should boldly promote outstanding Party members as administrative and economic officials and assist them in satisfactorily carrying out the work of economic organization and direction of production.

In order to fully guarantee that Party leadership is properly provided to the work of economic construction, Party workers should acquire knowledge of economics and methods of industrial management. Otherwise, they cannot but be bureaucratic in their directing of economic construction and, in the long run, follow in the footsteps of administrative and economic officials. Party workers must bear this in mind and actively endeavour to cultivate their knowledge of economics and the methods of industrial management.

At present our people are involved in a magnificent struggle to fulfil the Two-Year National Economic Plan.

The central task of this plan is to eliminate the colonial imbalance in the economy, the pernicious aftermath of Japanese imperialist rule, put into effect the technical modernization of industry and agriculture and ensure a high rate of growth of production, so as to lay the foundations of an independent national economy. Under the Two-Year Plan in the industrial spheres we envisage the complete rehabilitation of the factories and enterprises destroyed by the Japanese imperialists and a twofold increase in the total output value of state industries, as against 1948. As for agriculture, we envisage expanding the cultivated area by
1.9 per cent and the total grain output by 7.9 per cent.

The implementation of the Two-Year National Economic Plan is of really tremendous significance in strengthening the democratic base in the northern half of Korea, hastening the country’s reunification and the building of a prosperous, independent, sovereign state and promoting the welfare of the people. When this plan is fulfilled, our national economy will be further rehabilitated and developed and the people’s material and cultural standards of living will rise markedly. Then, the material foundations will be firmly established, which will make it possible to rehabilitate and develop the ruined economy of the southern half of Korea and provide relief to the south Korean people who are presently groaning in hunger and misery.

All Party organizations should adopt cohesive measures for guaranteeing the successful implementation of the Two-Year National Economic Plan and enlist all forces to fulfil and surpass the plan.

The manner in which the tasks under the Two-Year Plan are carried out by industry, the dominant sector of the national economy, will greatly affect the implementation of it as a whole. If the industrial sector fulfils its tasks, the Two-Year National Economic Plan as a whole will be implemented and, if not, the entire effort will be unsuccessful. Party organizations must pay primary attention to the successful fulfilment of the tasks of the industrial sector as set out in the Two-Year Plan.

We must first make sure that the factories and enterprises organize production rationally and increase the productivity of labour to the maximum. While doing so, it is important to tighten labour discipline, actively introduce advanced working methods, uplift the workers’ technical and skill levels and wage an extensive drive for innovations and new devices. Party organizations should actively encourage the workers in making original proposals, and, in time, put into practice those which are excellent.

Factories and enterprises should lower production costs, improve the quality of their products and correctly run the piecework system.
They must strongly combat the practice of concentrating only on the quantity of products instead of guaranteeing quality. A correct application of the piecework system has an important bearing on increasing the workers’ incentive for production. Factories and enterprises should properly fix the norms of piecework production, and strictly observe the principle of paying wages according to the work done.

Party organizations should pay strict attention to improving the methods of industrial management and tightening discipline in the execution of plans at factories and enterprises. They must see to it that consultative meetings on production are held efficiently so that the managers should avoid being subjective in their judgments and not pass any arbitrary decisions in the management of their enterprises and the intelligence of the workers is taken into consideration. Also, factories and enterprises must fulfil their plans in indices without fail. Some factories and enterprises, engrossed in fulfilling their plans in terms of monetary return, have manifested trends to produce easily manufactured goods or those not even envisaged in the plan. These trends must not be repeated in the implementation of the Two-Year Plan. Party organizations must make sure that factories and enterprises fulfil their production plans unconditionally not only in terms of value but in terms of indices of products also. They must see to it that factories and enterprises do not safeguard only their own interests, but manufacture joint products in time, so that production at other factories and enterprises is not held up.

Party organizations should direct their attention also to improving labour safety and helping the workers raise their material and cultural standards of living. Factories and enterprises must take thoroughgoing measures for labour safety, and fully guarantee the living conditions of the workers.

In the field of transport, the main emphasis of Party guidance should be directed towards flawlessly implementing the plans concerning movement of railway freight. Party organizations should ensure that the locomotives and freight cars in use are increased in
number. They should ascertain that trains run punctually for scheduled traffic, have railway tracks reinforced and locomotives and freight cars properly repaired.

The fulfilment of the plans concerning farm produce, as envisaged in the Two-Year Plan, is of great significance for fully solving the food problem, guaranteeing industrial raw materials and improving the living conditions of the people. Party organizations should see to it that in the agricultural spheres they expand the area of land under cultivation, improve the soil, secure seeds of superior species, apply advanced farming methods, carry out irrigation projects on a large scale and breed plenty of domestic animals. Thus, the plans for the production of grain, industrial crops and livestock produce will be fulfilled without fail.

In order to carry out the Two-Year National Economic Plan with success, Party organizations should widely explain and propagate the significance of the implementation of this plan among the working masses. It is also necessary to introduce and propagate, through the Party newspaper and other media of information and motivation work, exemplary deeds and useful experience in the carrying out of the Two-Year Plan.

Intensifying the struggle for practising economy is one of the vital factors for successfully implementing the Two-Year National Economic Plan. Factories and enterprises should rid themselves of the habit of wasting raw materials and supplies, and clerical bodies, too, should take care not to waste any funds by either diverting them into illegal channels or expending them at random. Also, all the people must lead frugal lives.

The struggle for the fulfilment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan cannot but be accompanied by a serious class struggle. The greater the successes in the democratic construction in the northern half of Korea, the more despicably the reactionaries intrigue against us. We cannot assert that there will be no reactionary activities of subversion and sabotage in the course of implementing the Two-Year Plan, the huge task of democratic construction. Party organizations
must make sure that sharp revolutionary vigilance is maintained in all areas, all units—factories, railways, villages—to closely watch reactionary activities so as to uncover and crush them in good time.

4. ON IMPROVING THE WORK OF THE UNITED FRONT AND STRENGTHENING GUIDANCE TO SOCIAL ORGANIZATIONS

An important problem which arises due to our Party’s political line is that of improving the work of the united front. Our Party played a leading role in forming and consolidating the Democratic National United Front. It has made devoted efforts towards strengthening our ties with friendly parties within the DNUF, and rallying together people of all strata under the banner of the DNUF. As a result the Democratic National United Front of North Korea has strengthened and developed into a mighty political organization, which has millions of organized masses within its ranks.

There have, however, been quite a few defects in the work of the united front which must be quickly corrected. One of the defects is that certain Party organizations and their members did not have close enough ties in work and cooperate with the organizations and members of friendly parties; and the other is that on the pretext of strengthening the DNUF they did not wage a principled struggle but acted in concert with the undemocratic tendencies revealed among the organizations and members of friendly parties. Both tendencies are quite contrary to our Party’s united front policy.

Party organizations must decisively improve and strengthen the work with friendly party organizations and members.

Our Party organizations should take the initiative in keeping close ties with them and cooperate with them, in accordance with the policy of the Party Central Committee. They must establish the habit
of being first in approaching friendly party organizations when it is necessary to consult them seriously about the problems they are faced with and work together to solve them, instead of just waiting to be approached by them.

In the work with friendly party organizations it is important to strengthen unity among the rank and file. We must avoid frictions with their members; we must keep exerting Party influence on them, so that they will actively support and implement the policies of the Government of the Republic. At present, the reactionaries who are hiding themselves within friendly parties are instigating their unawakened members to cause friction in order to weaken the ties between our Party and the friendly parties. We must work well with friendly party members so that they will expose the reactionaries who manoeuvre, lurking in their midst.

We must give proper guidance to social organizations. This has an important bearing upon reinforcing the Party’s broad foundation among the masses, and successfully carrying out our Party’s revolutionary tasks. However, some Party organizations take the work concerning social organizations very lightly and do not give proper guidance to them. Certain Party organizations even underestimate the role of these social organizations, and assign secondary officials to the task of leading them. This results in social organizations being unable to perform their role properly as outer organizations of our Party.

In guiding social organizations, it is important to send Party activists and enhance their role. The satisfactory performance of their role as outer organizations of our Party depends largely on how the leadership bodies of the social organizations work at different levels. Party organizations must assign excellent members to the leadership bodies of social organizations at different levels and help them work in a responsible manner.

What is also important for Party leadership as applied to social organizations is that senior officials of Party committees at all levels should take upon themselves the work of social organizations and give
them the orientation suitable to their characteristic features. They should receive work reports at intervals and help them solve knotty problems in good time. The social organizations such as the trade unions, Peasants’ Union, Women’s Union and Democratic Youth League have their own characteristic features in organizational composition. If you do not take this into account but guide them by giving a uniform orientation for their work plans, it would be meaningless to set up diverse social organizations. Party organizations must give specific guidance to each of the social organizations in keeping with its characteristic features.

At this meeting we have discussed important measures to be taken for improving and strengthening the work of Party organizations at all levels. This Fifth Meeting of the Party Central Committee will be a great turning point in improving and strengthening the work of our Party organizations, particularly, that of the Party cells and primary and sub-county Party organizations.

I hope all Party organizations and Party workers will painstakingly perform the tasks proposed by the Party Central Committee, so as to bring about a new turn in Party work.
Comrades,

I intended to attend this meeting from the beginning, but I could not because of a number of unavoidable circumstances. Though I did not take part in this meeting from the beginning, I do have a detailed report about it.

Today, availing myself of this opportunity of meeting the senior officials of all units under the Ministry of the Interior, I would like to say a few words about the tasks that should be undertaken by the interior service personnel.

In a little over three years after liberation, our people have achieved great successes which are unprecedented in the history of our nation.

Under the Party’s leadership our people set up the people’s power and, by relying on this power, carried out successful democratic reforms such as the agrarian reform and the nationalization of major industries. They have rebuilt the destroyed factories and enterprises and have been running the national economy in a planned manner. As a result of the agrarian reform and the nationalization of major industries the peasants became owners of land, and the workers became masters of factories. The major means of production such as the factories and enterprises owned by the Japanese imperialists, pro-Japanese
collaborators and other traitors to the nation, came into the hands of the people, and thereby helped to serve the cause of rehabilitation and development of the national economy.

A few months ago, in accordance with the general will of all the people in north and south Korea, the Supreme People’s Assembly which is the highest instrument of state power, was formed. The Democratic People’s Republic of Korea was founded and the Central Government was also established.

Today, the workers, peasants and people from all strata of society in our country are enthusiastically supporting the Government of the Republic and, upholding its policies, are rising up as one in the building of a democratic Korea.

The great achievements of the past attained in the northern half of Korea are attributable also to the splendid feats of the interior service personnel. They rendered great service by seeing to it that democratic reforms were carried out and the Republic founded. But you must not rest contented with this.

Our country has not yet been reunified. At present the south Korean people are being ruthlessly exploited and oppressed under the barbarous rule of the US imperialists and puppet Syngman Rheeites and are being slaughtered in cold blood.

We cannot remain onlookers when our brothers in the south are faced with such misery. We must drive the US imperialists out of south Korea and overthrow the puppet Syngman Rhee clique as soon as possible in order to reunify the country. We must see to it that the south Korean people enjoy the same kind of happy life that the people in north Korea are enjoying.

In order to reunify the homeland and enable the south Korean people to enjoy the same blissful life as the north Korean people, we must accomplish in the future much more than what we have done already. In other words, we must further strengthen the democratic base in the northern half of Korea, politically, economically and militarily. The interior service personnel must carry out their duty efficiently, as part of their contribution towards bringing about the
country’s reunification and revolutionary victory.

The main task of the interior service personnel is to defend our Party and the Government of the Republic. They should also firmly safeguard the democratic institutions set up in the northern half of Korea from the enemy’s encroachment and subversive activities in any form, maintain social order and protect the lives and property of the people. Only when this sacred task is satisfactorily fulfilled, will it be possible to make the democratic base as firm as a rock in the northern half of Korea, and, further, to achieve national reunification, the unanimous desire of all the Korean people, at an early date. They must deeply realize the importance of their task and do all they can to carry it out correctly.

What, then, should they do to fulfil their task satisfactorily?

They should, first of all, intensify their vigilance everywhere and at all times, and completely thwart the enemy’s heinous manoeuvres at every step and spot and round up all spies, wreckers and saboteurs.

Instead of accepting the Korean people’s just demand for the withdrawal of foreign troops from Korea and getting out of south Korea, the US imperialists are not only pursuing their policy of colonial enslavement in south Korea more openly, but are also frantically trying to invade the northern half of Korea. They are intensifying their preparations for the invasion; they are instigating the Syngman Rhee puppet clique to raise “march north” racket, reinforcing the puppet armed forces on a large scale, and building and expanding military roads along the 38th parallel. Of late, the US imperialists and puppet Syngman Rheeites have frequently carried out armed provocations along the 38th parallel. They have gone as far as making surprise attacks on islands off the west coast of the northern half of Korea and have perpetrated without hesitation intolerable barbarities such as setting fire to the dwelling houses and killing or kidnapping peaceful inhabitants. Many spies, wreckers and saboteurs are infiltrating into the north by land and sea. Because of these manoeuvres of the US imperialists and puppet Syngman Rheeites, the situation in our country is very tense today.
The prevailing situation demands more urgently than ever before that the interior service personnel closely watch every move of the enemy with the sharpest revolutionary vigilance and that they intensify the struggle against spies, wreckers and saboteurs.

However, some interior service personnel have become so lax in their discipline that they lead indolent and careless lives. The staff of a certain sub-station in Hwanghae Province make a round of weddings, birthday parties and mourning houses in order to drink wine and then make fools of themselves. The sub-station personnel on the Cho Island even drank wine with enemy spies and met a terrible disaster. All these facts show that some interior service personnel have got extremely slack in their discipline.

At a time when the enemy is intensifying their aggressive manoeuvres, the interior service personnel who have the weighty responsibility of defending revolutionary gains must not indulge in drinking and leading fast lives. If, instead of devoting themselves wholly to the execution of their tasks, they become fond of drinking and receiving bribes, their class vigilance will be so inert that they will not be able to discern between friend and foe and may be tricked by the enemy. Interior service personnel must never be addicted to drinking and dissipation and must not lead dissolute lives. They must always have a keen sense of revolutionary vigilance and must never slacken at work or out of it.

Interior service personnel must guard the 38th parallel and coastlines more closely to prevent spies, wreckers and saboteurs from sneaking into the northern half of Korea. The Ministry of the Interior should supplement the guard forces along the 38th parallel and coastlines with those who are sound politically and ideologically and who are well versed in military techniques. They should also set up more guard posts. The officials of the Ministry of the Interior and commanders of the Security Forces should show deep concern for the soldiers’ life and make sure that they have no hardships while on their guard duty.

Hostile elements skulk in from south Korea and there are others
who are already hiding themselves in the northern half of Korea. Those who have concealed themselves among us are in league with the US imperialists and the puppet Syngman Rheeites. They are manoeuvring to overthrow our system and restore their old one. Interior service personnel must watch these people keenly, unmask them and eliminate every one of them.

With this end in view, interior service personnel must first make sure that all organizations and enterprises are on the alert. At present, however, they do not care at all as to how they are faring. If our organizations and enterprises are not well guarded and remain defenseless, hostile elements will transgress at will. To guard against this the interior service personnel must tighten control over all organizations and enterprises so that they will protect themselves. In particular, a strict system of checking their night guard should be established, as this will be effective in making sure that hostile elements are given no room to set foot among us to plot.

In order to carry out the anti-espionage struggle successfully, it is very important for interior service personnel to grasp the specific situation in the areas under their respective jurisdiction. The chiefs of provincial departments of the interior, and county interior service stations and all other interior service personnel must be as familiar with the situation in their areas as the palms of their own hands. Their knowledge of this must be so detailed that they even know the number of spoons that every family has. When they know this, they can check and crush reactionary moves in advance. Interior service officials must have closer ties with the inhabitants and go and live among them so as to acquaint themselves with the specific situation in their areas.

At present, spies, wreckers and saboteurs are plotting against us very craftily. Therefore, it is not possible to uncover their moves at once by the old methods of investigation. Interior service personnel must make unceasing efforts to raise the level of their technical knowledge and learn scientific methods of investigation. Interior service organizations should intensify the training of their men to improve their professional qualifications.
Next, interior service officials must strive to maintain the law and order of the state as well as social order.

Strictly maintaining the law and order in the state and society is one of the main tasks of the interior service organizations. If they endeavour to do this, they can prevent all kinds of violations of the law and stop fires, traffic and other accidents and, thus protect the lives and property of the people.

At present, however, interior service personnel do not strive to keep the law and social order. They do not fight against thefts of state property, nor do they prevent traffic violations and the non-observance of traffic regulations on land and water by vehicle drivers and navigators. They do not fight against negligence in sanitation. As a result, thefts of state property have not yet been eliminated, social order is not observed and the towns are unclean. Interior service personnel must rigidly control those who violate the law and order in the state and disturb social order.

State property is the precious fruit of our people’s labour. Interior service personnel must fight uncompromisingly against those who embezzle or steal or waste. They must spot the criminals on time and arrest those who steal state grain from granaries and goods from consumers’ cooperative stores or pilfer other state property.

Meanwhile, in every sphere and unit they must strictly observe the established order and system and, particularly, tighten control over vehicle drivers and sailors so that they will strictly observe traffic regulations on land and water. Thus they will prevent fires, traffic and other accidents.

Interior service personnel must be deeply concerned with sanitation. If they take an “I-don’t-care” attitude to the inhabitants living in unhealthy conditions, they cannot claim that they have fulfilled their duty as interior service personnel who strive to look after the people’s lives. They should exercise full control so that the inhabitants strictly observe private and public hygiene and keep their homes and villages neat and tidy. They should, in particular, regularly inspect the catering facilities such as restaurants and hotels and see that
they are hygienically maintained, and tighten control to make sure that no one opens an eating house without a licence.

Road management is an important aspect of the work of the interior service personnel. They must manage the roads well because otherwise they cannot prevent traffic accidents nor bring to book those drivers and pedestrians who violate the traffic regulations.

If interior service personnel are to combat unlawful acts, they must themselves be exemplary in observing law and order. However, some of them violate them openly. These people are not qualified to work at interior service organizations. Interior service personnel must adhere to law and order more strictly than anybody else. If they violate them, they, too, should be punished for it by law.

Next, interior service personnel must thoroughly observe military discipline and be well acquainted with their weapons.

Ours is a voluntary discipline. Therefore, interior service personnel should abide by discipline and order voluntarily, and not by any coercion. They must accept orders and instructions from their superiors without question, execute them conscientiously and work and behave as required by the established order. Since they are in uniforms, they should be neat in appearance and have military manners. They should always wear their uniforms tidily and walk briskly.

Interior service personnel should be well versed in the use of their arms. Otherwise, it will be of no use whatsoever however good their arms might be. As the saying goes, if you can’t handle your weapon, however good it may be, it is worse than a pair of tongs. At present, interior service men often misfire their arms, and this is, ultimately, because they do not know how to handle arms or because they violate the regulations pertaining to handling arms. All interior service personnel should be able to handle their arms skilfully, take good care of them and preserve and handle them as required by the regulations. Interior service organizations should intensify their shooting practice and education in the handling of arms so that all of their members will be familiar with their arms.
Next, interior service personnel should tirelessly endeavour to acquire a popular work style.

The police in the days of Japanese imperialism were a force who protected the interests of the privileged minority such as the landlord and capitalist classes; they repressed, exploited and commanded the people and were fond of receiving bribes, but this is something that our interior service personnel must not indulge in.

Our interior service organizations are the people’s organizations and those who work there are the people’s interior service personnel. Therefore, they have to become genuine servants of the people, who will sacrifice their individual interests for those of the country and the people and devote their all to the struggle so as to benefit the country and the people.

In order to fulfil their sacred duty as faithful servants of the people, interior service personnel should completely reject the old police work style and have a style of work which is acceptable to our people.

Among the interior service personnel there are still some comrades who infringe upon the human rights of the people just as the police did in the days of Japanese imperialism. The police in those days abused and manhandled people and arrested, jailed and tortured the innocent at random. But the people’s interior service personnel are never allowed to behave that way. They must fight against the police work style of Japanese imperialism and rid themselves of it completely.

They should be modest in word and deed and live frugally. They should have noble qualities: they should always rely on the people in work, respect and teach them and learn from them.

While being immeasurably humble to the people, the interior service personnel must fight mercilessly against our class enemies who encroach upon the interests of the state and people. In other words, they must have gentle looks but strong minds.

Next, they should strive to become indomitable revolutionary fighters.

Today, in the light of the situation prevailing in the country and the importance of the duty of the interior service personnel, our Party
demands that all of them prepare themselves thoroughly as indomitable revolutionary fighters. They cannot perform their duty satisfactorily in the present situation unless they become indomitable revolutionary fighters. On this also depends their being able to carry out efficiently the honourable duty assigned to them by the country and people.

What, then, should they do to prepare themselves to be such fighters?

They must first be firmly convinced that our revolution will succeed. Only then can they fight on untiringly even under adverse conditions.

The anti-Japanese armed struggle in the past was a very complicated and difficult struggle. The Japanese imperialists ran amuck to surround and annihilate the guerrillas by bringing in massive forces and even planes, and manoeuvred to disorganize our revolutionary ranks from within by secretly planting spies and saboteurs into them. Setting up concentration villages they worked frantically to cut the guerrillas’ ties with the people and starve them to death. They even carried out a false propaganda that the guerrillas were like “a drop in the ocean” and that if they “surrendered” they would have official posts instead of having a difficult time in the mountains. One can go on endlessly about how arduous the anti-Japanese armed struggle was. It was unimaginably hard. But the anti-Japanese guerrillas were never pessimistic about the future of the Korean revolution. It is the law of historical development that the old order changes, giving place to new. The guerrillas were strongly convinced that in accordance with the law, Japanese imperialism would fall and the Korean revolution would definitely be triumphant. Therefore, they endured hardship after hardship, and fought till victory was finally theirs.

At that time, there were some people who had no faith in the successful outcome of our revolution. These people were deceived by the false propaganda of Japanese imperialism and became turncoats. It is for this reason that having faith in a positive victory is most important.
Today the US imperialists who boast about themselves as being the “most powerful” in the world and their stooges, the Syngman Rhee puppet clique, are dead set against the reunification of our country, but they will fall and we shall certainly accomplish our historic cause of national reunification. We have the Workers’ Party with more than 800,000 members, a strong people’s government, and the People’s Army and interior service organizations which defend the country and people. We also enjoy international support and encouragement. Therefore, our cause of national reunification will be positively successful. Interior service personnel should clearly realize this and have a strong faith in revolutionary victory.

They must also arm themselves firmly with a high degree of class consciousness. Then, they will hate the enemy and thus fight well against reactionaries.

They should intensify their political and theoretical studies in order to be strongly convinced of the success of our revolutionary cause and equip themselves firmly with a high degree of class consciousness. The political bodies in interior service organizations must intensify political and ideological education and organizational life among interior service men. They may arrange short training courses to raise the level of their political and theoretical knowledge.

I am sure that interior service personnel will admirably carry out the duty entrusted to them.
ON IMPROVING THE COLLEGIATE INSTRUCTION OF SOCIAL SCIENCE SUBJECTS

Concluding Speech at a Meeting of the Presidium of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of North Korea

April 18, 1949

At today’s meeting we have summed up the inspection of the instruction of social science subjects at the University, Pyongyang Normal College, Sinuiju Teachers’ Training College, Hungnam Institute of Technology and Hamhung Medical College, and have discussed how to improve this instruction at institutions of higher learning. I think the present state of affairs of the instruction of social science subjects is reflected accurately in the report on the inspection and the debate, and correct proposals have been made on how to improve this instruction. Therefore, I will deal briefly with a few problems on improving the instruction of social science subjects at colleges.

The instruction of social science subjects has a very great significance in providing the students with progressive ideas and training them to be competent people who will serve the country and people devotedly. Through this instruction, institutions of higher learning make their students recognize the general laws of social development, the principles of revolution, the experience of our revolution and the legitimacy of our Party’s policies. Therefore, the level of this collegiate instruction should be high.
In the past, our institutions of higher learning lacked competent teachers and teaching materials and had a number of knotty problems. In spite of this they have achieved quite a lot of success in the instruction of social science subjects.

They have taught somewhat correctly the social science subjects such as philosophy, political economy and history according to the educational programme and have laid considerable material foundations for this instruction. What is of special importance is that the teachers of social science are now confident of their own teaching ability.

In the past, the instruction of social science subjects had some disadvantages as well as advantages.

The instruction of social science subjects at the collegiate level was not provided as competently as required by our Party. Some colleges did not draw up a coordinated outline of each subject; as a result, the teachers made the grave mistake of giving instruction based on the plans they had prepared at random and, at certain colleges, the teachers went as far as to instruct on the basis of their own plans, which were contrary to the Party’s policies and which were unscientific. Moreover, quite a few social science teachers did not make the necessary efforts to improve their methods of instruction, and conducted lectures as if they were just dictating. They guided the students and appraised their scholastic attainments in an extremely formalistic way. This is why the students are not so good at social science subjects.

These defects showed themselves in the instruction of social science subjects, because the teachers’ level was low, but, more notably, because the Ministry of Education and leading officials of the colleges did not organize or guide the instruction properly. They took no measures whatsoever to raise the social science teachers’ level which was so low that they could not teach proficiently. They did not make regular arrangements for the teachers to conduct scientific and theoretical researches, nor did they organize in a planned fashion model lectures and exchange of teaching experience. They did not even bother to provide the teachers with any reference books.
One of the main reasons for the defects in the instruction of social science subjects is that college Party committees failed to give proper guidance to this work. Some of them did not take measures to ensure the quality of the work and conducted the political and ideological education of the teachers and students inadequately.

Is it possible then to overcome these defects? It is possible because they are defects which temporarily manifest themselves in the course of the rapid development of our young institutions of higher learning.

As for the poor qualifications of the teachers, the reason is that quite a few inadequately prepared comrades were assigned to institutions of higher learning when they were founded. But their present level of teaching is not so low that they cannot impart instruction properly. Their level is incomparably higher than when the colleges were founded. The reason for their not teaching properly is that they have not been teaching long enough and do not have sufficient experience. The point is how concerted are the efforts of the leading officials and teachers of colleges. If they work hard enough, they can rectify the defects which are present in the instruction of social science subjects.

At present, however, just because there are some defects, certain people propose to stop the instruction of social science subjects till such time as the teachers’ level of teaching has been raised. This is not a constructive proposal; it is a wrong viewpoint. The present situation in our country urgently demands that we train our own cadres, firmly equipped with progressive ideas, more quickly and in greater numbers. We must not hesitate before hardships but overcome them.

The leading officials and social science teachers of colleges should realize fully the importance of the duty that rests with them, and strive to correct the shortcomings, so as to bring about a new turn in the instruction of social science subjects.

What is most important in improving this instruction is to correctly define the main orientation and conduct it accordingly. Correctly defining the main orientation is one of the fundamental problems in carrying out our Party’s educational policy. This policy aims at ensuring the scientific and ideological qualities of the instruction of
social science subjects, and training the students to be able people.

Where, then, should emphasis be laid in the instruction of social science subjects?

First, emphasis should be laid on making the students thoroughly cognizant of our country’s situation and our Party’s policies.

Needless to say, in the instruction of social science subjects it is necessary to teach the students the general laws of social development and Marxism-Leninism, as well as foreign experiences in revolutionary struggle. But, with just a knowledge of Marxism-Leninism and foreign experience in revolutionary struggle, the students cannot understand our revolution well, and cannot skilfully solve difficult and complicated problems which arise in the building of a new society.

The sole guiding compass of our revolution is our Party’s policies. Our Party’s policies detail the revolutionary tasks to be performed by our people and the ways and means to perform them. Therefore, the colleges should give instruction of social science subjects and place the utmost emphasis on teaching our Party’s policies and link it with our country’s reality. Only then can they show the students the course of our revolution and impart to them the actual knowledge needed for the building of a new country.

Second, the instruction of social science subjects should lay stress on our nation’s history of struggle and its fine traditions.

Our nation fought the Japanese imperialists for a long time. In the course of this long struggle brilliant patriotic traditions were established. Only when the students are taught our nation’s history of struggle and its fine traditions, can they have a lofty national pride and confidence, ardently love their country and nation and take an active part in the building of a new country.

Third, the instruction of social science subjects should lay stress on imbuing the students with a burning hostility against the class enemy and instil in them an uncompromising fighting spirit.

In our country today a fierce struggle is going on between revolution and counterrevolution and between progress and reaction.
The US imperialists and their stooges, the puppet Syngman Rheeites, are more openly carrying out aggressive manoeuvres against the northern half of Korea, and the remnants of the overthrown classes who exploited us are obstructing our advance by hiding themselves among us.

If we do not harbour a bitter hatred for US imperialism, its puppet Syngman Rheeites, and all other class enemies and fight against them, we cannot safeguard the independence of the country and the gains of the revolution. In the instruction of social science subjects it is necessary to lay bare the reactionary nature and cruelty of all the class enemies, including US imperialism and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique, so that the students will have a burning hostility against the class enemies and develop an uncompromising fighting spirit.

Institutions of higher learning should give instruction of social science subjects in this way.

Another important factor for improving the instruction is to enhance the sense of responsibility of the chairs and their role.

The chair is the basic unit of collegiate education. Only by enhancing its sense of responsibility and increasing its role is it possible to execute the curriculum thoroughly and guarantee the scientific and ideological qualities of the instruction.

The chairs must first prepare good instruction plans. The plans must meet with the Party’s requirements and must be scientific and accurate.

The chairs should also pay careful attention to preparing the teachers adequately for instruction. Making proper preparations is absolutely necessary for making the instruction a success. The preparations must be made in keeping with a thorough understanding of the Party’s policy concerning a given subject, and the requirements of a developing fact. They must be made after mastering the content of the subject and correctly understanding the level of the students. The chairs should guide the teachers well on this principle.

What is most important in preparing the instruction is to make good lecture plans. When preparing the lectures, the teachers must study our Party’s policies intensively, and read plenty of reference books. This
enables them to prepare good plans. The chairs should not only guide the teachers in making good plans but also see to it that their lecture plans are perfected by checking them and by having group discussions.

It is necessary to have good visual aids along with the lecture plans. Visual aid is one of the important means of improving the effect of the instruction. The visual aids must not be complex; they must be simple yet rich in content.

After preparing good lecture plans and visual aids it is important to give proper instruction. However good the preparations may be, the instruction cannot be useful if it is not imparted properly. The chairs should lead and supervise the teachers and ensure that they teach well.

The chairs must see to it that the teachers give regular guidance to the students in their studies and at the same time accurately appraise their scholastic attainments. One of the important methods of checking how much the students have grasped of what they have been taught and of appraising their scholastic attainments, is by examination. The chairs should collectively discuss and solve all problems arising in the course of the examination–from selecting exam questions to conducting exams and estimating the results. They should make sure that every teacher conducts exams strictly in accordance with uniform standards.

Building up the ranks of social science teachers and raising their scientific and theoretical qualifications is vital for improving the instruction of the subjects of social science.

Institutions of higher learning should enrol scientifically and theoretically competent persons as teachers, at the same time forcefully going ahead with the work of improving the scientific and theoretical qualifications of the teachers already on the active list. They must inculcate the habit of studying among the teachers, and give all of them the task of bettering their qualifications and supervise them strictly so that they carry out their tasks without fail. Also, they should make sure that scientific researches are intensified by the teachers, and arrange regular meetings where the teachers present what they have achieved in their researches. They should make systematic
arrangements for model instructions, visits to classes at work, meetings where teaching experiences can be shared and should also organize short training courses frequently for the teachers.

College libraries should be well stocked in order to provide the teachers and students with adequate material for studies.

It is necessary to improve the guidance of the leading college officials and the Ministry of Education on the instruction of social science subjects.

Since the social science teachers are at a lower level, the improvement of the instruction on social science subjects will depend largely on how well they are able to guide them. They should give responsible and proper guidance with regard to this work.

Leading college personnel must not occupy themselves only with administrative affairs, but visit the chairs frequently. If they do so, they can grasp the specific situation of the instruction and take accurate steps to improve the instruction. They should go to the chairs regularly to understand the actual state of affairs with regard to the instruction, help solve tricky problems and give substantial help to the teachers and teach them.

The Ministry of Education should intensify their guidance and inspection of the instruction of social science subjects. We must create the post of an inspector for social science studies in the higher education bureau of the ministry to guide the instruction of social science subjects and also establish a consulting centre to give answers to questions on social science. The Ministry of Education must organize promptly the examination of collegiate teaching aids on social science subjects.

It is necessary to elevate the role of college Party committees. They must give such guidance as to ensure the instruction of social science subjects on a high level. They must intensify ideological education and struggle among the teachers and students, so as to root out the remnants of Japanese imperialist ideas. They should arm them firmly with our Party’s policies and lead the Party-member teachers and students to be exemplary in instruction and studies.
DON’T GIVE UP EVEN AN INCH OF LAND TO THE ENEMY

Instruction to the Cadres of the Third Security Brigade under the Security Bureau of the Ministry of the Interior

May 10, 1949

During the battle on Mt. Songak that took place on May 4, the soldiers of the Songaksan Battalion fought well and with superb courage. In spite of their lack of experience in battle they repulsed the enemy’s large-scale attack successfully and inflicted an irretrievable defeat on the enemy. Through this battle we not only utterly frustrated the enemy’s attempt to seize the strategically important Mt. Songak but also clearly showed everyone the strength of our armed forces.

However, since the enemy carries on its attacks, you must not rest on your laurels and get drunk with victory. Far from giving up its aggressive attempt, the enemy is now reinforcing its troops along the 38th parallel and preparing for fresh attacks by mobilizing even its reserve forces. We must increase our vigilance and closely watch the enemy’s every move, and be fully prepared to cope with its reckless military provocations. We must not give up even an inch of land to the enemy come what may.

It is necessary to pay special attention to the education of the soldiers. You must further strengthen the work of the cultural departments and Party organizations so as to develop a conviction of victory and a tenacious fighting spirit among the soldiers and enhance
the vanguard role of the Party members.

To ensure victory in battle it is highly important to elevate the role of the staff. Therefore, the commanders must give careful attention to the work of the staff. You must intensify the training of the staff members so as to enable them to handle any situation skilfully. The staff must run their units according to strict schedule with minute details of combat plans, ranging from the organization of guard work and combat preparation to combat command.

In order to annihilate the invading enemy decisively in front of your defence line, you must perfect your positional system quickly and also strengthen your defence installations. In particular, for those tactically important points and independent defence positions you must rigorously set up a circular defence system and build permanent pillboxes and barriers.

You must not only wipe out the attacking enemy in front of your defence line but also make certain that their action plans are so disrupted that their attacks are frustrated even before they start. You must intensify activities of the raid parties and concentrate your gunfire on the enemy’s headquarters and the areas where they tend to concentrate, in order to wipe out their main groups and deal them a fatal blow.

Now that the enemy is increasing its military intrusions, it is necessary to activate a mobile battalion. This battalion should be made to have their training on the alert, and once the enemy takes action, they should move in promptly to support our frontline units, so as to give them a shattering blow.

It is necessary to increase the firing capacity of the brigade’s artillery and use it in the best possible manner. The guns should not only be placed in the ravines but, when the situation and terrain demand, on hills and in the fortified positions as well. The idea is to place the guns wherever you can use them effectively and annihilate as many enemies as possible.

It is also important that you keep the weapons and the combat and technical equipment in readiness and have enough bullets, shells and
other military supplies in stock. In order to fully guarantee the mobility of your units, you must increase your means of transport.

You must have more military dogs, and use them along with the cavalry, so as to completely cover vacuum zones.

To fight battles successfully it is necessary not only to adopt proper logistical measures but also to take meticulous care of the soldiers. You should ensure that the courageous defenders of the hill are served with warm rice and soup at proper times and supply them with plenty of meat and vegetables. Living in the trenches, our soldiers may catch cold and have upset stomachs. Therefore, able medical service personnel should be sent to take good care of them.

The brigade must have a large well-furnished hospital. This is particularly essential because the enemy carries out armed attacks almost every day. As soon as there are any casualties, they should be sent back for treatment without delay and good care should be taken of them.

The commanders should organize the work so well that the soldiers get enough rest even while they are intensifying the guard duty at the front.

The Security Forces must love and protect the people and be loved and supported by the people in return. Herein lies the source of the strength of our revolutionary army. From now on you should have closer ties with the people and continue to exert a good influence on them.

All Party organizations and government bodies must intensify their political work so that the people have a deep affection for the army and give it their wholehearted support, and look after their dependents kindly. It is necessary to send gifts and comforting letters to the soldiers of the Security Forces on the 38th parallel, and to send professional art troupes, so as to boost their morale. From now on, we in the capital should make proper arrangements to see that preference is given to the soldiers of the Security Forces on the 38th parallel in every respect.

You should be highly appreciative of the distinguished services
rendered by brave soldiers in battle. You should make arrangements for their trips to the rear and send them on leave. The struggle of the warriors of the Security Forces on the 38th parallel should be dramatized, picturized and written about. Model soldiers should be sent to the rear so that they can talk extensively about their experiences on the battle fields.

As the situation is a complex one, the soldiers of the Security Forces on the 38th parallel must sharpen their vigilance and intensify their guard so that they can thwart the enemy’s armed provocations in time.
At today’s meeting we adopted the reply of the Democratic National United Front of North Korea to the proposal of south Korean political parties and social organizations on the formation of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea. As for the original of the reply adopted at the meeting it is better that we have the members of the Central Committee of the DNUFNK sign it and have it on file as a historic document, and prepare a duplicate to be sent to south Korean political parties and social organizations in the name of the CC of the DNUFNK.

Forming the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea is a highly important and vital matter for reunifying the whole of Korea.

Forming this front to rally around it the entire patriotic and democratic forces in north and south Korea will mark an epoch-making advance in our people’s struggle for the country’s reunification and territorial integrity. Therefore, all the political parties and social organizations affiliated with the DNUFNK must do everything in their power to make sure that the Democratic Front for
the Reunification of Korea is successfully established.

The political parties and social organizations must not make preparations for the formation of the DFRK in a formalistic manner. They must do so efficiently, under a detailed plan, and, through their lower-echelon bodies, conduct an extensive explanation and information work on the formation of the DFRK.

How, then, should the information work be conducted?

First, we must intensify the information work to make known the appalling living conditions of the people in the southern half of Korea, and expose the reactionary nature of south Korean society.

South Korea under US military government is virtually a hell on earth where poverty, unemployment, terror and oppression prevail. There, innocent people are arrested, imprisoned and slaughtered every day, and patriotic political parties and social organizations have gone underground. As the days go by, the national economy is being ruined and the commodity prices are skyrocketing. As a result, the number of unemployed is snowballing and the people are groaning under the hardship beyond description. Based on this factual matter, the political parties and social organizations should conduct an extensive information work to expose the reactionary nature of south Korean society. This way they can arouse the people in the northern half of Korea to take an active part in the struggle to save the south Korean people from these dire straits.

Second, it is necessary to propagate widely, that in order to reunify the country, and relieve the south Korean people from their misery, US troops have to be driven out of south Korea and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique overthrown.

The forces that doggedly obstruct our country’s reunification are the US imperialists and their lackeys, the Syngman Rhee puppet clique. It is again they who impose pain and misfortune on the south Korean people. The US imperialists are hatching various plots to keep their armed forces of aggression stationed in south Korea in order to pursue the policy of colonial enslavement in our country. The Syngman Rhee puppet clique who can prolong their days only with the
help of the American bayonet, is also manoeuvring to legalize the presence of US troops in south Korea. Only by forcing the US imperialists out of south Korea and overthrowing the Syngman Rhee puppet clique, can we reunify the country and enable the south Korean people to free themselves from the miserable plight of today. We must carry out our information work effectively so that our people will understand this correctly.

Third, the information work should be conducted in such a manner as to convince the people from all strata of society in north and south Korea, that only by bringing about the firm solidarity of the whole nation, is it possible to shatter the obstructionist manoeuvres of US imperialism and puppet Syngman Rheeites and reunify the country.

Our people are a noble people who ardently love their country and fellow countrymen. They are a sagacious people who are capable of hewing out their destiny by their own efforts. Once all the people of north and south Korea are closely united, it will be a tremendous force that can easily defeat any enemy. This is why the US imperialists and Syngman Rhee puppet clique fear our people’s unity more than anything else and are trying to prevent it in every way.

At present some people in south Korea are blindly following US imperialism and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique because they are not politically awake. This means that our information work has not yet penetrated deeply to the south Korean people. We must awaken and bring over to our side those who follow US imperialism and the puppet Syngman Rheeites blindly.

All the political parties and social organizations should carry out an extensive information work on the importance of national unity and its strength, so that people from all walks of life who love their country and nation and desire the country’s reunification, will unite firmly.

Fourth, people of all strata of society should be made to have a correct understanding of the question of the country’s peaceful reunification.

The division of the country has brought immeasurable pain and misfortune to our people and has seriously hampered the country’s
unified development. Reunifying the divided country is an urgent problem, the solution of which does not allow even a moment’s delay.

Our people are unanimously desirous of the country’s peaceful reunification and are struggling for it. Our demand for the peaceful reunification of the country is clear. We demand that the question of national reunification should be solved by the Korean people themselves, by peaceful means and on a democratic basis free from fratricide and foreign interference. We shall continue to maintain this principle in the struggle for the country’s reunification.

In order to reunify the country peacefully, the US imperialists and the UN Commission on Korea which is their tool of aggression, must first of all get out of south Korea. A unified legislative body of north and south Korea should be elected by secret ballot on the principle of universal, equal and direct suffrage on the condition that there is no foreign interference. A supreme legislative body which will be established through a general election in both parts of north and south Korea, should adopt the Constitution of the Republic and form the government.

Our demand for the country’s peaceful reunification is most reasonable and fair. Anybody who loves the country and nation truly will support our demand.

The political parties and social organizations should explain and propagate our policy of national reunification widely among the people from different walks of life so that they will understand it correctly and strive for the peaceful reunification of the country.

Fifth, people of all strata of society should be educated to work with greater vigour and zeal.

If our people become slack and lax, the country cannot be reunified. Even at this moment, in south Korea, our brothers and patriots are being hit by enemy bullets. Bearing this in mind we must work more intensely and zealously.

Sixth, people of all strata of society should be inculcated with the idea that victory is inevitable.
Today we are convinced and confident of victory. Immediately after the First World War the Soviet Union was the only democratic state in the world. At that time the Soviet Union was surrounded by imperialist states and had to fight them. But after the Second World War there was a fundamental change in the balance between the international democratic forces and the forces of reaction. As a result of the Second World War, fascist Germany, Italy and Japan which had belonged to the so-called “six great powers” were defeated; France and Britain weakened considerably and the only “great power” left was the US. As a result of the Second World War many countries won national independence and embarked on the road to democratic development. In colonial countries the national liberation struggle is going on extensively. As you can see, the imperialist camp is taking the road to decline and fall, whereas the democratic camp is steadily growing in strength as a new force.

The domestic situation is far more favourable now than in the days when we waged our anti-Japanese armed struggle. At that time the Japanese imperialists had massive armed forces, and dreamt of conquering the whole of Asia. The anti-Japanese guerrillas were far smaller in number than the enemy, and their arms and equipment were outdated. Moreover, they had no state support in any form in their fight, and had to get everything by themselves, including arms and food. But the anti-Japanese guerrillas were sure of their victory and fought the Japanese imperialists to ultimate victory in the face of all hardships and obstacles. At the time there were not many underground workers who fought Japanese imperialism at home either. But what is the situation today? Our democratic forces are immeasurably mightier than the reactionary forces. Our people’s level of political consciousness and patriotism is very high and there are over six million people firmly gathered together under the DNUFNK that embraces all the democratic political parties and social organizations. Also, we have a strong People’s Army that can repulse any enemy aggression and a solid economic foundation that can provide the army with arms, ammunition, provisions and clothes.
Today the US imperialist policy of colonial enslavement in Korea is fizzling out in the face of the stubborn struggle put up by our people, and the puppet Syngman Rheeites are completely isolated from the people.

With this being the situation at home and abroad how can we not win victory? We are sure to win. The US imperialists will be kicked out of Korea definitely and our country will be reunified without doubt.

The political parties and social organizations should map out information plans as mentioned above and conduct an active information work among people of different strata.

They should strive to ensure that the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea which is to be formed soon, becomes an organization that is in keeping with its mission.

Since the DFRK is to be formed in order to achieve the country’s reunification, we must restrict the admission of political parties and social organizations to the front. Only those political parties and social organizations which support the country’s reunification should be allowed to affiliate with it. Right-wing political parties and social organizations, too, should be admitted if they are desirous of national reunification and territorial integrity, and request affiliation with the DFRK. Of late, since the question of forming the DFRK has arisen, some of the right-wing parties and social organizations which have been following the Syngman Rhee puppet clique are now wavering. We can even admit them if they want to join, provided they repent of their past mistakes.

In the light of the present situation, when the first session of the preparatory committee for the formation of the DFRK is held in Pyongyang on May 25, a number of south Korean right-wing political parties and social organizations are expected to attend this meeting. We must work actively to ensure that many political parties and social organizations take part in it.

Meanwhile, we must intensify our vigilance to prevent reactionary political parties and social organizations from joining the DFRK.
All our political parties and social organizations must support the Government of the Republic and participate in the struggle for the victorious fulfilment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan which will provide a material guarantee for national reunification.

We failed to fulfil the assignments for the first quarter of the first year of the Two-Year Plan. The reasons for this failure vary. The main reason is that our officials did not organize economic work carefully nor did they take measures to overcome the manifested defects in time. The defects in the carrying out of the plan for the first quarter of this year are similar to those manifested in the same period of last year. This shows that our officials only admit their shortcomings but do not endeavour to correct them.

The political parties and social organizations should have the officials intensify their studies so as to raise their ability to organize and direct economic work. At the same time they should make sure that the working people present plenty of innovations and proposals and actively introduce advanced work methods. This will be effective in contributing to the victorious fulfilment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan.

The political parties and social organizations should give adequate aid to the People’s Army and their dependents.

We must continue to strengthen the People’s Army not only to reunify the country now but also after the country’s reunification. Only then can we prevent any aggressors from daring to attack our homeland and, in the event of an imperialist aggression, we can repulse it in time and safeguard the nation’s freedom and independence. In strengthening the People’s Army it is important to give dedicated public aid to the People’s Army and their dependents. Generous aid to the People’s Army will induce the soldiers to take a greater pride in their assignments at the outposts of national defence. At present some people do not like the People’s Army very much, because they have been used to seeing only the ferocious Japanese imperialist troops of aggression who ran amuck and repressed and slaughtered our people. Our People’s Army is a new type of army,
which is fundamentally different from the Japanese imperialist army of aggression. It is essential that the political parties and social organizations should widely explain and propagate to the people that our People’s Army is not an army that serves the interests of the privileged classes but a genuine people’s army that serves the cause of the country and the people—as being an army formed with the sons and daughters of the working people—so the people understand this correctly and aid them morally and materially.

It is necessary to urge young people to join the People’s Army willingly. Their service in the army is necessary not only for the country and the people, but also for themselves. Through army life they become accustomed to a disciplined life; they learn to love the country and the people, and hate the enemy, have sound ideas, and are physically tougher. We intend to make every youth serve in the army for three years or so in future. The political parties and social organizations, particularly, the DYI should educate the young people well so that they will regard service in the People’s Army as a sacred duty, and as the greatest honour that can be bestowed on them and join the army voluntarily.

We must give aid generously to the dependents of the People’s Army. Since the soldiers of the People’s Army have joined the army voluntarily to defend the nation, we should take care of their families in a more responsible way. When substantial aid is given to the dependents, the soldiers will have no worry about their families and pay full attention to their duties in military service; their families too will then attend to the nation’s affairs with greater enthusiasm. Therefore, a nationwide movement should be made to give aid to the dependents of the People’s Army.

Some time ago the Cabinet of the Republic adopted Cabinet Decision No. 45 on the aid to be given to the families of the soldiers and noncommissioned officers of the People’s Army. The political parties and social organizations should explain and propagate this widely and help the families of the soldiers of the People’s Army in diverse ways. In the busy seasons we should help them in ploughing,
weeding and harvesting. We should frequently organize art performances for them. Especially, the Women’s Union should do their work well with the wives of the service personnel under the slogan, “Let us uphold our honour as wives of People’s Army soldiers.” This will prompt them to work well as is becoming of soldiers’ wives and be exemplary in their daily life, too.

I hope the political parties and social organizations will work together and assure the successful formation of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea.
ON THE FORMATION OF THE DEMOCRATIC FRONT FOR THE REUNIFICATION OF KOREA

Report at the Sixth Meeting
of the Central Committee of the Workers’
Party of North Korea

June 11, 1949

Comrades,

As is being widely reported by the press now, on May 12 eight political parties and social organizations in south Korea—the Workers’ Party of South Korea, the Democratic Independent Party, the People’s Republican Party of Korea, the Toiling People’s Party, the Chongu Party of South Korea, the Social Democratic Party, the Democratic Women’s Union of South Korea and the National Council of Trade Unions of Korea—jointly proposed the formation of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea to the Central Committee of the Democratic National United Front of North Korea.

The formation of the DFRK was proposed opportunely, and our Party has always advocated it as an issue of great importance. Therefore, the matter was discussed at a meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee. It was decided to pursue the proposal actively and the Political Committee has been prepared for the formation of the DFRK, acting through the Democratic National United Front.

With the consent of the different political parties and social
organizations in north Korea, the Central Committee of the Democratic National United Front of North Korea proposed to the political parties and social organizations in south Korea that the first session of the preparatory committee for the formation of the DFRK be held in Pyongyang on May 25. The democratic political parties and social organizations in south Korea supported our proposal and sent their representatives to Pyongyang to attend the preparatory committee meeting. As a result, the first session of the preparatory committee was held on May 25 with the participation of 68 delegates from 51 political parties and social organizations in north and south Korea. At the session the preparatory committee for the formation of the DFRK was constituted and the scope of its work discussed. It was resolved at the session that the patriotic political parties and social organizations which intend to join the DFRK might send their delegates to the preparatory committee at any time. At the second session held on June 7 soon after the first session, it was decided to convene the inaugural conference of the DFRK in Pyongyang on June 25. The political parties and social organizations in north and south Korea were notified accordingly. Thanks to the joint efforts made by the representatives from 53 political parties and social organizations of north and south Korea, the preparatory work for the inaugural conference of the DFRK is now successfully under way.

Why, then, must we form the DFRK?

As you all know, it is nearly four years since our country was liberated from the yoke of Japanese imperialist colonial rule, but it is not reunified yet. It remains divided in two with the 38th parallel as the demarcation.

Territorial partition constitutes a serious obstacle to the building of an independent, sovereign and democratic state and to the future development of our country. The occupation of south Korea by the US imperialists has, in particular, caused its people to suffer as great a pain and distress as in the days of Japanese imperialist colonial rule.

Since the first days of their occupation of south Korea after liberation in place of the Japanese imperialists, the US imperialists have carried
out their policies of national division and colonial enslavement.

As soon as they landed in south Korea they proclaimed a military government and harshly repressed the patriotic, democratic forces, while, at the same time, they made desperate efforts to gain a foothold for the maintenance of colonial rule with the help of pro-Japanese collaborators and traitors to the nation. They deliberately disrupted the work of the USSR-US Joint Commission to implement the decision of the Moscow Three Foreign Ministers Conference. They unwarrantably placed the Korean question on the agenda of the UN General Assembly, and rigged up the UN Temporary Commission on Korea by using their own voting machine. Despite the strong opposition of all the Korean people, the US imperialists had a “separate election” held in south Korea under the supervision of that commission and forged the so-called “Republic of Korea government” with a group of stooges headed by Syngman Rhee.

Ever since it was manufactured as a puppet government which works entirely on the US imperialists’ instructions, the “ROK government” has faithfully executed their colonial enslavement policy and indulged overtly in treacherous acts against the country and the nation. Recently the Syngman Rhee puppet clique sent Jo Pyong Ok to the United States under the pretext of concluding the so-called “military pact”, so as to hold talks behind closed doors to sell out the country and the nation, at the same time imploring the United States not to withdraw its troops from south Korea.

Under the barbarous rule of the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique the south Korean people are deprived of elementary democratic rights and liberties. They are subjected to inhuman maltreatment and contempt. At US imperialist instigation, the puppet Syngman Rheeites are inventing all kinds of evil laws to suppress the activities of democratic political parties and social organizations and are arresting, imprisoning and murdering patriotic people at random. Because of their oppression, the patriotic political parties and social organizations which had been operating legally in south Korea have gone underground and democratic publications and
press agencies have been discontinued or closed down by force. They arrested and imprisoned as many as 136,360 innocent people during the period from January to October 1948. On Jeju Island alone, they massacred more than 30,000 people and burned down 20,000 or more farmhouses and 295 villages in nearly a year from April 3 last year to the end of March this year. The US imperialists and puppet Syngman Rheites have suppressed and slaughtered the democratic forces and people in south Korea and this is being intensified as the days go by.

In south Korea the national economy has been severely destroyed and the people’s living conditions are worsening. The US imperialists have seized hold of the lever of control over south Korea’s economy, thus plundering raw materials and other resources freely. What is worse, they are damaging factories and enterprises in south Korea indiscriminately and taking away the equipment on the pretext of “disposing of enemy property”. In south Korea, industrial production continues to decrease, commodity prices are soaring, and unemployed workers are roaming about the streets. At present the number of jobless people and those who are bankrupt stands at three million.

The south Korean countryside which was called the granary of Korea has been utterly devastated and the peasants are still oppressed and exploited by the landlords, chained to feudal landownership. The farmland has diminished by hundreds of thousands of hectares and the grain yield has dwindled to less than 80 per cent compared with pre-liberation years. The peasants are in the direst of straits now, owing to the high farm rent and the forced delivery and procurement of grain.

The US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee puppet group are not only intensifying their fascist suppression and exploitation of the south Korean people but also making frantic war preparations to invade the northern half of Korea. Under US imperialist manipulation, the Syngman Rhee puppets are increasing their troops through forced conscription of young and middle-aged people and bringing in vast quantities of war materials from the US, thus saddling the people with the burden of increasing war expenditures, and further aggravating their living conditions.
We can never remain indifferent to the miseries and sufferings of our compatriots in south Korea. We must rescue them from these grave calamities as soon as possible.

Today the northern half of Korea has solid material foundations for reunifying the country, restoring the damaged south Korean economy and relieving the stresses of the south Korean people. But these cannot yet be used to rehabilitate the south Korean economy and save the people from their calamities, because of the US imperialist occupation of south Korea and the artificial barrier of the 38th parallel.

US imperialism’s colonial enslavement policy and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique’s treacheries against the country and nation have created a grave political situation in our country. This situation calls for us to perform the historic task of opposing the US imperialists’ aggressive moves and interference in the internal affairs of our country. We must drive the American troops out of our land, overthrow the traitor Syngman Rhee and his puppet clique, and rescue the people in the southern half of Korea. In order to carry out this task successfully, all patriotic forces must rally together and the whole nation must rise in unison as one body. Any nation can be strong when united closely as one, but, if disunited, it will suffer the lot of a homeless people. If our nation struggles in monolithic unity, it will be able to win the cause of national reunification by its own efforts.

We have had good experience in carrying out important national tasks splendidly by the united efforts of the people. In former days when the Japanese imperialists were intensifying their fascist tyranny and colonial plunder of the Korean people, we brought together people of all walks of life under the anti-Japanese banner and waged a vigorous struggle against Japan. The result was that we achieved the historic cause of national liberation. After liberation we carried out the task of eliminating the remnants of Japanese imperialism and feudalism and ensuring the democratic development of the country through the united efforts of the people of all strata of society, who are patriotic and who believe in democracy. Even when a grave situation faced the country and nation as a result of the manoeuvres of US
imperialism and its stooges, the Syngman Rhee clique, to rig up the “separate election and separate government”, the political parties, social organizations and all the people of north and south Korea united and waged a nationwide struggle and founded the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea. Through these struggles we gained valuable experience, which shows that we can understand and unite with each other in fulfilling national tasks despite differences in political views, religious beliefs, ideology, principle and doctrine and that we shall be victorious without fail if we are united in our struggle. This is a priceless asset in rallying the broad patriotic forces in north and south Korea under the banner of national reunification.

In order to rally into a single democratic force all patriots of our nation who are intent on reunification, particularly, the progressive political parties and social organizations of north and south Korea, it is imperative to form the DFRK. Moreover, since the Government of the DPRK—the sole legitimate government—was established in our country, the necessity to form the DFRK whose mission is to rally all progressive political parties and social organizations in north and south Korea posed as an urgent question, the solution of which brooks no delay. Proceeding from this, our Party has proposed to form the DFRK.

The formation of the DFRK fits in with the cherished desire of the people of all sections. Today all of the Korean people are ardent in their desire to have complete national independence and are convinced that national reunification will be achieved without fail. With this ardent desire and conviction for territorial integrity and national reunification, scores of political parties and social organizations have joined the preparatory committee for the formation of the DFRK and representatives are continuously coming from south Korea.

The DFRK will be a united front, rallying all forces of the patriotic, democratic political parties and social organizations throughout Korea. Therefore, its formation will be a national step to save our country and, at the same time, be a convincing demonstration of our people’s united might.

The DFRK should be a setup in which patriotic, democratic
political parties and social organizations struggling for territorial integrity and national reunification will be affiliated on a voluntary basis. No political party or social organization should be open to interference in its internal affairs by the DFRK, nor should they seek to control the working of the DFRK. All the political parties and social organizations affiliated with the DFRK should unite firmly and closely cooperate with each other to attain our common goal, while working independently.

The DFRK should strive to attain as its goal the achievement of the reunification and complete independence of the country, eliminating the remnants of Japanese imperialism and feudalism, ensuring the democratic progress of the country, revitalizing and developing the national economy and culture and raising the people’s standard of living.

The US imperialist occupation of south Korea and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique’s treacheries against the country and nation are the main obstacles standing in the way of national reunification. The DFRK must enlist the whole nation in the struggle to force US troops out of south Korea and expel the UN Commission on Korea–US imperialism’s tool of aggression. Meanwhile, it must wage a resolute struggle to overthrow the Syngman Rhee puppet clique and other traitors to the nation.

The DFRK should fight for the release of the patriotic democrats arrested and imprisoned by the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee puppets. It should also fight for the free activities of democratic political parties and social organizations in south Korea.

The DPRK is the power that defends and represents the interests of the whole nation. The DFRK should support the Government of the Republic and actively cooperate with it in its activities.

The DFRK should endeavour to consolidate the successes of the democratic reforms achieved in the northern half of Korea and aim towards carrying out these reforms in south Korea.

Our Party must play a leading and active role not only in forming the DFRK, but in consolidating and developing it even after its
formation. While maintaining independence within the DFRK, our Party must unite and cooperate closely with other political parties and social organizations to reach our common goal. For the present, it must enhance the role of its members on the preparatory committee for the formation of the DFRK so that the DFRK’s programme and declaration will be drawn up to conform with our people’s interests and that the preparatory work for the inaugural conference will go smoothly.

Party organizations at all levels must fully acquaint all of their members and the people with the importance of the formation of the DFRK and thus encourage them to strive to make it a success.

Finally, I would like to reemphasize that our Party’s policy of forming the DFRK is quite justified. I propose that our Party elect and send 80 delegates to the inaugural conference of the DFRK which is to be held on June 25, as decided by the preparatory committee for the formation of the DFRK.
Comrades,

Before long all the Korean people will celebrate the fourth anniversary of the August 15 liberation. Although almost four years have passed since our country was liberated from the fetters of Japanese imperialist colonial rule, it still remains divided into the north and south.

The territorial division further complicates the political situation at home with each passing day, and endangers the national independence and freedom of our people. Because of this, our country’s democratic resurgence and progress is faced with tremendous obstacles.

Ever since our country was liberated from the colonial yoke of Japanese imperialism, the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea, the militant vanguard of the Korean working masses, have waged a stubborn struggle, along with all the people, for achieving territorial integrity and the country’s reunification, independence and democratization.

However, due to the malicious US imperialist policy of colonial enslavement against south Korea, and the treacherous acts of their
stooges—the pro-Japanese collaborators and traitors to the nation—our country has not been reunified as yet.

The political situation now prevailing in our country is very acute. The vicious and aggressive efforts of the US imperialists to colonize our country have become more salient, and the treacheries of the pro-Japanese elements and traitors, who are their faithful servants, have reached the limit.

All the Korean people have risen in opposition to the foreign forces of aggression and their collaborators, the reactionary forces at home, in an effort to achieve territorial integrity and national reunification and independence. Their struggle is gathering momentum and developing into a fierce armed battle.

This joint plenary meeting of the Central Committees of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea, convened at a time when the internal political situation is complex, is going to discuss an important problem of historic significance—the merger of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea into a single united party.

1. THE HISTORICAL NECESSITY OF MERGING THE WORKERS’ PARTIES OF NORTH AND SOUTH KOREA

Comrades,

The merger of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea is not a question of amalgamating parties of different organizational principles and ideological foundations. It is a question of merging those, who have the same organizational principle and ideological foundation, and who have temporarily had to exist separately, because of the prevailing situation and because their political activities demanded this.

The Communist Party, the predecessor of our Party, had existed
until the founding of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea, that is, until 1946.

In North Korea the Communist Party was founded with those communists at its core, who had waged the armed struggle against Japanese imperialism, for the country’s liberation and the people’s freedom and emancipation during the grimmest days of Japanese imperialist rule. It also included those communists who had participated in various forms of anti-Japanese resistance at home and abroad. That is why the Communist Party enjoyed the support and confidence of all the people from its inception and became the most dignified and militant party to lead the Korean people towards freedom and national independence, shouldering the task of shaping the destiny of the country and nation. Within three months after its inauguration, the Party had already rallied to its ranks thousands of progressive elements and patriots, and grew into a powerful party with firm roots among the masses.

Taking advantage of the favourable conditions created then in North Korea, the Communist Party strove to properly implement the decision of the Moscow Three Foreign Ministers Conference, to establish the bodies of people’s power, and to carry out democratic reforms. As a result, in February 1946 the Provisional People’s Committee of North Korea was formed, and in March of the same year the agrarian reform, the first of its kind in the East, was introduced, on the principle of confiscation without compensation and free distribution of the same. Then the Labour Law, the Law on Sex Equality, the nationalization of major industries and other democratic reforms were enforced. The successful democratic reforms carried out in North Korea enabled our country to revive and develop on a democratic basis.

In South Korea, under the occupation of US troops, the Communist Party carried out legal activities, taking advantage of the situation prevailing immediately after liberation and every available opportunity. It strove to put into force the decision of the Moscow Three Foreign Ministers Conference on Korea, launched an extensive
mass campaign to expose the US imperialists’ policy of aggression in Korea, and bring out the true colours of the pro-Japanese collaborators and the nation’s betrayers, in order to isolate them from the masses of the people.

However, after the decision of the Moscow conference was made public, and the widespread mass campaign to support it was begun under the leadership of our Party, the Communist Party in south Korea began to encounter difficulties in working legally.

At the time the decision was published in December 1945, the political forces at home were completely divided into the patriotic, democratic ones and the anti-popular reactionary ones and the contradictions between these two forces became aggravated and their struggle became more acute.

Scared by the expansion and strengthening of the democratic forces, the US imperialists, pro-Japanese collaborators, traitors to the nation and other reactionaries intensified the persecution and repression of the Communist Party in south Korea. With a view to lowering its prestige in the eyes of the people, the enemies framed up the so-called “forged-note case” and put it to trial, and raised brazen slanders and propaganda against the Party. The US imperialists and their stooges arrested, imprisoned and murdered the Party’s leaders and members en masse, banned the Party newspaper *Haebang Ilbo*, and damaged the Party’s office.

The situation demanded that appropriate steps be taken to ensure the legal status and operation of the Communist Party in south Korea. Failure to take such steps would undermine the position of the Communist Party in south Korea, and the struggle of the masses would be weakened.

It was imperative to found the Workers’ Parties in north and south Korea, in order to rally the broad masses around them, frustrate the manoeuvres of the US imperialists and their stooges and carry out the Korean revolution successfully.

At that time our working class and other working masses were, in fact, divided organizationally, because in north Korea there existed the
New Democratic Party and in the south, political parties such as the New Democratic Party and the People’s Party. A rift among the working masses constitutes the greatest danger to our struggle against the enemy.

In order to rally the democratic forces and ensure the unity of the working masses, it is most important to build a single militant vanguard of the working people, which will provide them with coordinated leadership. For this reason, the question arose on merging into one those parties whose programmes were similar to that of the Communist Party.

So, in north Korea the Communist Party and the New Democratic Party were merged to establish the Workers’ Party of North Korea in August 1946, and in south Korea the Communist, the New Democratic and the People’s Parties joined hands to form the Workers’ Party of South Korea in November of the same year.

The setting up of the Workers’ Party in south Korea did not progress smoothly because of the manoeuvres of the class enemies and factionalists.

The US imperialists and reactionaries made every desperate effort to foil its being established. They openly obstructed the merger, issuing warrants for the arrest of the leading officials of the south Korean Communist Party and arresting, imprisoning and slaughtering a large number of its members. Simultaneously, they attempted to undermine it from within, by using their spies, saboteurs and opportunists.

The factionalists, too, stood in the way of the merger. They were so narrow-minded that they could not see the prevailing situation correctly and opposed the founding of the Workers’ Parties in north and south Korea, despite the fact that at that time the necessity of their being established was as clear as daylight to everybody.

Disguising themselves as “champions” for the unity of the Party, the factionalists denounced the action of founding the Workers’ Parties in north and south Korea as the abandoning of Marxism-Leninism, which would “weaken” the Party and “make it petty-bourgeois”. They
could not understand that their factionalist anti-Party acts would conform to the moves of the US imperialists and their stooges—the pro-Japanese collaborators and national betrayers—to wreck our Party from within and create a rift in the democratic mass movement of the working people.

Such factionalist manoeuvres were carried out at the time of the founding of the Workers’ Party of South Korea, and also when the Workers’ Party of North Korea was set up.

On August 5, 1946 Kang Jin and other anti-Party elements lurking within the Communist Party in south Korea made public an anti-Party statement against the amalgamation of the Communist, the New Democratic and the People’s Parties.

The factionalists wormed their way into the ranks of the Communist Party as the social foothold of capitalism and the stooges of reactionaries; they tried to bring about vacillation, disintegration and distrust within the Party. That we had such “allies” in the Party, while struggling directly with the reactionaries, meant that we would be attacked from both sides, in other words, from the front and the rear. Therefore, the Central Committee of the Communist Party in south Korea adopted a just resolution to expel from its membership those factionalists and opportunists who had done great harm to Party work seeking only their own personal advancement and position, instead of striving to uphold the people’s cause.

Despite the repression of the US imperialists and their stooges, and the obstructionist manoeuvres of the factionalists and opportunists, the work of founding the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea proceeded successfully.

After the founding of the two parties, their leading bodies established normal relations between them and the two parties worked in close coordination. As regards the fact that on August 5, 1946 Kang Jin and other anti-Party elements issued a joint statement against the founding of the Workers’ Party of South Korea, the Inaugural Congress of the Workers’ Party of North Korea exposed their reactionary subversive activities and adopted a decision to support the
merger of the three political parties in South Korea.

This decision reads as follows:

“The delegates to the Inaugural Congress of the Workers’ Party of North Korea wholeheartedly support and welcome the resolution made by the three South Korean political parties on the founding of a single party of the working people by way of amalgamating them.

“This is of historic significance in the cause of struggling against the reactionaries who are the greatest obstacle in the building of a completely independent and sovereign democratic state and in the rallying of all the Korean people and all democratic forces.

“At the same time, the Congress points out the fact that the merger of the three political parties is being greatly delayed in South Korea and is being conducted without sufficient organizational work. In particular, it points out that the reactionary forces in South Korea are intensifying their moves against the merger of the three parties and that even within the parties there are those who oppose the merger intentionally and help the enemy through their factionalist, divisive activities. It is regrettable that such factionalists exist in the three respective parties and have even penetrated into the ranks of their leadership.

“The Congress considers it justified that the Communist Party in South Korea has decided on expelling from the Party Central Committee Kang Jin, Kim Chol Su, Kim Kun, So Jung Sok, Ri Jong Yun and Mun Kap Song, as they have been engrossed in factionalist and divisive activities within the Party.

“The Congress is convinced that the People’s Party and the New Democratic Party will also take similar decisions regarding those who undermine the unity of truly democratic forces and plot to divide the Parties.

“The Congress appeals to the leading bodies of the three political parties and their members in South Korea to hold in check the reactionaries’ subversive activities and facilitate the merger by taking drastic actions against factionalists and sectarians who attempt to impede the merger of the Communist, the People’s and the New
Democratic Parties into a single Workers’ Party.”

All the facts revealed after the founding of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea proved clearly that the measures which were taken to form the Workers’ Parties by amalgamating the Communist Parties with other political parties of the working people in north and south Korea were the most correct steps to take in the situation prevailing in our country at that time.

Now that the Communist Party in south Korea conducted its activities under the new name of the Workers’ Party of South Korea, the US military government, the puppet Syngman Rhee clique, the pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation were unable to find any grounds or excuses for overtly abusing, repressing and terrorizing the Workers’ Party. So the Workers’ Party of South Korea could legitimately continue its work for a while.

The Workers’ Party of South Korea conducted a struggle against the US imperialists and their stooges, for the sake of territorial integrity, national reunification and the building of an independent, sovereign democratic state. In this course, it rallied the broad masses around it and consolidated its foundation among them.

Under the influence of the Workers’ Party of South Korea the south Korean people’s struggle gained momentum.

A struggle against the UN Temporary Commission on Korea was waged in February 1948 and a general strike took place on March 22. This was followed by a struggle against the May 10 separate elections.

The south Korean people’s struggle exposed the US imperialist policy of colonial enslavement and the crimes committed against the people by pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation. It demonstrated to the whole world that the Korean people do not wish to exist under the new colonial enslavement policy of the US imperialists and their reactionary rule, and rather, they want the establishment of democratic institutions and the country’s reunification.

After its founding, the Workers’ Party of North Korea grew rapidly both organizationally and ideologically and became a leading party in the struggle to build an independent, sovereign democratic state. In the
course of strengthening the people’s power and consolidating the successes of the democratic reforms, the Party’s prestige increased further and a large number of national figures were produced from among its members. While strengthening its united front with the Democratic Party and other friendly parties, the Workers’ Party of North Korea worked intensively to lay the political and economic foundations for the building of an independent, sovereign democratic state and made great advances in this struggle.

Comrades,

Having developed into the Workers’ Party, a unified party of the working masses, our Party could further increase its impact, unite the broad masses around it and forge ahead more vigorously with the struggle to build an independent, sovereign democratic state.

However, internal developments changed the situation rapidly.

The US imperialists and their stooges held the May 10 separate elections in an endeavour to set up a treacherous puppet government containing pro-Japanese elements and traitors, while intensifying their repression of patriotic democrats in south Korea, particularly those belonging to the Workers’ Party of South Korea. So the Workers’ Party of South Korea was forced to go underground again.

While putting pressure upon the Workers’ Party of South Korea, the US imperialists and their stooges, the pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation, manipulated in every way to cause antagonism and division between the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea, hoping to drive a wedge between them. Through such despicable acts they attempted to cause a dispute among the Workers’ Parties in both parts of the country and undermine their unity so as to weaken them.

The Workers’ Party of South Korea went underground and the reactionaries intensified their attack on the democratic forces, and spies and saboteurs schemed more viciously than before to alienate the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea from each other. So, if the two parties continued to exist separately, the Party’s fighting capability in the struggle to achieve the country’s reunification and build an independent, sovereign democratic state was liable to weaken.
The prevailing situation demanded more urgently than ever a unified leadership of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea which existed separately. So, for this purpose, the leadership of the two parties discussed the question of organizing a joint central leading body of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea and adopted a relevant resolution on August 2, 1948, after the Joint Conference of the Political Parties and Public Organizations in North and South Korea. The resolution indicates that a joint central leading body of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea shall be formed and that it shall be called the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea.

After this body was organized, our Party under its leadership pooled all its efforts and worked more vigorously for the building of democracy and the country’s reunification.

While consolidating and developing the success of the democratic reforms in north Korea, our Party strengthened the organs of the people’s power and the People’s Army and performed the tremendous task of successfully fulfilling the national economic plan for 1948 and improving the material and cultural standards of the people.

Our Party launched an extensive struggle against the terrorist rule of the reactionary puppet government and the US imperialist policy of colonial enslavement in south Korea. It also boycotted the UN Commission on Korea.

Under the guidance of the joint central leading body, members of the North and South Korean Workers’ Parties, together with other democratic parties and social organizations, successfully held the elections of deputies to the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPRK, in order to establish a unified democratic government for entire Korea. In north Korea 99.97 per cent of the electorate took part in the elections held on August 25 last year, and in south Korea 77.52 per cent of the electorate went to the polls in spite of the brutal suppression, slaughter and terrorization of the people by the US imperialists and their stooges. As a result, the DPRK was founded and a unified central government established.

After that, at the request of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the
DPRK at its First Session, the Soviet Government completely withdrew its army, by the end of 1948, from the territory of the northern half of Korea. Half a year has passed since then, but the US imperialist armed forces of aggression still remain in south Korea, instigating the pro-Japanese elements and traitors to strengthen the reactionary system of colonial rule, while making frenzied preparations for a fratricidal war in our country.

Today the situation in our country is very tense. The political struggle between the democratic and reactionary forces has become extremely acute and has developed into an armed struggle.

The gang of quislings led by Syngman Rhee, the despicable traitor to the Korean people, held the separate elections by force under the aegis of the US imperialists and set up a puppet regime consisting of a tiny handful of reactionaries. With the help of the US imperialist bayonets and “dollars”, they are pursuing even more openly the treacherous policy of intensifying the repression and terrorism against the people and perpetuating the artificial division of our country.

The broad masses in the southern half of Korea, who are suffering in utter despair from famine, poverty and deprivation of rights and are eyewitnesses to the manner in which the enemies of the people are selling our country, cannot tolerate their plight any longer. This is the reason why the south Korean working class and other broad sections of patriotic people have risen up in arms against the US, in the struggle to save the nation.

The south Korean reactionary forces are resorting to desperate measures to maintain their regime, because they perceive that the revolution is ripening in south Korea and they are in a precarious position. They are arresting and imprisoning innocent people right and left, suppressing popular uprisings by force of arms and slaughtering members of the Workers’ Party en masse.

A grave danger has befallen our country now. There are two alternatives open to our people–to become a free and independent nation, or to become colonial slaves of US imperialism.

What is most important in the present situation is the unity of the
working class in north and south Korea, the unity of all democratic forces and the unity of true patriots. This will be resolved only when the Workers’ Parties in north and south Korea, the militant vanguard and leading force of the working class and other working masses, are unified. It will be resolved only when they have an authoritative and powerful Central Committee, which is able to lead the Party to victory daringly and confidently in the struggle against the foreign forces of imperialism and other reactionary forces for establishing a unified democratic Korea. That is why we deem it necessary to merge the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea into a single Workers’ Party of Korea.

I propose that the two existing Party Central Committees should be unified into a single Central Committee, which will be empowered to lead the two parties until a joint congress of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea is convened and that the present joint central leading body should be reorganized into the Political Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea.

This, in general, is why it is necessary to merge the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea.

2. THE IMMEDIATE TASK BEFORE OUR PARTY

Comrades,

The internal political situation sets difficult and responsible tasks before our Party.

The immediate task before our Party is to make US troops withdraw from south Korea, overthrow the reactionary Syngman Rhee puppet regime and reunify our country along democratic lines under the banner of the DPRK.

By working together with all the patriotic, democratic forces, and leading the masses, our Party must fulfil this sacred task as soon as
possible. The reactionary traitors in south Korea are selling the southern half of our country as a colony to the US imperialists, destroying south Korea’s economy, oppressing and exploiting the people, causing starvation and poverty and slaughtering the fine sons and daughters of our people. We cannot tolerate this any longer.

In order to reunify the divided country, all the patriotic, democratic forces in north and south Korea must be united.

As you all know, a few days ago the representatives of the democratic political parties and social organizations in north and south Korea had a meeting and formed the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea. The Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea took the lead in this movement. To rally together broad sections of patriotic, democratic forces is a very important task in the present phase of the struggle for territorial integrity and national reunification.

Our Party should play a vital role in strengthening the DFRK and its work. Our Party should regard the programme of the DFRK as our nation’s action programme for the country’s reunification and independence and for establishing democracy, and give it positive support. Needless to say, it cannot be our Party’s programme. Our Party’s programme clarifies not only the immediate tasks before us but also the ultimate goal of our revolution. Therefore, we must not confuse it with that of the DFRK. However, we must strive to carry it out, because it reflects the problems, which our people eagerly desire to resolve at the present time.

The Inaugural Conference of the DFRK discussed urgent matters regarding the reunification of the country, and adopted a declaration on achieving this by peaceful means. The declaration demanded the immediate withdrawal of US troops from south Korea, the dissolution of the UN Commission on Korea, and the solution of the question about the state system by the Korean people themselves, through the election of a supreme legislative body. This election is possible only when freedom of speech, freedom of the press, assembly and association, and free activities of democratic political parties and social organizations are guaranteed in south Korea.
Our proposal for the peaceful reunification of the country is designed to protect our land against imperialist subjugation, prevent the permanent division of the territory, and save the nation. It is designed also to save our fellow countrymen in the southern half of Korea from the coldblooded slaughter by the enemy, prevent the bloodshed and sacrifice of our people and attain the country’s reunification and territorial integrity.

We are not proposing a peaceful reunification of the country because our forces are weak. Our people who have gained their freedom and independence through harsh struggle will never yield to anybody the happiness and rights they enjoy. The patriotic, democratic forces are strong and our people’s desire to reunify the country on a democratic basis is very intense. The peaceful settlement of the question of the country’s reunification will lead our people to victory in the cause of reunification and democracy. It will be materialized through the united efforts of our people.

If the Syngman Rhee puppet regime refuses our proposal as set out in the declaration of the Inaugural Conference of the DFRK, for the peaceful reunification of the country, we will not confine ourselves to it. Instead, we will seek various ways and means for the solution of this question and set up a unified, independent and sovereign democratic state without fail.

Comrades,

We must have a correct understanding of the complex political situation at home and make full preparations to cope with every unexpected event possible, in carrying out the cause of national reunification and democratic construction.

In the northern half of Korea where a new life is being created after the establishment of the people’s government and the democratic reforms, we should increase the political enthusiasm of the masses and their incentive for production, so as to fulfil or more than fulfil the Two-Year National Economic Plan. This will be conducive to further solidifying the country’s political and economic foundations. To this end, we should conduct information and motivation work more
vigorously and, particularly, explain and propagate well the position and role of the masses in the struggle to build a new society.

As a result of the democratic reforms in the northern half of Korea, the social and economic position of all classes and strata underwent a radical change.

First, a great change took place in the position of the working class. Before liberation the plight of the working class of our country was such that they had to eke out their living under the exploitation and oppression by capital. In those days factories and enterprises and other means of production belonged to the Japanese imperialists and capitalists, and the working class was forced to work for the capitalists. But today our working class has become the owners of means of production. Accordingly, they are not working for the capitalists as in the past, but for the country and the people, and for themselves. They have become the mainstay of the state and form the nucleus of the masses and, as the basic class of the Party, they are replenishing its ranks steadily. The best representatives of the working class form the leading core in the Party.

Secondly, our peasants, too, are no longer the peasants of the past. Land was earlier owned by the Japanese imperialists and landlords, but today it is owned by the peasants. This is due to the agrarian reform. Before, in our country, land-owning tillers, to say nothing of tenants, could not dispose of their own products freely under the Japanese imperialist system of forced delivery, nor could they have enough provisions to eke out a bare existence. But, today our peasants pay the state only 25 per cent of their farm produce as agricultural tax in kind and have the rest of it at their disposal. The peasants are increasing crop yields, since they are working diligently, fired with patriotic enthusiasm and great incentive to production. So, our rural economy which was long stagnant, progresses rapidly.

Today our Party is putting forward the task of easing the backbreaking work of the peasants, now the owners of land, and developing agriculture rapidly. To carry out this task we must supply
modern farm machines and tools and chemical fertilizers to the rural areas in larger quantities. If our Party’s task is fulfilled, then the ties between town and country and the alliance between the working class and the peasantry will be further strengthened, and the working peasants, under the leadership of the working class, will become a great force of our revolution.

Thirdly, the position of the intelligentsia has also changed.

Today they hold responsible posts in the organs of people’s power, in factories and other enterprises. The intellectuals of worker and peasant origin, who have been trained in the four years since liberation, have come together to form a group of new, people’s intellectuals.

In various ways, Party organizations should properly explain to the different classes and strata their changed position and the role they play in building a new society. This will be effective in inspiring them to display a high degree of patriotic ardour in the work they do to strengthen the organs of people’s power and develop politics, the economy and culture of the nation.

In order to lay material foundations for the country’s reunification, our Party organizations, cadres and members should fulfil the national economic plan ahead of schedule. They should build many more factories and enterprises, produce daily necessities in larger quantities and carry out all policies of the Government of the Republic.

In connection with the merger of the two parties, great attention should be paid to the selection, promotion and allocation of cadres.

Once the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea are amalgamated, our Party will be an even more powerful force than at present. In the last four years the Workers’ Party of North Korea grew in scope and strength politically, ideologically and organizationally and, through undertaking the practical task of democratic construction, learned how to build and run the state.

Our cadres must make strenuous efforts to raise their political, ideological and theoretical levels. They must study the Marxist-Leninist theory and delve deeply into our Party’s history of struggle and our specific situation. In addition, they must study the
advanced experience of foreign parties and be able to apply the same appropriately to the realities existing in our country. Only by doing so can they become political workers who are both theoretically and practically prepared.

The merger of the two parties requires every one of the members and organizations at all levels to ensure a firm unity of ideology and action. In the past, factional and sectarian activities resulted in the destruction of the Korean revolution and the communist movement.

We must never talk about factions or engage in factional strife within the Party, saying this man is a south Korean, that man is a north Korean, or this is a person who once belonged to a certain group. We must guarantee the Party’s unity and cohesion more strictly than ever.

To us Party members there can be no difference between north and south Koreans. Our nation was one in the past, and will be in the future, too. All Party members, whether they were members of the Workers’ Party of North Korea or the Workers’ Party of South Korea, must be determined to sacrifice themselves in the fight for the country and the people, and everybody must be closely united.

Ours is a single party with a single leadership. No force can divide or disturb our Party.

Our Party is confronted with the task of keeping a sharp vigilance on all sorts of hostile ideas as well as the conspiratorial manipulations of reactionaries who are running amuck in an attempt to disorganize the Party from within, and of strengthening its unity and cohesion. The purity of the Party ranks is a decisive guarantee for the development of our Party into a mass party, powerful and authoritative, and consisting of the working people struggling for the country’s reunification and independence, and for democracy.

I am convinced that our Party will, under the leadership of its authoritative and militant Central Committee, forge ahead vigorously with our people’s struggle for territorial integrity and for the reunification and independence of the country.
A number of comrades have clearly pointed out in their speeches that only by amalgamating the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea can we wage a more vigorous struggle to tide over the crisis in our country today and build a prosperous, independent and sovereign democratic state and can we win a historic victory in this struggle. This shows that our policy of merging the two parties is a correct one and that all members fully realize the necessity and importance of such a move.

Now, I am going to refer to a few problems.

At present some comrades are afraid that the danger of factions being created within the Party would increase after the merger. But I do not think such a thing will take place all of a sudden just because of the merger of the two parties.

As you all know, we formed the Workers’ Parties in north and south Korea respectively as a tactical step to cope with the situation as it then was. In other words, it was a step to ensure the legal activities of the Party, further develop its work and unite the south Korean people more closely around it, when in south Korea the US imperialists were intensifying measures to terrorize and repress the Communist Party and other democratic forces. Later, the situation there became aggravated; as a result, the Party went underground and the reactionary
moves to alienate the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea from one another increased. Under the circumstances, last August, we organized a joint central leading body of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea.

In fact, the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea were a single organization; the two signboards were there just for the sake of appearance. Our Party was always one even at the time of the Communist Party and when the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea existed; it is and will be a united body in the future, too.

The Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea and their leading bodies have always maintained close contacts with each other, and jointly studied and discussed all important matters. Because the leading bodies worked together, the two parties have always waged a rigid struggle to preserve the purity of their ranks and the unity in ideology and will.

At present there are no big factions in our Party. If any, there are only some elements who were influenced by factionalist ideas in the past.

The factionalists in south Korea opposed the leadership of the Workers’ Party of South Korea under the pretext of supporting the Workers’ Party of North Korea and those in north Korea opposed the Party’s organizational line on the plea of preserving the unity of the Party.

Is there any difference between the two? None whatsoever. One is the factionalists who opposed the Party openly and the other covertly. They have one common aim to split the Party.

The Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea fought against these factionalists uncompromisingly and gave them a crushing blow. Those who were not willing to retract their mistakes and correct them were expelled from the Party, and those who admitted their faults have remained in the Party, and have rectified or are trying to rectify their errors. This proves that the amalgamation of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea will not add to the danger of increasing factions within the Party.
This amalgamation is fundamentally different from that of the Communist, New Democratic and People’s Parties in the past. That was the merger of parties whose guiding ideologies and organizational principles were rather different from each other. Also there were quite a few suspicious elements in these parties. Therefore, the work of merging them was beset with many difficulties and obstacles.

But the merger of the Workers’ Parties of North and South Korea was to bring together parties which have the same guiding ideology and organizational principles but have existed separately for tactical purposes. In the course of carrying out all the democratic reforms and construction, the Workers’ Party of North Korea gained a lot of experience and fully ensured its iron unity of ideology and action. The Workers’ Party of South Korea has conducted dynamic underground activities in spite of the repression and massacre by the US imperialists in league with the traitors to the nation.

Our Party has now achieved the unity of ideology and will of the membership and they give a unanimous support to its line and strive to put it into practice. It is, therefore, wrong to assume that the danger of factions being formed within the Party will increase after the merger of the two parties.

The Korean Communist Party founded in 1925 was dissolved soon because of factional strife within; the working class in Korea has not forgotten this bitter lesson. So, they are directing special concern to the struggle against factionalism. Their level of political and ideological consciousness has risen considerably and our Party has evolved into a powerful mass party. A sound Party life is going on in all Party organizations and democracy within the Party is firmly guaranteed. Political and ideological education is also being intensified within the Party and political studies are conducted regularly at all units.

Now, a few elements within the Party cannot wreck it howsoever hard they try, and they can never become a predominant force in it. Of course, if there are such elements, it might be irritating but it will not cause major problems. Therefore, we need not make a lot of fuss about the problem of factionalism within the Party.
However, this does not imply the absence of factors that give rise to factionalism in our Party. The political and ideological awareness of quite a few Party members is still at a low level. There are many members of peasant origin in the Party and a number of persons who worked alone in the past, forming isolated groups in different areas. Therefore, tendencies of narrow-minded regionalism, groupism, and individualistic heroism still persist in the Party. Besides, some tend to talk to close friends in secret or criticize others behind their back, and some others fawn on or distrust individual persons. All these tendencies are dangerous factors that may lead to forming factions.

We must fight strongly against even their slightest symptoms of factionalism.

Establishing sound ways of work and life within the Party is an effective means to prevent the emergence of factions. Party organizations must tighten the organizational life of the members, establish a rigid way of Party life and give a fuller expression to democracy within the Party. They must enforce iron discipline within the Party and decisively improve the work style of Party members. In addition, steps taken for political and ideological education should be intensified within the Party to raise the political and ideological consciousness of the members and make them carry out the tasks set by the Party sincerely.

Now, I would like to speak of those comrades who have made mistakes.

At present, in the Party we have comrades who committed errors in the past. Persons like O Ki Sop and Ri Ju Ha whose understanding of Marxist-Leninist ideology is very low came out against the Party’s line because they could not correctly assess the political situation in Korea.

Posing as a bigwig in factional strife, O Ki Sop engaged in factionalist separatist activities locally and opposed the Party’s line. Ri Ju Ha was against the Party’s organizational line on the ground of opposing people who returned from abroad.

The errors they have committed since the founding of the Party are so grave as to deserve expulsion from the Party. However, I feel they
did not try to wreck the Party deliberately. Their errors were a result of their misunderstanding of the political situation in Korea, because they had indulged in group activities for years in the past; also, their knowledge of Marxism-Leninism was not adequate enough to help them. So, we should not brand them as bad elements but educate them patiently so that they can understand the enormity and cause of their errors and not repeat them in future.

Those who erred in the past should strive to make amends without hesitation. They must improve their theoretical knowledge of Marxism-Leninism, abide by the principle of inner-Party democracy strictly, carry out the tasks assigned by the Party faithfully and rectify their errors through practical work. As for the question of those who committed errors before, we should put an end to it with this meeting.

Lastly, I should like to touch briefly on the question of the country’s peaceful reunification.

At the Inaugural Conference of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea which was held a few days ago we discussed a fair and reasonable policy of reunifying the country in a peaceful way and made a proposal to the south Korean political circles. This indicates that our democratic forces are stronger than the reactionary forces. If not, we could not have made such a proposal. Because our democratic forces are stronger than the reactionary forces we can make such a proposal and execute it. For example of two hostile persons, if the weaker makes an overture of peace, can it materialize? Surely not.

Our democratic forces are gaining a lot of strength in the course of a splendid building of democracy in north Korea along with the unfolding of a courageous popular resistance in south Korea. If the Syngman Rhee puppet regime and the so-called National Assembly of south Korea accept our proposal on the peaceful reunification of the country and ensure free activities for all the patriotic, democratic parties, social organizations and press agencies in south Korea, our democratic forces can elect a new supreme legislative body with even more shining victory than that in last year’s election of deputies to the Supreme People’s Assembly. If US troops withdraw from south Korea
and repressions of the Syngman Rhee puppet clique are brought to an end, the broad masses will, indeed, follow us openly and without the slightest hesitation. Having witnessed the successes achieved in north Korea in the four years after liberation, the people realize that our lines and policies were entirely correct and will always be correct.

Our task is that of making full preparations for electing a new supreme legislative body even more successfully than in the election of deputies to the Supreme People’s Assembly we held last year, if the Syngman Rhee puppet regime and the south Korean National Assembly accept our proposal.

Some comrades may be uncertain about the necessity of holding another election because SPA deputies were already elected last year. If we have been isolated from the people and our forces weak, we would not be sure about a successful election, and cling to results of last year’s election. But we need not do so because we enjoy unreserved support from the masses and should be able to win a still greater victory in the new election. If only the election were conducted in a truly free atmosphere it would be advantageous for us, even if it is held as often as once a year or even monthly.

Can the peaceful reunification of the country be achieved, if we only sit idly by just because our forces are strong? It will not come of its own accord. We must unite the broad masses more firmly around our Party and the Government of the Republic. We must thoroughly explain and propagate to them the correctness of the programme, demands, lines and policies of the Party. We must further consolidate the democratic base in the northern half of Korea politically, economically and militarily. All Party membership should explain and propagate the details of the contents and correctness of our policy of peaceful reunification to the members of friendly parties and the rest of the people. If the Syngman Rhee puppet clique do not accept our proposal, we must isolate them completely from the people.

Let me finish here.
At this meeting we have discussed a number of problems such as the execution of state laws and observation of state secrets. Many constructive views have been put forward in the report and debate, so I should like to stress only a few points.

1. ON THOROUGH EXECUTION OF STATE LAWS

The laws of our Republic reflect the will of the working class and other masses and defend their interests. It is, therefore, a sacred duty for government officials and all the rest of the people to execute the laws thoroughly.

But there are many instances of violating the state laws, instead of executing them strictly.

The People’s Committee of South Phyongan Province exacted taxes which are not stipulated by the law, and even the Ministry of
Agriculture and Forestry issued directives which run counter to the law. According to the inspection reports on execution of laws, very few ministries have executed the laws correctly. This shows that the right standpoint on the execution of the law is not yet thoroughly established among our officials.

Although many shortcomings have been revealed in this respect, there are two very serious ones. Firstly, they caused confusion in the administration of the land distributed under the Agrarian Reform Law and, secondly, in the payment of taxes.

I do not think the question of land is so complicated because the Agrarian Reform Law clarifies all related issues. It stipulates that land shall be owned by the peasants who have received it and that nobody shall be allowed to dispose of the distributed land at his own will.

Nevertheless, in some places land was confiscated on the ground that the tax in kind was not delivered on time. To make matters worse, there were even instances of land being confiscated because barnyard grass had not been uprooted in paddy fields.

As the peasants tenanted the distributed land, some sub-county and ri people’s committees confiscated it at random, instead of in a legitimate manner, that is, proceeding legally through trials. Some provincial people’s committees adopted the decision that local organs of power are entitled to dispose of the distributed land. This is very harmful and unjustified. Neither the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry nor local people’s committees are authorized to adopt any decision on the disposal of peasants’ land. It is more than three years now since the agrarian reform was introduced and the peasants regard the distributed land as their own property. So, if the authorities concerned confiscate the peasants’ land as they please, it can leave a negative impression about them.

At present the system of taxation and financial discipline are very lax. Why, then, did they violate the state laws instead of carrying them out correctly?

An analysis of the reasons shows that some people deliberately violate the law for their personal interests, but the main reason lies in
the irresponsibility of our officials. Quite a few of them do not work in a responsible manner. Whatever work they do, our officials must never shirk while on duty. Just signing the payroll like the reactionary bureaucrats in capitalist societies is not enough. If all our officials did their work in a responsible manner, the aforementioned violations of the law could have been avoided.

Another reason is that the execution of laws has not been directed and inspected properly. Senior government officials, officials of interior, judicial and prosecution organs have not supervised and controlled the execution of the laws the way they should have. They did not provide enough conditions for their thorough execution either.

Also, violations were made by officials because their qualifications are not adequate. They are not well acquainted with laws and regulations or how to execute them accurately. As a result, when a problem arises, they often dispose of it as best as they can, unable to make out whether it is against the laws or not.

All officials should learn a lesson from the shortcomings noticed in the execution of laws and make serious efforts to implement them correctly.

The problems which were mishandled as a result of the incorrect execution of laws, decisions, and directives of the state should first be put right.

Local people’s committees must conduct thorough investigations into land which was disposed of illegally. They should give back to the peasants plots of land which can be returned, except those which call for disposal under the law. The peasants will then be convinced that the distributed land is their own property and nobody is allowed to dispose of it at will, unless it is so decided through trials. All state bodies should annul the decisions and directives issued against relevant laws of the state and should not impose additional taxes upon the people.

The senior officials of political parties, social and state organizations should respect state laws, strictly abide by them, and be a model to the masses in their execution. They should regularly explain state laws to their subordinates and efficiently organize, supervise and control execution of the same.
We must further inculcate the spirit of law-abiding in the masses. It is important here to enhance the role of the Ministry of Culture and Information. If ministry officials went among the peasants and educated them properly, explaining state policies and the Agrarian Reform Law, the latter would never tolerate their land being confiscated illegally. If the people are awakened and acquainted with the law, government officials cannot act arbitrarily in violation of the law. The Ministry of Culture and Information should stress on education in democratic ideas and the law-abiding spirit among state and economic officials as well as the people, so that they work and behave as required by the law.

The interior, judicial and prosecutor’s bodies, too, should work well to teach people to become law-abiding citizens.

The judicial and prosecutor’s bodies have so far refrained from making public the cases of officials brought to trial for violations of the law, but, from now on, they should expose them to the public whenever necessary. Only then can the people be educated and the prestige of the organs of people’s power enhanced, and can these latter enjoy popular support.

At present they are reluctant to expose these violations to the people for fear that it might damage the prestige of the people’s power. Such fears are groundless. If there are cases of officials tried for violations of the law, we must not hesitate to expose them. By this they can be exposed to public criticism when they have violated the law. Making such cases public will not weaken the people’s power but strengthen it.

We must strongly combat the negligence of state laws, decisions and directives.

We cannot compromise with or overlook the wrong practices of infringement of the law. We must mercilessly oppose these practices so as to correct them thoroughly.

Every ministry must review its cases of negligence of state laws, decisions and directives. They must be reviewed in an atmosphere of strong criticism. Criticism should not be for its own sake. It should aim to improve the standard of work. As for the guilty officials, they should be made to criticize themselves before the masses, or brought to
account, so that they understand exactly what is wrong with their performance. Only then will they repent their mistakes sincerely and avoid such errors in future.

Some chairmen of provincial, city and county people’s committees also break the law. They should also be made to criticize themselves thoroughly. In case members of people’s committees of different levels violate laws or make mistakes, steps should be taken to recall them from office, after having examined their cases at their respective people’s assemblies. Officials who violate the law, whoever they are, should be punished or legal sanctions applied against them, according to the gravity of their errors. Then, all officials of people’s power organs will have a higher sense of responsibility towards their work and serve the people more faithfully.

2. ON STRICT OBSERVANCE OF STATE SECRETS

Recently the Ministry of the Interior inspected a few ministries, and the inspection shows that there is room for the enemy’s spies to infiltrate into important establishments which have state secrets. Officials are also grossly neglecting the work to closely guard state secrets.

At present there are quite a few cases that reveal lack of vigilance on the part of state officials in this respect.

Some of them are careless enough to talk about matters concerning state secrets on the phone; you cannot know telephones are tapped. Officials of the Food Administration Bureau of the Cabinet often divulge state secrets to other people, telling them to guard the secrets, or else they themselves would be punished. Others are careless enough to show confidential documents to persons they are not well acquainted with. Officials of the Supreme Prosecutor’s Office showed secret documents to the Ministry of the Interior officials, who allegedly had come for an inspection, carrying forged credentials with them; they did not even try to
identify them. You are mistaken if you think that the enemy do not know how to forge credentials or don our military uniforms. Worse still, I was told, in some ministries, officials do not lock their rooms.

The lack of vigilance is revealed among government officials because the superiors fail to educate their subordinates properly and because there is no system and order in their organs and there is gross indiscipline.

Each ministry must strictly guard state secrets and be more vigilant. The US imperialists and their stooges are constantly sending secret agents into the northern half of Korea in an attempt to foil our nation building. The enemies are perpetrating acts of espionage, subversion and sabotage in very crafty ways. They leave no stone unturned to discover our state secrets; particularly they wait for a chance to take advantage of our officials’ carelessness.

All state organs must thoroughly establish order and system and tighten discipline. Where there is no order, state secrets leak out.

It is said that the Foreign Ministry is good at keeping state secrets. All state organs must follow its example. At the ministry, an official of a department concerned accompanies a visitor in accordance with the set system and order and makes such meticulous arrangements that the latter finishes his business and goes back quickly. All state organs should lay down rules and regulations on safeguarding state secrets and have them observed strictly.

Guidance and inspection regarding the guarding of state secrets should be conducted regularly and a merciless war be waged against the negligence of their observation or lack of vigilance. As for those officials who commit grave errors by divulging state secrets or slackening vigilance, they must be severely punished.

The Ministry of Culture and Information must prepare a report on the cases revealed during the latest inspection and bring it home to the officials of ministries and other national organizations.

In pursuance of the spirit of today’s meeting, all state bodies should make a detailed analysis of how state secrets have been observed so far and adopt appropriate measures.

Lastly, I should like to touch briefly on the conservation of forests
and the execution of the state budget.

I was told that at present trees are being cut down at random in provinces; if this continues, it will not be long before the mountains become barren.

The Ministry of the Interior and all people’s committees should exercise a strict control so that offices and enterprises do not fell trees at will. Except when building schools in woody mountain villages or houses at mining settlements, trees should not be cut down at random. The State Planning Commission should supply the urban dwellers with anthracite so that they do not fell trees in the hills for fuel.

The Ministry of the Interior and all people’s committees must see to it that afforestation work and forest conservancy are encouraged through a mass movement.

Control over the execution of the state budget should be tightened.

At present the State Planning Commission and the Ministry of Finance control the execution of the state budget in a very irresponsible manner. Their officials neglect exercising control, as is seen in the case of the Ministry of the Interior and Industry Ministry which are using precious materials in constructing office buildings not envisaged in the plan. Urgent construction projects in our country today are not office buildings but factories and enterprises such as textile mills. Office work can be done in a straw-thatched house or in a tent under a tree, but production cannot be carried out under such conditions.

The State Planning Commission should exercise a rigid control over unplanned projects and withdraw materials supplied for unimportant projects and allocate them to important factory construction projects on a priority basis. Only then can factories and enterprises be built according to plan.

The Ministry of Finance should strengthen its supervision and control over the execution of the state budget and make sure that any organization which has not spent all the funds allotted to it under the budget, transfers them to other necessary fields. This would enable the targets in the plans to be fulfilled or surpassed in all spheres of the national economy.
LET US CARRY OUT THE TWO-YEAR
NATIONAL ECONOMIC PLAN
VICTORIOUSLY

Speech at the Fourth Meeting of Managers
of Factories and Enterprises under
the Ministry of Industry

July 19, 1949

This year is the first year in the implementation of the Two-Year National Economic Plan. The triumphant completion of this plan as a whole depends largely on the successful implementation of this year’s plan.

All the workers, technicians and office employees in the field of industry have made vigorous efforts to carry out this year’s national economic plan from the beginning of the year. As a result, great successes have been attained during the second quarter and the first half of the year.

In the industrial spheres, the production plan for the first half of this year has been carried out basically and the production costs are 3.3 per cent lower than planned. The total value of the output of state-run industries rose to 134.8 per cent compared to the first half of last year; the output of the machine-building industry rose to 232.4 per cent and that of light industry to 169.4 per cent. In the first half of the year, labour productivity increased by 25.5 per cent as against last year’s average figures, and more than 1,200 capital construction projects for extended reproduction have been accelerated successfully.
By ensuring a high rate of growth in production during the second quarter, the mining industry admirably fulfilled its quarterly plan. The chemical and building-materials industries, too, carried out their plans satisfactorily. The greatest success achieved in carrying out the plan for the second quarter, has been the quality of manufactured goods which have improved considerably. The quality of ammonium sulphate and several other major industrial goods has reached an international standard.

Factories and enterprises which are exemplary in the carrying out of the plan for the second quarter in the sphere of ore mining are Tanchon, Changdo, Musan and Songhung Mines. The Tanchon Mine, producing iron sulphate, the raw material of ammonium sulphate, surpassed the plan for the second quarter by 12.2 per cent, with a 27.2 per cent increase in the productivity of labour and 20 per cent decrease in production costs. So this mine had the honour of carrying away the pennant of the Cabinet. The Musan Mine not only fulfilled the ore production plan for the second quarter but also completed removing overburden and prospecting as scheduled, thereby opening up a definite prospect for completing this year’s plan ahead of schedule. The Songhung Mine improved production arrangements and introduced advanced mining methods; this increased the production to 257 per cent in June as against production in January.

In the coal-mining industry the Aoji, Sadong, Anju and Kogonwon Coal Mines worked admirably. The Aoji Coal Mine doubled its coal production in the second quarter as compared to production in the first quarter, turning out 2,000 tons a day at the maximum, which is an all-time high, since its inception. The Kogonwon Coal Mine contributed greatly to the normalization of railway traffic by introducing advanced hewing methods, which ensured the production of good bituminous coal as planned.

In the field of the metal industry the Chongjin and Songjin Steel Plants set an example. The latter reorganized the process of special steel production and conducted an electric-furnace smelting operation according to standard regulations, thus boosting the
quality of special steel to a higher level.

Other factories and enterprises which have been exemplary in implementing the second-quarter plans are the Pukjung Machine Plant in the machine-building industry, the Chongsu Chemical Factory and the Pyongyang Special Rubber Factory in the chemical industry, the Komusan Cement Factory in the building-materials industry, and the Sinuiju Paper Mill in light industry.

All these successes achieved in fulfilling the national economic plan for the second quarter and the first half of the year are the precious fruit of the lofty patriotic zeal and dedicated effort of all the workers, technicians and office employees in the field of industry.

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, I would like to express my warm thanks to you managers present here and all the workers, technicians and office employees under the Ministry of Industry, for having striven to carry out the plans for the second quarter and the first half of this year.

Comrades,

Today, the internal and external situation is developing in favour of our people’s struggle for territorial integrity and the country’s reunification, but it still remains strained and complicated.

As you all know, in the international arena the conflict between the democratic and reactionary forces is becoming more acute.

The reactionary forces of imperialism are working viciously to ignite a new war so as to save themselves from doom and realize their ambition for world domination. The US and British imperialists are openly increasing their armaments, setting up military bases on foreign territories and forming new aggressive military blocs. For example, the North Atlantic Treaty Organization was rigged up in April. They claim its formation is designed for collective self-defence, but they are only playing a deceptive trick. It is apparent to everyone that the formation of the NATO is aimed at invading People’s Democracies, suppressing the national-liberation movement, and further realizing their wild dream of world domination.
At present the US imperialists are working to rebuild the fascist German army and revive Japanese militarism in an attempt to make use of West Germany and Japan for their aggressive purposes. Owing to these moves by the US imperialists and other imperialist forces of reaction, world peace and security are being gravely jeopardized and the menace of another war is looming larger and larger with every passing day.

This external situation is reflected as it is in our country.

Since the first days of their occupation of south Korea the US imperialists have been bent on realizing their ambition to invade the whole of Korea. They deliberately broke down the work of the USSR-US Joint Commission which was held on two occasions. They rejected the Government of the Republic’s just proposal that Soviet and US troops withdraw from Korea simultaneously and leave the Korean question to the Korean people themselves. They are plotting to keep their armed forces stationed in south Korea. There is no reason whatsoever for them to stay on in south Korea. But why do the US imperialists want to keep their troops in south Korea? They are aiming precisely to occupy south Korea permanently and, with it as a foothold, invade all Korea.

Under the impact of the strong demand of all the Korean people and the unbiased world public, the US imperialists stated recently that they would withdraw their troops from south Korea, but it is no more than an artifice to hoodwink them. At present, the US imperialists are egging the Syngman Rhee puppet clique on to step up preparations for war even more openly against the northern half of Korea.

Under the manipulation of the US imperialists the Syngman Rhee puppet clique are raising the “march north” racket more vociferously these days. They have built up positions on a large scale along the 38th parallel and are manning four divisions there. A few days ago they rigged up a so-called “military service law” in an attempt to force young south Koreans into the “National Defence Army”; it is said that they will put it into effect on September 1. This clearly shows that the puppet Syngman Rheeites’ reckless manoeuvres for a
fratricidal war have reached a serious stage.

The internal and external situation confronting the country demands that we further strengthen the democratic base in the northern half of Korea, politically and economically. In order to do this in conformity with the requirements of the situation, the Two-Year National Economic Plan should be carried out with success.

The central task under the Two-Year National Economic Plan is to lay foundations for an independent national economy, by eliminating the colonial lopsidedness of our economy which is the evil aftermath of Japanese imperialist rule, effecting the technical reconstruction of industry and agriculture and ensuring a high rate of growth in production. By the end of 1950, factories and enterprises destroyed by Japanese imperialism will have been restored completely and the value of the total output of state-run industries will double that in 1948. In 1950 we will produce 250,000 tons of steel ingot, 6,800 million kwh of electricity, 5,499,000 tons of coal, 15,600 tons of machinery, 415,600 tons of chemical fertilizers, 508,000 tons of cement and 22,867,000 metres of fabric. The total grain yield will increase by 7.9 per cent as against that in 1948.

When the Two-Year National Economic Plan is fulfilled, the democratic base in the northern half of Korea will have been strengthened further and the people’s living standards would have risen markedly. Besides, a reliable economic guarantee for the country’s reunification will have been obtained.

We must, and can, carry out the Two-Year National Economic Plan, though it is a very difficult and enormous plan. We have a strong guarantee for the successful fulfilment of this plan.

First, we have the wise leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea. Through its guidance to the building of a new, democratic Korea since liberation, the Workers’ Party has become not only a party which is able to organize the masses politically but a party of builders who know how to build the economy and run enterprises. The wise leadership of the Party is a definite guarantee for all our victories.

Second, we have the experience of working out two yearly plans
and carrying them out successfully. We also have, as masters of our
country, people who work diligently and conscientiously. Our people
who were maltreated and humiliated as a stateless people in former
days, are working hard now with creative enthusiasm, deeply
conscious that devoted service for the prosperity of the country and
people and happiness of the future generations is for their own good.
The people’s creative enthusiasm and industry are strong factors that
enable the triumphant fulfilment of the plan in the face of any
difficulties and obstacles.

Third, we have abundant mineral resources with which we can
develop the national economy rapidly and improve the material aspect
of our people’s life. From ancient times our country has been called a
land of golden tapestry full of gold, silver and other treasures. In fact,
our country is blessed with mineral resources. We have valuable
resources all around us and these are indispensable to our life.

Fourth, we enjoy international support and encouragement. The
active support and encouragement from the Soviet Union and other
fraternal countries are boundlessly inspiring the struggle of our people
who have embarked on the road to create a new life; this is of great
assistance to the implementation of the Two-Year National Economic
Plan.

We have nothing to fear so long as there is our Party’s wise
leadership, industrious people, abundant mineral resources and
international support and encouragement. There is not a shadow of
doubt that the Two-Year National Economic Plan will be completed
successfully. All our officials and working people must work
unflaggingly, confident that victory is theirs, and help to fulfil and
more than fulfil the Two-Year National Economic Plan ahead of
schedule.

Industry is a predominant sector of the national economy and holds
a major portion of our country’s economy. Therefore, success in the
fulfilment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan depends entirely
on how they will work in the field of industry. Every reserve and
possibility in industry should be tapped and explored so that all
assignments under the plan can be fulfilled without fail.

During the Two-Year Plan period, in all the industrial spheres, factories and enterprises which are not yet rehabilitated should be restored completely, and those in operation now should be expanded and their equipment used to the maximum so as to surpass the pre-liberation level of production by a big margin.

The metal industry occupies a very important place in the rehabilitation and development of our national economy. Only by increasing steel production in this field, can all other branches of the national economy, including the machine-building industry, be developed quickly. In the metal industry a 350- and a 500-ton blast furnace should be rebuilt in the period of the Two-Year Plan so as to increase steel production, and particularly great efforts should be directed to increasing small and medium rolling mills.

As many factories and enterprises are rehabilitated and built, the demand for electricity increases rapidly. In order to fully meet the evergrowing demands of the national economy, those engaged in the power industry must strive to normalize the production of electricity at the existing power stations, while, at the same time, they must take measures to increase generating capacities such as rehabilitating the Tongnogang Power Station.

At ore mines, priority should be given to tunnelling and prospecting and ore dressing plants should be expanded. At the same time, in the ore-mining industry 19 mines, including the Kaechon Mine, should be rehabilitated and developed.

As for the coal-mining industry, positive efforts should be made to maximize coal production. Coal is an important fuel for industry. Without increasing the production of coal it is impossible to operate factories and enterprises or run the railways. While striving to produce more coal, they should complete the capital construction projects envisaged in this year’s plan by the end of November, at the latest. This will be effective in normalizing the production of coal to a higher level from next year.

An important task before the machine-building industry is to turn
out larger quantities of machines, equipment and accessories necessary for reinforcing the technical outlay of industry and agriculture. Owing to the ruinous effect of Japanese imperialist colonial rule, the foundation of our machine-building industry is very weak. Therefore, only by increasing the production capacity in this field can the machines, equipment and accessories required by other fields of the national economy be produced satisfactorily. The machine-building industry should turn the Pyongyang Automobile Repair Shop into a factory which specializes in the production of machine tools, while devoting much effort to the building of the rolling stock, meter, rock-drill and farming implements factories, putting them into operation ahead of schedule.

In the field of the chemical industry the production of caustic soda and carbide should be increased, and, in particular, great efforts should be made in the production of chemical fertilizers.

One of the major tasks of the Two-Year Plan is to raise the people’s living standards rapidly. In light industry, close attention should be paid to the turning out of daily necessities and foodstuffs and the production of fabrics should be increased radically, so as to solve the clothing problem for the people.

Production of exports should be increased and their quality should be guaranteed.

Otherwise, foreign trade cannot be expanded and developed. Foreign trade is being hindered because our export items are not guaranteed in quantity or quality. Our June export plan for the Soviet Union was not fulfilled because factories and enterprises neglected the production of export goods.

In order to increase the production of exports and improve their quality, we must completely overcome the tendency among our officials to slight the production of export goods, and should establish the habit of carrying out export production plans without reservation. Raw materials and other supplies should be provided in time for those factories and shops producing export goods, and able technicians and skilled workers should be assigned there. Also,
export items should be checked strictly.

Throughout all the branches of the national economy the sources of our exports should be tapped diligently. The variety of goods we are exporting at present is not large enough. Only by diligently tapping the sources of our exports and increasing the variety of exports, can foreign trade be expanded and developed. Cement is a good export item. Our country has an inexhaustible deposit of limestone and anthracite, so we can produce cement in bulk. In future, we should increase its production and export it in large quantities.

If we are to effect the technical reconstruction of industry and agriculture during the period of the Two-Year Plan, we should, while developing the machine-building industry, increase the number of technicians and skilled workers and improve the technical standard and skill of the working people. At present we are experiencing the lack of technical personnel. In state-owned industries alone, they are short of skilled workers by 38.9 per cent as against the planned figure. To increase the number of technicians and skilled workers is a matter of utmost urgency now. The Ministry of Industry should train excellent technicians and skilled workers through various short training courses. At the same time it should arrange meetings regularly for the working people to impart technical knowledge, so that every one of them acquires proper techniques and skill.

We should positively introduce advanced foreign techniques. But we should not assimilate them blindly. If they are introduced mechanically without taking our country’s actual situation into account, it might hamper the rehabilitation and development of our national economy. We should assimilate the advanced techniques of other countries, while adhering to the principle of accepting only those techniques conducive to the building of the national economy.

For the successful implementation of these huge tasks before the industrial spheres during the Two-Year Plan, we should enhance the role of the managers of factories and enterprises.

The manager is entrusted by the Party, state and people to assume the responsibility of running an enterprise and fulfilling production
plans. His responsibility is very heavy and important. You should work hard to fulfil the assignments of your factories and enterprises under the Two-Year Plan.

You should devote your primary efforts to awakening the enthusiasm of the workers. Our workers, technicians and office employees of today are not the workers, technicians and office workers of yesterday. Previously they had to work as servants or bondsmen under Japanese imperialist rule, but they are now owners of the means of production, the true masters of factories and enterprises, thanks to democratic reforms. You should raise their awareness as the masters and properly explain and bring home to them the political situation of our country and the political and economic significance of the fulfilment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan. Thus mindful of national interests, they will wage a vigorous struggle for increased production and fulfil or more than fulfil the plan ahead of schedule.

The managers should organize production well and establish a strict discipline in planning. At present some of them organize production by rule of thumb. This will not do. You should map out plans in conformity with the specific conditions of your factories and enterprises and organize production accordingly and ensure the provision of raw materials and other supplies in a responsible way. In addition, you should always grasp and guide the execution of the plan and carry out your production plans unfailingly in all indices.

The managers should strive steadily to raise labour productivity. It is one of the important means for the implementation of the plan. If you are to increase labour productivity, you should, while ensuring raw materials and other supplies in time, tighten work discipline, improve methods of operation, raise the working people’s technical level and skill, and effect a correct piecework system. At present the work discipline is very lax. The factories and enterprises still fail to make full use of the 480 working minutes and there still persists a tendency of coming late to work or leaving early. This puts great obstacles in the way towards raising productivity. The managers should establish system and order in the factories and enterprises and completely do
away with the tendencies to be absent without leave, come late to work and leave early, and see that all the workers effectively use the 480 working minutes. You should also pay attention to actively introducing advanced working methods and encouraging and developing technical inventions by the workers and technicians.

You must strive to make up for your work force yourselves instead of expecting the state to do it for you, and properly keep the balance of work force between direct and indirect branches and between production processes. You must prevent the turnover of manpower and stabilize it.

You should take good care of equipment and property. Only by managing equipment with proper care, can you expect their trouble-free performance and normalize production. Quite a few factories and enterprises do not take proper care of their equipment. In the second quarter of the year the Hwanghae Iron Works did not take proper care of its equipment, and this caused severe fluctuations in production. You must check and repair your equipment regularly, and ensure that they are not overworked or left uncared for. Meanwhile, you should educate the workers to take proper care of their equipment so that they manage them in a responsible manner.

You should strive to raise the quality of goods and reduce the production costs. Without lowering the production costs we can neither increase the state’s accumulation nor the proceeds of enterprises. In lowering the costs it is necessary to stop producing sub-standard goods and rejects, step up the struggle for economy and actively tap inner reserves. You should prevent the practices of exceeding the norms of material consumption per unit of goods, wasting raw materials and other supplies and encroaching on the property of enterprises.

It is one of the important duties of the manager to guarantee a satisfactory welfare supply service to the workers and technicians.

Our workers and technicians are not mere bread-earners any more; they work with all their wisdom and talents for the prosperity of the country and the people, so you should look after their lives in a
responsible manner. Working clothes, footwear and other labour-protection supplies must be issued in time and adequate conditions for rest must be provided to them. You should show deep concern for solving the housing problem for your employees. Factories and enterprises are still affected by the migrant work force mainly because houses are not provided at the right time to the workers. You should not try to depend on the state alone but should construct many houses for yourselves by drawing on your own inner reserves. In addition, you should take steps to supply them regularly with vegetables and other non-staple foodstuffs.

The Party and the state have great expectations from you managers. I firmly believe that to fulfil their expectations, you will make a great contribution to the successful fulfilment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan by performing your duties admirably.
Comrades,

I would like to hear your speeches to the end at this meeting, but I am sorry I cannot because I have got some other things to do.

As is seen through the report and many comrades’ speeches at the meeting, great successes have been achieved in the work of prosecution since the joint meeting of the heads of public prosecutor’s offices and security stations in provinces and cities was held in November 1946. The prosecutor’s office is a body that strives for the correct enforcement of the law. In the past, prosecution officials worked hard to intensify the law-abiding spirit of the people and expose criminals of all types. Thus they revealed many traitors to the country and nation and other corrupt elements who had infiltrated into our organs and enterprises and usurped state property. We can say that the work of prosecution is in the right orbit now. However, it is but an initial success in the light of the duties of prosecution officials. Prosecutors must not be content with the successes achieved but tirelessly work to fulfil their duties.

Their main duty is to safeguard the people’s democratic system in our country, champion all policies of our Party and the Government of
the Republic and safeguard state property and the property and lives of the people.

As you all know, after the August 15 liberation, the people’s power was set up and democratic reforms such as the agrarian reform and the nationalization of industries were carried out successfully. This resulted in the establishment of an advanced people’s democratic system in north Korea. In keeping with the general will of the people in north and south Korea the elections of the deputies to the Supreme People’s Assembly were held last August and the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea was founded in September. The foundation of the Republic was an event of epoch-making significance in consolidating the successes of the democratic reforms and in strengthening our people’s democratic system.

After the foundation of the Republic, our people, united firmly around the Government, waged a vigorous struggle to consolidate the people’s democratic system politically and economically. Our workers, peasants and working intellectuals victoriously fulfilled the national economic plan for 1948 by their own efforts and started to carry out the Two-Year National Economic Plan this year, and have already gained many successes.

Last year the production of state industries increased by more than 2.6 times as against that in 1946 and many factories and enterprises were rehabilitated or newly built. Particularly, many state local industries were set up and the utilization of the equipment increased. As a result, the production of daily necessities more than trebled as against that in 1947. This markedly lessened the colonial one-sidedness and backwardness of our industry and enabled the people to get more daily necessities.

A great achievement was made in agriculture, too. The incentive for production on the part of the peasants who became owners of land through the agrarian reform, increased greatly, and the output of grain was stepped up. Last year they produced 2,670,000 tons of grain, far surpassing the figure of 1944. What problems we had because of the food shortage till the end of 1946! At that time the Provisional People’s
Committee of North Korea had to act as “superintendent of food supply”. But now the food question has basically been solved; we even have an extra stock of food. They say that these days some foreigners who are trading with us ask the officials concerned why we are not going to import food this year. We are fully self-sufficient in food without having to import it. At present our peasants are expanding cultivated land to increase food production and are carrying out the Phyongnam irrigation project and many other large-scale irrigation projects under the slogan, “Let’s turn non-paddy fields into rice fields.”

Considering the results of the implementation of the plan for the first half of this year, I think we can fulfil the Two-Year National Economic Plan ahead of schedule. When it is fulfilled, our people’s democratic system will be further consolidated politically and economically.

All these successes achieved in the northern half of Korea are possible only under the people’s power and the people’s democratic system chosen and established by the people themselves. Therefore, our people express full support to them, firmly convinced that only the people’s power and the people’s democratic system can guarantee them true freedom and happiness. The south Korean people, too, are invigorated and encouraged by the people’s democratic system established in the northern half of Korea and by the great successes achieved under this system, and are waging a vigorous struggle against the US imperialists and their stooges, the Syngman Rhee puppet clique.

How ardently all the people of north and south Korea support the people’s democratic system in the north was fully shown during last year’s elections of deputies to the Supreme People’s Assembly. In north Korea 99.97 per cent of the electorate took part in the elections and 77.52 per cent in south Korea in the face of harsh reactionary repression. Since all the people of north and south Korea support us, it is as clear as day that if we hold a general election throughout the country in accordance with the proposal of the Democratic Front for
the Reunification of Korea to reunify the country peacefully, we are sure to win.

Afraid of the ever strengthening and developing people’s democratic system established in the northern half of Korea, the US imperialists and their stooges, the Syngman Rhee puppet clique, are running amuck to destroy it. The enemies are wantonly arresting, imprisoning and slaughtering south Koreans struggling for territorial integrity and national reunification and, at the same time, they are sending a great number of spies and saboteurs to the northern half of Korea with a view to destroying our people’s democratic institutions.

Meanwhile, the rest of the exploiting classes overthrown by the democratic revolution are manoeuvring to realize their wild dream of restoring their old system and opposing our people’s democratic system. Once in Hwanghae Province, class enemies set fire to a warehouse of agricultural tax in kind. Some time ago, our security personnel made a wholesale arrest of the puppet army’s Horim Unit which had intruded into Kangwon Province. It has been confirmed that the unit had been in league with the overthrown landlords, pro-Japanese stooges and loafers in the northern half. Even through these facts we can understand clearly how viciously the remnants of the overthrown exploiting classes are manoeuvring to restore their old system.

Prosecution officials must remember that the greater our successes are, the more viciously class enemies at home and abroad will try to stamp them out. You must actively struggle to safeguard by law the people’s democratic system, a revolutionary gain attained by our people with blood, against the manoeuvres of class enemies. You must have a high sense of revolutionary vigilance and sharply watch the moves of spies, saboteurs and remnants of overthrown exploiters who will try to destroy our system, thereby exposing them in time and suppressing them by law.

Prosecution officials must always control and watch the execution of policies of our Party and the Government of the Republic and state laws, and fight practices contrary to them, without making any compromises.
To control and supervise the execution of state laws and intensify the struggle against criminal acts is an important matter in defending our revolutionary gains and the people’s interests from infringement by criminals and guaranteeing the correct execution of policies of our Party and the Government of the Republic.

Ours is a people’s law and the law of a state where the working people have power in their hands. All the laws enforced in our country are truly democratic laws representing the will of the people; they express the policies of our Party and the Government of the Republic in the form of action regulations. In particular, the Constitution of the Republic is the most people-oriented and democratic one which correctly reflects all successes achieved through democratic reforms in north Korea after liberation and accurately defines civil freedom and rights.

Therefore, controlling and supervising the correct execution of all our laws means, precisely, safeguarding the revolutionary gains and the interests of the people, and guaranteeing the correct implementation of the policies of our Party and the Government of the Republic. Prosecution officials have very important duties and functions to perform. It is not too much to say that how all infringements on our revolutionary gains and the people’s interests are overcome and how the policies of our Party and the Government of the Republic are implemented correctly depends on how prosecution officials strive to achieve this from the point of view of the state and people.

No one has the right to violate our laws. All workers of state establishments, enterprises, social organizations and cooperative bodies, and all citizens are duty bound to abide by the law, and work and act as it demands.

At present, however, some workers in state establishments and social organizations neglect the execution of the policies of our Party and the Government of the Republic and the state laws. Even among those who were elected by the people and work in the organs of people’s power, there are quite a few who do not execute state laws,
decisions and directives properly, thus betraying the trust of the people.

By violating state law and order some officials in power organs burden the people with extra taxes and carry out at random important policies and regulations such as the state food policy and regulations on agricultural tax in kind.

Correctly carrying out the state food policy is very important. The food policy or food administration means that the work related to food is a part of politics. Without executing the state food policy correctly, we cannot rehabilitate and develop the national economy or stabilize and improve the people’s livelihood. Nevertheless, some officials in power organs are stocking and rationing state provisions in an irresponsible and slipshod manner.

Because some officials in power organs do not properly execute the regulations on agricultural tax in kind, some peasants complain that the rate of tax in kind is high and others ask for a revision of the rules. The regulations on agricultural tax in kind now in force in our country are all right. Peoples of other People’s Democracies say that our regulations are good and that they will model themselves according to them. The point in question is not that the stipulations on agricultural tax in kind are wrong, but that some officials assess the tax in kind incorrectly.

These deviations manifested in some officials did harm to the revolution and helped the counter-revolution; in the final analysis, they cannot but be regarded as criminal acts, irrespective of their subjective intentions.

Prosecution authorities should further tighten their control and supervision over the execution of state policies and laws, and take judicial action against whoever violates them, regardless of the position he holds. They should tighten control particularly over factories and enterprises so that they fulfil the state plans without fail.

Today our people are confronted with the important task of strengthening the people’s power and rehabilitating and developing the national economy. All the people in the northern half of Korea are now
waging a vigorous struggle for the successful fulfilment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan. This will bring about a further advance in consolidating the foundations of an independent national economy, thus preparing the material basis for the country’s reunification and improving the people’s material and cultural conditions. In this struggle the prosecution authorities have a great role to play. They must contribute actively to the successful fulfilment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan by intensifying judicial control so that all spheres of the national economy establish a rigid discipline in planning, and fulfil the plans in all indices without fail.

Prosecution officials must step up the judicial struggle against those who gnaw into the property of the state and people.

As many comrades have mentioned in the debate, though it is nearly four years since our country was liberated, the negative phenomena such as embezzlement, pilfering and squandering left over by the old society still remain uneradicated. Some officials of organs and enterprises are misappropriating and squandering state funds in violation of the financial regulations of the state. Quite a few entrepreneurs and traders neglect the payment of taxes and cheat the state and are engrossed in speculation. However, some prosecution officials do not regard misappropriation, squandering, embezzlement and pilfering of state property as criminal acts against the people and they deal with these practices more lightly than with the crime of stealing private property. They are gravely mistaken. State property is the common property of all the people and a valuable asset for the building up of a rich and strong independent, sovereign state. Therefore, misappropriating, squandering and embezzling state property is the gravest crime and it should never be considered lighter than the crime of stealing private property. Prosecutors should strengthen the judicial struggle against all practices of infringing on state property to defend it thoroughly.

Prosecutors must prevent crimes and see to it that all the people abide by the law voluntarily.

In this work we cannot achieve desired success through judicial
control alone. Obsolete ideas still remain in the minds of our people in no small measure and they are the main reason for crimes in our society. Some people know that they must not break law and order but they do so because they have vestiges of the old ideas. Therefore, in order to prevent illegal acts you should educate people properly to root out any trace of the old ideas in their minds and increase their law-abiding spirit, at the same time tightening judicial control. By explaining and propagating the law properly, prosecutors must see to it that all the people know what the law demands, abide by it voluntarily and make the struggle against all unlawful phenomena their own.

In intensifying the people’s law-abiding spirit, the on-the-spot public trial is of great significance. If you gather the masses on the spot and hold a public trial, it will serve as a vivid reminder for them not to violate law and order. Prosecutors, in close coordination with court authorities, should often organize on-the-spot public trials.

In order to perform their duty satisfactorily, prosecutors should free themselves quite definitely from formalism, bureaucratism and all other obsolete methods and style of work, and tirelessly work to acquire the truly people-oriented method and style of work.

Formalism and bureaucratism are old work methods used by officials under Japanese imperialist rule. These methods are not to be tolerated in the work of the people’s prosecution bodies. Immediately after liberation those who had served the Japanese imperialists as police or prosecutors, infiltrated into the ranks of our prosecutors and acted the way the old government officials would do in the past. They did a lot of harmful acts; embezzling and squandering the property of the state and people, infringing on human rights and alienating the Party from the masses. They have been purged already, but we cannot say that the bureaucratic work methods have been eliminated completely from the work of prosecution. Some prosecutors still like to behave haughtily the way officials did under Japanese imperialist rule, because they still have the residue of Japanese imperialist ideology in their minds. Although they were workers or peasants then, they saw how arrogantly the Japanese imperialist officials used to behave.
Therefore, unless they discard the ideological remnants of Japanese imperialism, they may continue to act in the same way.

Prosecutors are the people’s prosecutors; they come from the people and struggle for their interests. Therefore, they should discard their formalistic and bureaucratic work methods and go among the people and rely on them in their work. In this way they can perform their role satisfactorily as faithful servants of the people. The anti-Japanese guerrillas used to live and fight together with people under the slogan, “As the fish cannot live without water, so the guerrillas cannot live without the people.” Prosecution officials should emulate their example; they should always go and live among the people and move them to control and supervise the execution of state decrees, decisions and instructions. Thus prosecutors will be “chief prosecutors” and the people “prosecutors”.

Prosecution officials should always be kind to the people. When you meet old people, you should politely salute them first. You must treat everyone like your own brothers. Prosecutors in the Japanese imperialist days spoke in the interests of Japanese imperialism, landlords and capitalists, and so there was no reason for them to be kind to the people. People feared and hated them very much. If you prosecution authorities treat them kindly, they will respect you and actively help you in your work; they will say that the prosecutors of today are courteous, unlike those in the days of Japanese imperialism.

Prosecution officials must lead a frugal life and never be overcome by the love of gain. Under Japanese imperialist rule, officials liked to be treated or bribed by the people, but you must not do that. Speculators may try to bribe prosecution officials who have judicial power by treating them to a bowl of noodles. If the officials forget their duty and compromise with speculators because of a bowl of noodles, they cannot be called the people’s prosecution officials. Prosecutors should always be vigilant so as not to be entrapped by speculators and other corrupt elements. In particular, they must not receive bribes or be treated to drinking-bouts.

Prosecution officials must give full rein to the noble habit of
helping and leading each other forward. You should regard others’ sufferings as your own and help them untangle involved problems arising in their lives. For example, if one who has spare clothes shares them with another who has no clothes, it is a laudable deed. It is different from giving or receiving bribes; it is a laudable act stemming from noble comradeship.

Prosecution authorities should rid themselves of the servile mentality which the office workers in the days of Japanese imperialism had, and always work diligently. Some of our officials pick up their brief cases and go home as soon as working hours are over, not bothering about whether or not they have done their tasks for the day. This is the way officials worked under Japanese imperialist rule, just to get paid. You are not salaried men but nation-building fighters who work for the country and nation. The money you receive from the state every month is not a salary but a living allowance. You must work diligently and put in all your efforts and talents, not for reward, but for the country and nation.

Prosecution officials must strictly adhere to the class principle in their everyday work. Prosecution is a form of class struggle. Therefore, you should have a stronger class spirit than anybody else. You must not be prompted by pity and discard your class principle in the struggle against crimes. You must be clean in your life, and fair and principled in your work.

Prosecution officials should always set examples for the masses by observing law and order. Only then can they resolutely combat illegal acts with principled attitudes.

Prosecution authorities should completely overcome narrow departmentalism. In particular, they must not be antagonistic to local organs of power or vie with them for power. Scramble for power between organs is very harmful. They must help local power organs greatly in their work.

I was told that prosecution bodies are reluctant to receive directives even from the Cabinet because they are not supposed to obey the local power organs but their superior bodies in accordance with centralism.
This is wrong. Prosecutor’s offices should submit work reports to the Cabinet and be responsible for their work to it, since they are supposed to supervise the execution of Cabinet decisions and instructions.

In order to do their duty satisfactorily, prosecution officials should keep raising their political and professional levels, at the same time acquiring a people-oriented method and style of work.

They must not just lament their failure to have opportunities for learning but study hard from now onwards. They must first study our Party policy and Marxism-Leninism diligently. They cannot discuss the law apart from politics and there can be no law which is divorced from our Party policy. Unless they know the Party policy, they cannot carry out the law the way the Party wants them to. Therefore, they must study our Party policy hard and strive to be well versed in it. Since they are in the forefront of class struggle, they should endeavour to arm themselves firmly with working-class consciousness. Only then can they analyse and deal with crimes from a class position and thoroughly repress reactionaries by enforcing the law. They should also study our democratic laws seriously.

To build up the ranks of prosecution officials is one of the important guarantees for raising the role of their offices. Therefore, you must select reliable and able men as prosecution officials on Party principles. If you, in violation of the principles, allow yourselves to be influenced by personal considerations and appoint as cadres your relatives, friends, schoolmates and people from your native places, then alien elements may worm their way into the ranks of cadres and you will never be able to guarantee their purity. Therefore, you must never back down from Party principles in the administration of personnel. Sometimes, your relatives, friends and schoolmates may come to you and ask you to appoint them as officials. When this happens you should persuade them to settle down to their present posts and work hard, instead of making useless calls; you may tell them that if they work and live properly, their organizations will trust them and promote them to higher ranks. This is necessary not only for the revolution but also for your relatives, friends and schoolfellows.
You must guarantee the unity and cohesion of the ranks of prosecution officials. To do this, you must adhere to the principle of examining while trusting each other. If no problem arises while doing this, you can believe in your comrades more firmly, and if any problem arises you can set it right promptly. Prosecution officials should maintain this principle to thoroughly guarantee the unity and cohesion of their ranks.

I expect that after this meeting you will correct your shortcomings and further develop the work of prosecution.
Today we saw an exercise of offensive tactics, including combat firing, carried out by a reinforced infantry battalion at the First Central Military Academy. Now I am going to tell you about my impressions of this exercise.

Today’s event was the largest tactical infantry battalion exercise. Different services and arms such as the air force, artillery and tanks participated in it for the first time since the founding of the People’s Army.

This tactical exercise was aimed at teaching all generals and officers present here how to organize and command such an intricate exercise as today’s. It was also meant to help the teachers in the academy in improving upon their qualifications and make the students consolidate their knowledge. This being the purpose, the exercise was carried out successfully without any accident, thanks to the voluntary enthusiasm and active endeavour on the part of all you participants.

The most commendable feature of today’s exercise was the coordination between the different services and arms. In modern warfare it is highly important to skilfully organize this coordination and ensure a harmonious firing of firearms. Only when units from different services and arms coordinate their movements, can they
cover each other’s advance, and eliminate the enemy successfully. So, every commander should try his best to organize and maintain perfectly coordinated movements under any circumstances.

At today’s exercise the battle was well commanded and communications were comparatively well organized. The personnel and equipment arrived at the designated place in good time, to attack the “enemy” successfully in accordance with the commanders’ decisions, since the commanding system was well set up and communications properly established.

At the tactical exercise the use of fire power was organized in minute detail and their various attacks were also successful. Above all, the air force unit bombed the targets accurately. It proves that they worked really hard during their daily flight training.

The artillerymen also smashed all the targets. In the past they carried out their firing practice well. Artillery firing should always be as intensive as it was today, giving the enemy no chance to raise their heads. The infantry battalion commander should make good use of mortars under his command to not only check but also annihilate the enemy.

To hold the enemy in check and cover the advance of the infantry dependably with heavy machine guns is one of the important factors for successfully destroying the enemy. Today the heavy machine guns gave very good covering fire. Heavy machine gunfire must be concentrated, as it was done today, so that the enemy cannot raise their heads and our soldiers can valiantly charge forward, with their morale boosted.

The throwing of hand grenades was also good. Hand grenades must always be thrown accurately into the enemy trenches. True, it is not an easy task to hit the trenches with hand grenades in actual battle. Therefore, all soldiers must always train themselves properly to attain skill in throwing hand grenades.

You camouflaged the frontline trenches well at today’s exercise. You must conduct your training as though engaged in actual warfare, camouflaging yourselves as effectively as today, to merge with the background.
The training of the tank unit was also superb. Tanks must strike a mental blow to the enemy, contain them decisively and guarantee the efficient advance of infantrymen. Only when the infantry dash into the enemy trenches simultaneously with the tanks, will they be successful in wiping out the enemy.

Making effective use of the second echelon is one of the important requisites for victory in a battle. It depends largely on the commanding ability of officers. Only by using the second echelon at the most appropriate moment, can you keep your enemy constantly under fire and finally smash them. At today’s training you used it in time and the method was correct.

Umpires play an important role in tactical exercise. Their work today was satisfactory. Units must organize it in future training as you did today.

On the whole today’s exercise was well organized and carried out as scheduled, in a satisfactory manner.

It is a great achievement on your part to have successfully finished without a single mishap such a large-scale tactical exercise involving different services and arms and using ball cartridges and loaded shells. This is because the commanders made precise arrangements for the training and conducted political work skilfully. All soldiers understood the purposes and significance of today’s training clearly as well as methods of performing their duties. They put their hearts into it with meticulous preparations. You also took all possible precautions, adopted fit measures to prevent accidents in close coordination with local Party and government bodies, and established strictly regulated movements on the training ground.

Let me offer my thanks to you all, teachers and students of the First Central Military Academy and men and officers of different services and arms, for the great success in today’s tactical exercise.

You must not remain content with this success. You must intensify combat training from now on, to attain an even higher level of military science and skills, and equip yourselves with more tactics related to modern warfare.
You organized the exercise in a hilly area today, but in the future, you should have it mostly in mountainous areas. In an actual war, our fighting will not be restricted to hillocks only, since our country is quite mountainous. So we must always keep the situation in mind, and make an in-depth study of tactics suited to our topographical conditions and train soldiers to fight in the rugged mountains.

You should use the artillery also to conform with our topography. Howitzers are more necessary than guns in our country, which has many mountains. Henceforth you should make a more thorough study of the question of using artillery suited to the physical features of our country.

You must have gained a great deal of experience from today’s tactical exercise.

I hope you will intensify your tactical training in future, drawing on today’s experience, so as to further perfect the combat readiness of your units.
Comrades,

Today I have attended this meeting which was held to review the work done by state crop-growing and stock-raising farms in the first half of the year. Availing myself of this opportunity I should like to dwell on some problems related to bringing about an improvement in their operation at present, and displaying the advantages of the state economy, so as to promote agricultural production in our country.

Improving the work of state crop and stock farms is of great significance in advancing our agriculture which is underdeveloped as a result of Japanese imperialist colonial rule, and in leading the peasants along progressive lines. State crop and stock farms are agricultural enterprises of an advanced form of the economy, based on state ownership of the means of production. Only by consolidating and developing state crop and stock farms, can we show peasants the superiority of the state economy and actively propel the development of agriculture as a whole.

It is very important to develop the state sector in the agricultural spheres. Therefore, after liberation, we exerted great efforts to set up
and consolidate state crop and stock farms, enduring a thousand difficulties despite the fact that the political situation in our country was complex, and we were economically hard up.

Officials of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry and state crop and stock farms, true to the Party’s agricultural policy, have done a lot of work and made progress in founding state crop-growing and stock-raising farms from nothing and consolidating and developing them.

However, in the work of state crop and stock farms there were more faults and less success, and these faults must be overcome without fail.

In a word, the defect is that these farms fail to properly fulfil their mission as state agricultural enterprises. At present, some state crop and stock farms fail to display the excellence of the state economy to the full and to set an example to the peasants.

It is true that most of the state crop and stock farms have been set up in areas where the land is barren and the geographical conditions unfavourable. But after they were organized, the state made a considerable investment in them, sent technicians and assigned efficient staff to them.

Therefore, had we improved the farming methods and actively introduced advanced agricultural techniques in state crop and stock farms, managing and operating them in a responsible manner, their work would not have been in such a backward state as it is today.

We cannot develop agriculture by using obsolete experience and techniques. However, some officials of state crop and stock farms were reluctant to learn and introduce advanced agricultural techniques, sticking instead to their outdated experience. This prevented the farms from increasing the grain output, which they would otherwise have been able to do.

State crop and stock farms also failed to properly breed livestock. Last year they met the requirements of the state plan in all fields but stockbreeding. At state crop and stock farms a great number of livestock died of diseases last year. At the Pyongyang State Farm quite a few milch cows and calves perished because they bred the livestock
in a haphazard manner; and at the Phyonggang State Agro-Stock Farm, too, many pigs died due to the negligence of veterinary and anti-epidemic work. The number of the livestock decreased rather than increased last year at the state crop and stock farms.

Another major reason for failing to improve the work of state crop and stock farms is that the officials of the Ministry of Forestry and Agriculture and state crop and stock farms were unable to grasp the Party’s intentions clearly and, accordingly, did not strive on their own to overcome obstacles and difficulties in their way, but expected help from their seniors. The ministry officials remained seated at their desks, giving only directives, instead of going out and providing specific guidance and assistance to shore up the fledgeling farms. The officials of crop and stock farms did not manage and operate their farms in a responsible manner, complaining only about problems. As a result, the state crop and stock farms could not be consolidated and developed organizationally and economically. They were unable to play a pioneering role in the development of agriculture.

It is impossible that officials are completely infallible in their work. What is important is that they discover their defects in time and boldly correct them. Officials of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry and state crop and stock farms should clearly understand the purpose and significance of consolidating and developing state crop and stock farms and do all they can to rectify the shortcomings as soon as possible in order to improve and strengthen the work of the farms.

We began to execute the Two-Year National Economic Plan this year. In the plan the agricultural spheres have an important task to perform—of farming well to increase the crop yield decisively, so as to solve the nation’s food problem in a more satisfactory manner.

State crop and stock farms must demonstrate the advantages of the state economy by improving their managerial activities and increasing agricultural production steadily.

All the farms should introduce advanced farming methods and techniques. This will make it possible to economize on manpower, continue to augment agricultural production as well as quickly teach
advanced farming methods to the peasants. Officials of state crop and stock farms should strive to get rid of conventional farming methods and introduce instead advanced methods and techniques.

You should first allocate crops and species correctly, on the principle of sowing the right crop in the right kind of soil.

This is our Party’s consistent policy in developing agricultural production.

Every region in our country has different climatic and soil conditions. Even in the same region, the conditions in the plains differ from those in highlands, and those in sunny places from those in shaded places; also each valley has different conditions. Officials of state crop and stock farms should carefully study the climate of their respective regions and accordingly allocate crops and species to different tracts of soil.

At state crop and stock farms you should improve seed production to ameliorate the kinds of crops constantly; produce high-yielding species and gather in the seed well. In this way you should supply the countryside with superior-quality seed.

You should manure and tend the crops following technical regulations.

At the farms you should efficiently weed, furrow, thin and do other work to suit the conditions for the crops to grow and, in particular, thoroughly establish a scientific system of manuring. We will send more chemical fertilizers, on a priority basis, to state crop and stock farms, but they must not rely only on them, but try and produce plenty of high-quality manure for themselves.

At the state farms work should be mechanized actively so as to show the advantages of mechanized large-scale economy to the peasants.

But you should not try to mechanize farm work all at once or attempt a complicated mechanization right from the start. Mechanization should begin with heavy, labour-consuming work; you should proceed step by step—from semi-mechanization to complete mechanization. For the present you should first mechanize difficult
and labour-consuming work such as transport and ploughing. In mechanizing farm work you should widely introduce not only large but also medium and small-sized machines or farm implements drawn by drought animals.

While mechanizing farm work, you should also be concerned with making conventional farm implements more handy and effective. Officials of state crop and stock farms must improve conventional farm implements on their own and, at the same time, see that the peasants, too, use improved hoes and ploughs extensively, in place of the conventional ones.

Stockbreeding should be further developed at the state crop and stock farms.

Officials of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry and state crop and stock farms should be especially concerned about improving the methods of breeding livestock and developing state stockbreeding.

State crop and stock farms should produce a large number of superior breeding animals to distribute to the peasants, and turn out more meat and other animal products for the People’s Army and working people.

In order to increase animal products you should work hard to replace the present native kinds, having low productivity, and develop superior breeding animals instead. The native kinds grow slowly and die easily of diseases. Therefore, breeding animals should be improved and widely distributed to state crop and stock farms.

You must actively endeavour to prevent livestock from perishing due to diseases. By intensifying veterinary and anti-epidemic work you should stamp out infectious diseases among domestic animals, notably, pests and other epidemics among pigs.

You should properly organize the production and processing of fodder and supply it in a scientific way.

State crop and stock farms should develop animal husbandry to suit their respective natural and economic conditions. In grassy highlands you must breed mainly cows, sheep and other grazing animals, along with omnivores like pigs; in the plains you should lay stress on
breeding mainly pigs and other omnivorous animals along with herbivorous livestock.

The state farms should plan their work well. This is the main principle of economic management for enterprises whose means of production are owned by the state. Only when planning is properly done by state crop and stock farms can farming and stockbreeding be developed purposefully and the output increased. They should carefully plan all management activities inclusive of production, distribution, accumulation and consumption.

You should first formulate a correct production plan. It should be a scientific and dynamic one based on the specific assessment of the practical conditions and possibilities in accordance with the Party’s policy on agriculture. If you want to draft a scientific, dynamic plan, you must take the assistance of the masses. Officials of state crop and stock farms must stop being subjective and conservative, extensively consult the masses and, basing themselves on their creative proposals, work out realistic plans.

State crop and stock farms should draw up all the plans in a concrete way with reference to production, manpower, materials, the reduction of production costs and so on.

Planning is not an end in itself, but is aimed at developing production through the execution of the plans. Therefore, once they are drawn up, they have to be carried out without reservation by mobilizing all forces. The immediate task confronting the state crop and stock farms is to wage a vigorous struggle to surpass the production plan for this year.

The political and professional qualifications of the officials should be improved.

This is one of the very urgent problems now in consolidating and developing state crop and stock farms. At present the political and professional qualifications of their officials are so low that they are not proficient in organizing and directing production and running the enterprises. All the officials must study hard to better their political and professional qualifications.
To do this, you should first intensify your study of our Party’s lines and policies. Unless you officials are well acquainted with them, you cannot perform your duties satisfactorily. At state crop and stock farms you should make a thorough study of the Party’s lines and policies so as to equip yourselves firmly with Party ideology. In particular, you must thoroughly study the Party’s decisions and directives on consolidating and developing state crop and stock farms and correctly understand the Party’s intentions, and work as it expects you to.

In addition, the officials of the farms should acquire a knowledge of management and operation together with specialized scientific and technical knowhow pertaining to crop-yielding, stockbreeding and other agricultural branches. At the farms you must work hard to improve the workers’ knowledge of technique and skill.

You must establish strict discipline and order in your work and improve and strengthen the management and operation of the enterprises, and thereby develop your farms into exemplary enterprises that produce well and obtain high yields.

In conclusion, I should like to deal briefly on establishing ox-and-horse and farm-machine hire stations.

In order to ease the shortage of drought animals in the countryside, we should buy oxen and horses with state funds, to set up ox-and-horse hire stations which will assist in ploughing the fields for the peasants. These stations should be organized in every province with particular areas as a unit to suit the convenience of the peasants and the hire rate should be set low so as to meet just the feeding expenses of the animals.

Officials of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry and people’s committees at all levels should establish ox-and-horse hire stations well and, particularly, strive to operate them correctly thereafter.

Farm-machine hire stations should also be organized to educate the peasants about mechanization. It is advisable to set up model hire stations in a few places and plough the peasants’ fields with tractors.

I hope you officials of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry and state crop and stock farms will fulfil your tasks, so that the farms will play a vanguard role in the advancement of agriculture.
Comrades,

You have returned from the war of liberation of the Chinese people in which you participated as Korean nationals to help them.

I am very glad to see you again today.

The men and officers of Army Unit No. 655 have served proletarian internationalism in really good faith, and are back home after contributing greatly to strengthening the militant solidarity between the peoples of Korea and China. Your noble spirit of proletarian internationalism and your valuable achievements will be eternally recorded in the revolutionary histories of the Korean and Chinese peoples.

I would like to take this opportunity to speak to you on a few matters.

Since you have been at war, away from the homeland for a long time, you must acquaint yourselves fully with the developments that have taken place at home in the meantime, and the revolutionary situation of our country.

Since liberation epochal changes have taken place in the northern half of Korea. We founded the Party, the General Staff of the revolution, and under its leadership set up a genuine people’s
government, and carried out the agrarian and other democratic reforms successfully. Our people have established the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, which is their genuine motherland, and have become masters of the country.

At present our workers and peasants are launching a magnificent struggle to build up a new state and are leading happy new lives. They say they are all invigorated to engage in building a new and prosperous country. Their morale is very high. United closely around our Party and the Government of the Republic, the people in the northern half are now developing the national economy and culture rapidly by launching a dynamic patriotic movement to increase production for the fulfilment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan, the first of its kind in our country.

But the actual situation in the southern half is in striking contrast to that of the northern half. The south, under US imperialist occupation, is deteriorating day by day.

The US imperialists, the aggressors, lord it over south Korea and are the actual ruler. They have established a fascist colonial rule all over south Korea and are intent on aggression and preparation for war.

The traitor Syngman Rhee and his band have become stooges of the US imperialists, selling out the country and the people. They are doggedly opposing the reunification and independence of the country. Syngman Rhee himself claims he has been engaged in an “independence movement” of some sort, but in fact he has done nothing. He is an archtraitor who, in the past, wasted the money raised for the independence movement, on drinks or used it to make more money through trading as he moved from town to town in the United States. Now he has sneaked into south Korea and, with US imperialist backing, is selling out the country, betraying our fellow countrymen.

Due to the brutal US imperialist policy of colonial enslavement and the treachery of the Syngman Rhee puppet clique to the country and the people, the national economy of south Korea has deteriorated in the extreme, and the people are suffering from poverty and total absence of political rights. The fertile Honam Plain which was a famous granary
from old days is now no longer cultivated, trampled upon as it is by the US imperialist aggressors.

Worse still, south Korea has been reduced to a slaughterhouse. The US imperialists and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique are so atrocious as to arrest, jail and murder people indiscriminately at the slightest hint of opposition. Last year when we held the joint conference of political parties and social organizations in north and south Korea, I talked with eminent persons from the southern half. Many of them admired government in the northern half of Korea. Even Kim Ku, who had been notorious for his anti-communist stand, admitted the superiority of government in the north. Before his return to the south he said that in the future, Korea must, by all means, be governed just as the northern half of Korea is. So the US imperialists and their minions kicked up a racket by imprisoning or killing all those who had been to the conference. Kim Ku was also killed at that time. This is the savage way in which the enemy arrests and kills people at random simply because they admire government in the north or speak of the reunification of the country.

In the past, we suffered 36 years of maltreatment and wrongs under the Japanese imperialists. This was a bitter experience, and now the US imperialists have occupied half of our land, ruling over it and keeping the one and the same country and people divided. It is really heartrending!

The US imperialists are not satisfied with their occupation of south Korea; they are scheming to turn the whole of Korea into their colony, and even to invade the Soviet Union and China. While plotting a permanent stationing of their armed forces of aggression, the US imperialists, along with their stooges, are building up the puppet army in a big way, clamouring for the so-called “northern expedition”. The armed gangs sent by them infiltrate into the northern half of Korea more frequently, in order to kill people and loot their property and provoke armed clashes with our Security Forces almost every day.

It is entirely because of the US imperialists and their lackeys that our country has not yet been reunified and our territory and people
remain divided for over four years since liberation. So, if the corrupt
government in south Korea is to be overthrown and the people
delivered from oppression and destitution and the country reunified,
the US imperialists must be driven out of south Korea and the
traitorous Syngman Rhee clique knocked down.

Reunifying the country is the earnest desire and unanimous
aspiration of all the people in north and south Korea. Those who are
truly patriotic and concerned about the plight of the south Korean
people and the future of the nation, must resolutely come out on the
road of national reunification.

What are your immediate tasks under the situation prevailing in our
country?

The first and foremost task is to fully prepare yourselves politically
and ideologically. Unless you are soundly equipped politically and
ideologically, you will be unable to do any work well.

Men and officers of the People’s Army must acquaint themselves
with our Party’s lines and policies thoroughly, and understand their
correctness clearly. Only then will the People’s Army be able to defend
and carry them out and discharge its mission in a satisfactory manner.

Ever since liberation our Party has put forward correct lines and
policies and worked a lot for the revolution and construction. Probably
you are not well acquainted with the policy our Party has followed and
the successes we have scored in these years. From now on you must
seriously study them and grasp them well. In particular, you should
study in detail the successes achieved in the agrarian reform, the
nationalization of industries and other democratic reforms carried out
under the leadership of our Party and the founding of the Democratic
People’s Republic of Korea.

Soldiers should also be well acquainted with the situation in south
Korea. If they are ignorant of the situation in the country, they will be
unable to take correct military steps or discharge their combat missions
satisfactorily. The situation in the southern half was briefly mentioned
above, so you should study it more intensively in the future.

At the same time, all of you should step up the study of the
principles of Marxism-Leninism and solidly equip yourselves with the Marxist-Leninist outlook on the world and our Party’s revolutionary ideology.

Class education should be properly conducted among the servicemen, so that each of them can clearly understand why he is assigned the work of national defence, and the purpose of his military service, and that he can acquire noble military and moral qualities. In addition, soldiers should be taught to enhance their class consciousness, by comparing details which illustrate the difference between our People’s Army and capitalist armies, the reason why landlords and capitalists are our enemies, and the difference between the Government of our Republic and the puppet regime in south Korea.

The education of the soldiers in patriotism should be intensified, so as to inspire all of them with an ardent love of their country—the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea.

From ancient times our people have loved the homeland and nation ardently and bravely fought against foreign invaders. Their achievements in heroic struggles against foreign invasion and the records of the struggle of the anti-Japanese revolutionary forerunners should be used by the army in educating the soldiers well.

Education in the brilliant revolutionary traditions created during the anti-Japanese armed struggle in particular is of utmost importance.

In the dark years when Japanese imperialist exploitation and repression reached its peak and when the country was overcast with clouds of misfortune, the genuine Korean communists took up arms and heroically fought against the Japanese for fifteen long years, in order to save their country and people. With the sole desire of liberating the country, the anti-Japanese guerrillas fought the Japanese imperialist marauders indomitably, braving all difficulties and obstacles even facing jails and the gallows. They upheld the national honour to the end and brought glory to the country. Today, they are still devoting all their energies to the struggle for the people’s freedom and the reunification and independence of the country.

Let me take an example.
At the time of the battle on Mt. Jiansanfeng in the summer of 1937, the Japanese imperialists brought even Kim Sok Won’s regiment from Hamhung, the notorious unit of the 19th Division in Ranam called a “crack division”. This was because they knew from their defeat in the Pochonbo battle that their troops in northeast China would, on their own, be unable to cope with the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army. In that battle we, who were only several hundreds in number, won a great victory by wiping out thousands of enemy soldiers, who fell upon us in a “massive punitive attack”. Kim Sok Won attacked us, boasting that he would achieve “military exploits”. But he was seriously wounded and narrowly escaped with his life. Now, he has become a stooge of the Americans, and is playing with fire on the southern side of the 38th parallel, in an attempt to strike against the northern half of Korea. Our comrades who fought against him in the forests of the Paektu in the past are still engaged in fighting him along the 38th parallel.

The traitors now in south Korea are national betrayers who, as stooges of Japanese imperialism, have long since betrayed the country and suppressed the people, whereas we, communists, are true patriots and ardent revolutionaries who have struggled heroically for the country and people, even eating and sleeping under the open sky during the years of Japanese imperialism.

The People’s Army must carry on the glorious revolutionary traditions of the anti-Japanese guerrillas, and the soldiers must acquire the ardent patriotism and indomitable revolutionary spirit of the guerrillas. Education of the soldiers in the revolutionary traditions should be strengthened so that all of them will love their country and people fervently and devote their lives to struggling in their behalf, just as the anti-Japanese guerrillas did earlier.

Next, the soldiers should be inspired with the firm belief that the revolution will inevitably emerge victorious.

Our revolutionary cause of reunifying the country and building an independent, sovereign and democratic state is a righteous one, and we are sure that we shall attain ultimate victory. Our democratic forces are
growing stronger every day; our People’s Army is incomparably stronger than the south Korean puppet army or the US imperialist armed forces of aggression. The People’s Army is composed of the anti-Japanese veterans, the backbone of the army, who fought Japanese imperialism for a long time in the past in their efforts to liberate the country, and of the fine sons and daughters of the liberated workers, peasants and other working people. It has inherited the brilliant revolutionary traditions of the anti-Japanese armed struggle. There is no force which can possibly defeat such a revolutionary army.

Needless to say, many difficulties will crop up in the making of the revolution, and especially when you are at war, you are bound to face bitter trials. Only when you overcome such difficulties and trials bravely, will you attain victory. We faced tremendous difficulties in the past, when we were fighting in the mountains. The anti-Japanese guerrillas had to obtain on their own provisions, clothes, weapons, ammunition and all other things they required. On top of it, the enemy was far greater in number. But we won by fighting courageously, overcoming all difficulties and obstacles, because of a fervent revolutionary determination to win back the lost country and the firm conviction of attaining victory in the war against the enemy. As experience shows, having firm faith can override any difficulties and defeat any enemy. An unswerving confidence is an important requisite for the victory of the revolution.

The move of the US imperialists and their stooges to unleash an aggressive war, which is becoming more and more undisguised, makes it imperative to imbue the People’s Army soldiers with a firm confidence in the victory of the revolution. We must step up the ideological education of the soldiers so that all of them carry out their revolutionary duties creditably with strong faith in the victory of our righteous revolutionary cause, with an unbreakable revolutionary spirit, just as the anti-Japanese guerrillas did earlier.

The ideological education of the soldiers should be conducted by the method of patient explanation, not limiting the lessons to classroom lectures, but talking with them whenever and wherever
possible—during breaks in the training, on the march, and so on. Then it will be more interesting and easier for the men to understand what they are being taught. Furthermore, officers should know the men’s way of thinking and their political and ideological levels in definite terms, so as to impart ideological education according to their preparedness and feelings.

If the men are to be educated properly, the officers themselves should first be well prepared. Officers should not only have a higher political awareness than that of their men, but also must know how to sing and dance and be widely read.

Officers must, therefore, study in earnest at all times, striving constantly to increase their knowledge. You must clearly learn at least one new thing a day and put it into practice, instead of just sitting and worrying that you have so much work to do and so many things to learn. This is vital. If you learn one new thing a day, it will mean 365 things a year. This is a great knowledge. Every officer should not only study, but study aggressively and diligently.

In view of the prevailing situation, the People’s Army should fully prepare both militarily and technically as well as politically and ideologically.

It is true, a good political and ideological preparation is basic for strengthening a revolutionary army. But this is not enough. It must also be combined with military and technical preparations. This will enable you to crush with one stroke the enemy rushing in to attack, and also give you a firmer conviction of attaining victory.

If you are to be militarily and technically well prepared, you must have modern weapons and apply yourselves to combat training.

In future, modern warfare will be used. A modern war will be different from that of bygone days. Let me take the example of weapons. In a modern war, the latest weapons and other technical equipment will be used in larger numbers. Those which you used in battles in the past were obsolete weapons such as the Model 38 or Model 99 rifles of the Japanese. Artillery pieces, too, were very obsolete ones without sights, and were fired with the help of plumbs.
For that matter, they were drawn by horses. The People’s Army, however, is now equipped with modern weapons. Rifles are extremely effective and guns, too, have tremendous potential as they are provided with sights and drawn by trucks, not by horses. In future you will fight with such modern weapons.

Modern warfare is different not only in weapons employed but also in strategies used. The achievements of advanced military science and technology are widely applied. The army, navy and air force participate, and close coordination is necessary between arms and services in such warfare. With social development and scientific and technological progress, sophisticated weapons and other technical equipment have been invented, which entails changes in the methods of war. So the tactics and methods employed in the previous war in which guerrilla fighting was predominant will not be enough to defeat an enemy.

That is why all the men, not to speak of commanding officers, should participate in combat training zealously to master new weapons and technical equipment and become skilful in the methods of modern warfare as soon as possible. This is a very urgent revolutionary task for you under the present situation.

You must never treat combat training as unimportant or do it perfunctorily because you have a little combat experience. You have experienced direct engagements with the enemy but not the war of regular armies equipped with up-to-date weapons; nor have you experience in the organization and command of a regular army battle. From now on you must have a systematic training according to the training programme for modern warfare.

You must first have a good marksmanship training so that each of you can be a crack shot able to kill an enemy soldier with every shot. In the past we anti-Japanese guerrillas never failed to kill an enemy soldier with each shot fired, even though our weapons were not good. If you are to be excellent marksmen, you must have a good command over your weapons and a bitter hatred for the enemy. Only when you have a bitter hatred for the enemy can you hit him without a single
miss. Even in peacetime training a soldier must regard his target as a real enemy and shoot it by aiming at it as if he were aiming at the heart of his enemy.

You must not only gain the mastery of your weapons, but also take good care of them. A soldier who does not know how to look after his weapon can never be a good marksman. Servicemen should cherish their weapons like the apple of their eye and take good care of them.

Next, you must step up the command and staff exercises so as to improve the calibre of officers to command battles and the role of the staff as required by modern warfare. Thus commanding officers and their staff will be trained to organize and command battles efficiently under whatever adverse conditions. Officers must know various combat regulations well and acquire adequate knowledge of coordination between arms and services along with other aspects of modern military science and technology. They should make intensive studies of the valuable combat experience acquired from the anti-Japanese armed struggle in particular. At the same time, they should study combat experience of the armies of advanced countries so as to add to their own valuable battle experience. If they properly combine the study of the military art of the anti-Japanese armed struggle and the regular army military theories and methods of war and familiarize themselves with them through training, all of them will become excellent commanding officers.

Combat training should be conducted like a real battle. Emplacements of guns in different units should be just the same as in a real battle, and all military actions and movements should be conducted in a similar atmosphere.

Further, combat training should be in accordance with the terrain features of our country and the organization and equipment of our army so that effective forms and methods of eliminating the enemy can be acquired.

Drill should be conducted properly. Perfunctoriness in drill should be eradicated, and model and demonstration lessons be organized frequently so that every soldier can learn accurate movements and
quickly acquire military behaviour.

If you are to excel at military training and perform your duties of national defence creditably, you must be physically fit. Various sports events should be frequently organized at units of different echelons. Also exercises on horizontal and parallel bars and other apparatuses should be widely encouraged so that every soldier can receive thorough physical training.

You must not feel complacent just because you have a little combat experience nor should you relax in a peaceful mood, as you are back home. If the soldiers are slack in their work, their unit will not be able to avoid defeat, no matter how brilliant its battle records are.

Although the enemy has not declared war openly, not a day passes without their firing at us. The US imperialists and their stooges, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique, are running amuck to unleash an aggressive war. You cannot predict anything about their actions. We cannot allow ourselves to sit back and sing a “song of peace” even for a moment. All the soldiers of the unit should participate in combat training more zealously and strive to improve the combat power and readiness of the unit in every way.

To proceed. You should tighten military discipline.

An undisciplined army cannot preserve unity and solidarity among its ranks nor can it overcome the harsh trials on battlefields; it will never be able to defeat the enemy. Only a highly disciplined army can ensure total unity of ideology, will and action and solidarity among its ranks and win a battle however difficult it might be. The anti-Japanese guerrillas were able to fight the Japanese imperialist marauders for 15 long years and defeat them even in adverse conditions precisely because they maintained their code of revolutionary discipline strictly.

Our People’s Army is a regular army. In a regular army daily routine and actions are supposed to continue all the time in accordance with prescribed rules and order. You must get accustomed to the daily routine of the People’s Army as soon as possible and perform the regular army service according to the established code.
A regular army service is nothing special. All that is required is to act in accordance with the regulations. That is the precise meaning of a regular army life. Soldiers are to keep to the schedule of the day from morning when they rise to the evening when they go to bed, and all activities must conform strictly with the regulations and manuals. Men’s quarters should be fitted out and maintained at the temperature, as per the regulations. Washing, haircut and even sleeping should be governed by the regulations. A regular army carries on its daily routine according to the regulations. Training and battles are also conducted according to the regulations.

Living and acting by the standards of regulations is by no means dogmatism. Regulations are the crystallization of practical experience and as such include all the principles of action of the soldiers and the concrete methods of their activities in clear-cut terms. Military regulations comprise of the codes of conduct governing all aspects of activities of the unit and life of the soldiers. They serve as basic textbooks of a regular army. Not accustomed to regular army service, you probably think that the service in the People’s Army is rigorous. But that is not really the case. By adhering to the regulations in your life and activities, you will be able to prevent mistakes and accidents, carrying out all your military tasks satisfactorily. You will win a battle by fighting according to the regulations. A regular army will not be successful in its performance if it fails to observe the regulations in its daily routine and actions, nor can such an army be called regular.

Men and officers of Army Unit No. 655 must qualify as a regular army as soon as possible by living up to the regulations in all aspects of military activities.

Of course, you will find it difficult at first to abide by the regulations all the time. But if you try in real earnest, you will not find it impossible.

You are hardened and experienced through battles. But you have no experience of regular army life. This you must learn from those comrades who have longer service records in the regular People’s Army. The soldiers who have served in the People’s Army since its
founding can be regarded as worthy of the name of a regular army in
the main. So you had better learn humbly from them what you do not
know. Your combat experience, if buttressed with the qualities of a
regular army and modern military science and technology, will make
you an invincible combat force.

The discipline of the People’s Army is voluntary. It is based on the
high degree of consciousness of the soldiers who are totally devoted to
the cause of the Party, the revolution and national defence. So, if
military discipline is to be strengthened in the People’s Army, the
political consciousness of the soldiers should be roused before all else.
No coercive methods will ever be able to establish discipline in the true
sense of the word. Even if discipline is preserved by coercive methods,
it will not last long nor will it be genuine.

Every soldier should be provided with a clear-cut idea of a regular
army and a correct understanding of the essence of the People’s Army
discipline so that he can observe the regulations voluntarily. Military
discipline should not be enforced as if you were breaking a live tree.
You cannot correct all the deeply ingrained habits in a day or two.
When a bow is made, the wooden piece is heated and bent slowly so
that it bends well without breaking. Similarly, military discipline
should be established step by step through gradual education in the
course of work and daily routine.

This, however, does not mean that you should refrain from asking
the men to observe strict discipline until every soldier is fully
accustomed to a disciplined life. From the outset commanders should,
in principle, make demands strictly according to regulations. Their
demand for the implementation of orders and instructions in particular
should be rigid so that these can be carried out to the letter. Military
orders and instructions are given in order to implement the Party’s
lines and policies. This is why soldiers should never try to make even
the smallest compromise about orders, but implement them accurately
on time. Disobeying orders and instructions is tantamount to sabotage
against the revolution. Commanders should never compromise with
such disobedience even slightly; they should establish in their units the
revolutionary habit of executing orders and instructions precisely and punctually.

It is very important that commanders should set their own examples in observing discipline. They should maintain discipline voluntarily anywhere anytime and set personal examples for their men to follow.

At present, the enemy is making every frantic effort to snatch our military secrets. We have liquidated the landlords, comprador capitalists, pro-Japanese collaborators, national betrayers and all other reactionaries by carrying out the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution. But the class composition of the society in the northern half is still complex. Still, wicked elements lurking here and there are working against our system. Moreover, the US imperialists occupying south Korea and their stooges, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique, are continually sending out spies, subversive elements and saboteurs into the northern half.

In view of the enemy’s ceaseless vicious movements, we must heighten our revolutionary vigilance still further and keep military affairs strictly confidential. Secrecy is vital to an army. If an army fails to guard its secrets, it will be unable to strengthen its combat power and fight the enemy effectively. Guarding military secrets is the sacred duty of soldiers defending the country.

The direction of a unit’s action, its dispositions, strength, weapons and equipment, mission, the combat experience of the soldiers and the like are important confidential military information. Nothing is unclassified in the army; even the name and character of a commander, the daily schedule of the unit and everything else which takes place in it are confidential. Every soldier should heighten revolutionary vigilance and guard military secrets strictly and deny the enemy even the smallest bit of information.

In order to guard military secrets closely the soldiers should be cautious in their relations with the civilians. Bad elements might still be hiding among them. So, if you approach the civilians carelessly, you can be lured by the enemy. That is why individual soldiers should not contact civilians without the permission of the organization. They had
better refrain from going out of the unit singly.

Soldiers should take care not to let out secrets through their letters and interviews with visitors. They should not write about confidential military matters in their letters and never talk with visitors about the happenings in the unit. But there should be no deviations. The need for secrecy should not compel them to avoid writing letters home or pretend not to see their parents or relatives when they happen to meet them on the road. They should write letters home frequently and meet their parents or relatives cordially when they come to visit their unit.

In any case, military secrets should be kept through the voluntary efforts of everyone by raising the revolutionary vigilance of the officers and men and their sense of responsibility for national defence rather than by coercive methods. Ideological education for soldiers should be given priority for the sake of maintaining strict secrecy in military matters.

Next, the fine trait of solidarity between superiors and subordinates should be developed further.

Officers and men of the People’s Army are all comrades who are on revolutionary posts with one single purpose and common ideology. So officers and men must share joy and sorrow, life and death, with each other and always be united on principle, in order to perform their revolutionary tasks.

For the cause of solidarity between the superiors and subordinates in principle, officers should first and foremost take responsible care of men in daily lives and all other activities. Officers are bound in duty to pay close attention to everything that has to do with food, clothing and shelter of the men, and they are entrusted with the heavy responsibility of educating them. If officers do not take loving care of men and educate them properly, the latter will not respect them, and a chasm between the two would get wider.

Regimental commanders, battalion commanders, company commanders and all other officers must always get to know how the men are fed, if they have regular baths and haircuts and whether they
face any problems in their everyday lives. If they have any problems, the officers should work out prompt solutions. When going out for training, they should take close care of their men by minutely examining if they are well prepared for the occasion, if their shoes are proper and also their feet wrapped well.

The need for commanding officers to educate and take care of men should be reciprocated by the urge in the men to learn zealously from their commanders and execute their orders to the letter. If the men respect their commanders from the bottom of their hearts and carry out the orders creditably, the latter will be encouraged to treat them with greater affection. Strict obedience and thorough implementation of commanders’ orders is an important duty of soldiers.

If commanding officers are to be respected and their orders implemented in good faith, their men should be provided with good ideological education, and their will strengthened through rigorous training. Commanders and other officers should instruct their men properly so that all of them truly respect their superiors whenever and wherever they are and acquire the revolutionary trait of carrying out their orders bravely.

A commanding officer of the People’s Army is responsible for all activities of his unit ranging from the education and training of his men, organization and commanding of battles, to unit administration. In the People’s Army, therefore, it is essential to raise the standard of his performance.

If they are to play their role satisfactorily, the commanding officers should study hard and be better informed than the rest. If ignorant, they will not be able to teach their men properly nor will they be able to lead their units well.

Officers in command should ask their subordinates for suggestions frequently. Their authority to deal with all their unit affairs does not preclude the need to discuss matters with their subordinates. There is a saying, “Putting their heads together, three shoemakers are wiser than Zhuge Liang.” If many people get together and consult each other, they will be able to get a better idea of all problems and display collective
wisdom, so as to attain a greater success in their work.

Loving and respecting the people and serving their interests faithfully is noble traits of soldiers of the People’s Army.

In bygone days the anti-Japanese guerrillas always loved and respected the people everywhere. When they were billeted on villagers, they used to draw water, sweep the yards, gather firewood for them and explain cordially to them which road they should take. Our People’s Army is the army of the people just as its name indicates. It must carry forward the glorious revolutionary traditions set by the anti-Japanese guerrillas and fully develop the noble quality of cherishing and loving the people wholeheartedly and helping them actively, just as the anti-Japanese guerrillas did.

Of course, now that unlike in the past they sleep in their own quarters and eat in their own mess halls, soldiers need not take the trouble of visiting the people to carry water for them and sweep their yards. Loving people does not only mean that you should help them in their daily lives. More important, you should solidly defend the people’s freedom and happiness preventing the enemy from trampling upon them.

Love for the people on the part of the soldiers of the People’s Army must find expression in struggles to deter the US imperialists and their stooges from acting rashly, to defend the revolutionary gains and the people’s security dependably and to reunify the country by crushing the enemy at a stroke if he attacks us recklessly. Their love of the people must also be expressed in their economic use and loving care of the weapons, other technical equipment and various logistical supplies. The Party and the state provide the People’s Army with highly effective weapons and equipment along with other things needed for their daily life. The soldiers should take good care of the valuable materials obtained at the cost of the sweat and blood of the people and use it economically.

In conclusion, I would like to refer to the strengthening of the Party life of its members.

The cultural department of the unit should see to it that all Party
organizations are actively on the move and that the Party life of its members is strengthened.

Every member of the Party must constantly reinforce his Party spirit through an active Party life, study the Party’s Programme and Rules diligently and implement them thoroughly. Officers in particular should lead their Party life better. They should always serve as models for the men not only in military actions but also in Party life.

All the officers and men of Army Unit No.655 must play an important role in defending the country and people firmly and in improving the combat readiness and fighting power of the People’s Army.

I firmly believe that you will live up to the Party’s expectations by carrying out the tasks set for the unit in the best possible manner.
ON THE MANIFESTO REGARDING THE MEASURES FOR THE PEACEFUL REUNIFICATION OF THE COUNTRY

Talk with the Press Corps from Central Newspapers
August 2, 1949

**Question:** What is the attitude of the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea towards the Manifesto Regarding the Measures for the Peaceful Reunification of the Country, which was made public at the Inaugural Conference of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea?

**Answer:** The Manifesto of the Inaugural Conference of the DFRK expresses the will and aspiration of all the Korean people to reunify their country as soon as possible. The division of the country into the north and the south has created enormous difficulties in all aspects of the people’s lives. The Korean people are well aware that reunifying the country is a prerequisite to building a prosperous, independent and sovereign state. Only when the country is reunified can the south Korean people be delivered from the bankruptcy and starvation inflicted upon them under the rule of the US imperialists and their stooges.

The DFRK Manifesto puts forward the measures for reunifying our country peacefully on a democratic basis, free from fratricide and foreign intervention. Everyone who cherishes the interests of the Korean people and our national independence will certainly support the Manifesto.
The DPRK Government, which represents the interests of all the Korean people, fully supports and approves the Manifesto and will sincerely cooperate with various political parties and social organizations to put into effect the measures for peaceful reunification.

**Question:** Comrade Premier, how do you appraise Syngman Rhee’s statement on the proposal of the DFRK manifesting the measures for the peaceful reunification of our country?

**Answer:** Syngman Rhee is afraid of our country being reunified peacefully on a democratic basis. The Syngman Rhee clique can only maintain their rule with the help of the army of the US imperialist aggressors.

The south Korean puppet government was set up by using repressive means against the people and is now maintained exclusively by such methods. However, they will not be able to build a solid government by suppressing the people. With the help of the Americans and by mobilizing the so-called National Defence Army and police forces, Syngman Rhee has been fighting against the people for three years now, but security and order have still not been established in south Korea.

All the Korean people feel the bitterest hatred and enmity for the Syngman Rhee clique which is betraying the cause of national independence. Syngman Rhee and his band know that their “government” is insecure and, accordingly, if a general election is held on democratic lines, they will forfeit their “government”. So Syngman Rhee does not like the proposal for reunifying the country peacefully on a democratic basis. He has the evil intention of establishing his reactionary government through all of Korea, by starting a war with the support of the US imperialists. But this ambition will never be realized. This is because our People’s Army is firmly defending the country and the people and because the south Korean people are stepping up their struggle against Syngman Rhee and his ilk.

Although the National Defence Army and police forces of
Syngman Rhee’s puppet government are almost every day trying to trigger off a war along the 38th parallel, we are smashing their attempts just on the strength of the Republic’s Security Forces, without even having to mobilize the People’s Army.

The moves of the Syngman Rhee clique to unleash a fratricidal war and the US imperialists’ undisguised acts of interference in the internal affairs of our country such as sending a military mission to south Korea and giving loans to the puppet government for reinforcing the south Korean puppet army, are augmenting fuel to the hatred our people feel for the imperialists and their lackeys. It is stimulating all the Korean people to unite closer together in their struggle for the reunification and independence of their country.

**Question:** Comrade Premier, what is your opinion of the political parties and social organizations in south Korea, which are not affiliated to the DFRK, with respect to their attitude to the Manifesto Regarding the Measures for the Peaceful Reunification of the Country?

**Answer:** There are many political parties and social organizations in our country. Some are patriotic and democratic, serving the country and the people. Others are reactionary and betray the country and the people.

From the outset, the DFRK has expected nothing from reactionary political parties, such as the pro-Japanese collaborator Kim Song Su’s Democratic Nationalist Party, the group of Ri Chong Chon and his ilk from Jiang Jieshi’s Guomindang, or Syngman Rhee’s National Association. In my opinion, the DFRK seems to be awaiting replies not from these reactionary organizations but from the patriotic political parties and social organizations in south Korea, which are not as yet affiliated to the DFRK.

We are well aware today that in south Korea progressive political parties and their workers have no freedom to publicize their views on the peaceful proposal of the DFRK. Some of these public figures are hesitant, because they fear they might suffer the same fate as that of
Mr. Ryo Un Hyong or Mr. Kim Ku, who were both murdered by the Syngman Rhee clique. But those who fight truly for the freedom and independence of the country will eventually prevail over any threat or blackmail, and their struggle will win strong support from all the people.

The patriotic, democratic forces in our country are incomparably stronger than the reactionary forces. The reactionaries are doomed to defeat. We firmly believe that the proposal on the measures for peaceful national reunification against the warmongers will win powerful support from the broad social strata, both in the north and south of Korea.
Today our country is in a very complex and tense situation. The US imperialists occupying south Korea and their stooges, the Syngman Rhee puppet clique, are preparing in earnest for an aggressive war against the northern half of Korea and stepping up provocations every day. While building up Syngman Rhee’s puppet army in a big way, the US imperialists are continuously playing with fire in the vicinity of the demarcation line along the 38th parallel. They are even perpetrating brigandish acts without hesitation by crossing the demarcation line in the sector of Mt. Kkachi in Hwanghae Province and along the edge of Kangwon Province, setting fire to people’s houses and plundering their property. Battles are occurring almost every day on Kuksa Peak and Mt. Kkachi in the Ongjin Peninsula, on Mt. Songak south of Kumchon in Hwanghae Province, and in Yangyang and its vicinity in Kangwon Province. The US imperialists and their stooges are making frantic efforts to destroy our revolutionary achievements and to conquer the northern half of Korea.

Under the present situation every soldier must always maintain a high degree of revolutionary vigilance and military alertness and must make every effort to improve the combat readiness and fighting power
of the unit in order to creditably defend the revolutionary democratic base in the northern half of Korea from any encroachment by the enemy, and frustrate his provocative actions at every stage.

Soldiers must not be slack and easygoing even for a moment. All soldiers, ranging from an officer to a private, should heighten revolutionary vigilance at all times and closely watch the enemy’s attempts to unleash war. Commanding officers, in particular, should manage their units without the slightest indolence and relaxation and strive in a responsible manner to perfect their combat readiness. Mobile equipment should be well maintained and horses well taken care of, so that they are fully ready to be moved at a moment’s notice.

In order to improve the combat readiness of the unit and increase its combat power, you must conduct intensive politico-military training. Only when every soldier is firmly equipped politically and ideologically and is well prepared in military technique through such politico-military training, can the People’s Army become an invincible army of the Party, a revolutionary army.

Our People’s Army is bound to the immense task of safeguarding the Party, the country and the people. We must strengthen ideological education for the servicemen so that they all bear in mind at all times their revolutionary mission and devotedly struggle to carry it out.

The history of Korea should also be taught to the soldiers to let them know how bravely our people have fought since ancient times in defence of their country and homes. The servicemen should be especially made aware of how heroically the anti-Japanese guerrillas fought to liberate the country. Every one of them should be taught to follow the example set by the indomitable revolutionary spirit of their anti-Japanese revolutionary forerunners.

The education of soldiers should be given in accordance with specific character of each soldier, by getting to know his personal traits beforehand just in the way a mother teaches her children. Some of the recruits may be homesick, thinking of their homes and parents. Commanding officers must correctly recognize such feelings of their men, and should educate them accordingly.
The longing of the men for their homes, parents, home towns and villages is not a bad thing in itself. Only when they love their homes, parents, wives and children can they love their country. A man who does not love his home, parents, wife and children cannot love his country and people. Love of his own home, parents, wife and children grows into the love of his Party, country and people and develops in him the revolutionary spirit of dedicating his life to the cause of defending the new, democratic Korea from enemy encroachment, won at the cost of the blood of his revolutionary forerunners. So, commanding officers should not rebuke the men who are homesick, but cultivate such feelings into the spirit of loving their country and people, and educate them to be more faithful to military service for the reunification of the country and for the victory of the revolution.

Good military training is an important guarantee for increasing unit combat power. You must apply yourselves to your combat training and improve its quality, so that you can counter the enemy even if he comes to attack right now.

Combat training must be geared to teach the men as much as possible of what is applicable to real battles. In particular, tactical and marksmanship training should be strengthened, and the training of coordination between infantry and artillery be improved. In addition, recruit training should be intensified so that they can attain the level of veterans as soon as possible.

The quality of combat training and a unit’s combat efficiency depend largely on how its commander is politically and militarily prepared. Only when the commander is highly competent, can the quality of training be improved and the unit’s combat efficiency increased. So commanding officers should themselves constantly raise their military and technical standards and improve their leadership. If they are to improve the quality of training and the fighting efficiency of the units, commanding officers must also guide the training on the spot at all times, directly conducting training programmes every now and then.

Next you must tighten military discipline. The Korean people have got a genuine regular army of their own, the first of its kind in their
history. By improving its military discipline, we will develop the People’s Army into an invincible revolutionary armed force with strong combat power and the better qualities of a modern regular army.

The unit must maintain strict discipline and order so that everyone will lead an orderly life in accordance with military regulations anywhere and at any time. Everything in the quarters should be kept in good order, and soldiers’ uniforms should always be neat and clean. In view of the unit’s location within the town, soldiers must all the more observe discipline as well as strictly retain military secrets.

If military discipline is to be tightened, the role of the sergeant-majors should be enhanced. Sergeant-majors are assistants to company commanders and the eldest brothers to the men of the companies. The sergeant-major in the life of a company must be what a mother, who manages a home, is to her family. Just as a mother takes meticulous care of her children’s food, clothing, sleeping, haircut and all other aspects of their lives, a sergeant-major should organize his company’s daily routine in accordance with the regulations and manuals. He should lay down the conditions for the men to follow in their daily routine as required by the regulations and look after them in all aspects of their lives with the heart of a real mother. If a man, for instance, lost a button during training, the sergeant-major must give him needle and thread and a button when he is back, so that he can mend it promptly; and if the yard is not properly swept because of the lack of brooms, the sergeant-major must ask the company commander for men, who can go to a mountain to make brooms and then do the sweeping. The sergeant-major must always pay close attention to the men’s health in particular. This is the way to ensure that the men live in accordance with the regulations and that the company is united in its efforts.

Furthermore, commanding officers must look after the lives of their men properly. The Party and the people have entrusted them with the precious sons and daughters and large amounts of property of the country. The commanders should manage their units carefully and look after their men’s lives responsibly, so that even a single accident is prevented and all their men become true revolutionaries.
There are many young recruits in this unit and they need special care. It is laudable indeed that they have taken up arms to defend the country at such a tender age. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle, too, we had many young guerrillas. Young though they were, they fought the Japanese bravely and were also good at marching which was difficult for them. Commanding officers must educate the young soldiers and take good care of them, so as to train them to be staunch revolutionaries and excellent soldiers, just as the anti-Japanese guerrillas used to be.

Commanding officers should carefully organize the men’s daily routine in such a way as to allow them to hold meetings, review their lessons, write letters and conduct group cultural activities. If the life of the soldiers is imbued with optimism, it will help to promote their politico-military training, improve military discipline and also prevent accidents.

The quality of meals should be improved in order to feed the soldiers better. The sea is near from here. So you can supply them with fresh-fish soup often. It would also be a good idea to serve the men with rice hashes once or twice a week. The menu should include special dishes every now and then, so that the men can feel at home. This is the way to stimulate their appetite and keep them from feeling the need of something to eat. The commanding officers, in particular, must always ensure that the men are served with warm rice and warm soup.

Water is essential in a group life. Men may require water even during their sleeping hours. So their quarters must always be provided with drinking water.

Those comrades who toss and turn frequently in bed, may fall out of upper bunks. Since younger men, who are in the prime years of growth, are apt to toss and turn in their sleep, you must take measures to prevent them from falling out of their beds. I think it would be advisable to put wide planks along the sides of beds, and quiet sleepers should be chosen to take their places near the edges. Their mattresses should also be thicker and wider.

In conclusion, I wish you a great success in your politico-military training.
LET US TRAIN COMPETENT AGRONOMISTS
IN GREATER NUMBERS

Talk with the Teaching Staff and Students
of the Wonsan Agricultural College
August 30, 1949

One year has passed since this agricultural college was separated from the University and inaugurated as an independent institution of higher learning. In the meantime the teachers and students of this college have greatly endeavoured to lay its material and technical foundations by themselves. Particularly commendable was your effort to move the college from Sariwon to this place. We can see that this college has basically taken on the appearance of an agro-technological college, in the short period of one year since its establishment, thanks to the devoted efforts and struggle of the teachers and students.

I should like to take this opportunity to speak about a few questions arising in the training of agronomists.

The Wonsan Agricultural College is the first agro-technological college of the people in the history of our country, and as such, it has a very important and honourable mission. Its mission is to produce well-qualified agronomists and fishing technicians who are equipped with a high level of scientific and technical know-how and democratic ideas. The Party and the people expect a great deal from this agricultural college which is the only one of its kind in our country. It is not too much to say that the future development of our agriculture depends on whether the agricultural college performs its noble mission or not.
As you know, agriculture in our country had been backward from ancient times. Worse still, the colonial agrarian policy pursued by the Japanese imperialists for nearly 40 years retarded the advancement of our agriculture and devastated it. During their occupation of our country the Japanese imperialists plundered over 10 million sok of grain and large numbers of domestic animals every year, but did not make any efforts to develop agriculture in our country. They did not even construct any irrigation work properly. No agricultural college but only a few agricultural schools existed in our country during the years of Japanese imperialism. These facts alone are enough to show how the Japanese imperialists hampered the development of our agriculture. Needless to say, it will be neither possible to meet the demands for food grain on our own nor feed industry with the necessary raw materials, if the backward and devastated agriculture inherited from the old society is left as it is.

Since liberation, we have paid primary attention to freeing the peasantry from feudal fetters and exploitation and helping them rapidly develop agriculture. Through agrarian reform we abolished feudal landownership and opened up wide prospects for the development of agriculture. In addition, we expanded the cultivated area and constructed irrigation works on a large scale in the countryside. We rebuilt and expanded the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory in order to increase the use of chemical fertilizers. We also took a series of steps to boost the production of industrial crops and develop fruit growing, silkworm raising and livestock breeding.

Our country, sea-bound on three sides, has a broad outlook for progress in the fishing industry. After liberation we saw to it that state-run fishing enterprises were organized making use of the nationalized fishing facilities and equipment, and at the same time fishing cooperatives consisting of impoverished fishermen were widely formed, so as to develop the fishing industry. As a result, a great many state-run fishing enterprises and fishing cooperatives have been established and are currently functioning.

Although we have taken various measures since liberation for the development of agriculture and the fishing industry, these measures
fail to produce expected results, on account of the lack of technical personnel. If we cannot overcome the shortage of technical personnel, far from developing agriculture and fishing, we shall be unable to properly maintain the success already achieved in them, as in other fields. The training of technical personnel is a very urgent problem which must be solved without any delay. The teaching staff of the agricultural college must bear this in mind and produce a large force of competent technical personnel, by exerting all their efforts and applying all their wisdom to this task.

Of course, it is by no means an easy job to train a large number of competent technicians, under the present circumstances. Many difficulties and obstacles in personnel training may crop up since the agricultural college is still young. But its teachers must overcome them with fortitude and fulfil their tasks before them.

Before all else, they should teach the students a working knowledge of science and technology. Foreign science and technology, even if advanced, should not be taught mechanically. Unlike in European countries, rice is widely cultivated in our country, and our maritime conditions are different from theirs. These characteristics must be considered while teaching science and technology. The agricultural college should give its students that knowledge of science and technology which is required for good farming in Korea and for the development of its fishing industry. In other words, it should teach agronomy, farming methods and fishing techniques and methods, suitable to the specific conditions of our country. And at the same time it should educate about foreign trends of development in agriculture and fisheries.

Education in the agricultural college, if improperly handled, is apt to neglect the politico-ideological inculcation and lay an exclusive emphasis on the technical aspects, because of its technological features. Such a tendency must not appear in the slightest degree. A man, who is lacking in the spirit of faithfully serving the working masses and the cause of building a new, democratic Korea, no matter how excellent his technical skill may be, is not needed. Technicians who only know technology but do not care for their country and nation are useless, no matter how many
of them are produced. We must train every single technician to be a patriot who devotes all his wisdom and talents to the prosperity of the country and the nation. The agricultural college, therefore, must educate the students in democratic ideology in an effective way, while at the same time giving them scientific and technological education. Every student should thus be trained to be a worker who will offer all his talents and energies to the country and the nation.

Intensifying experiments and practical exercises is important in college education. Experiments and practicals are one of the basic methods of training students to be workers equipped with useful working knowledge. Through experiments and exercises, students consolidate their book knowledge and develop their ability to apply it in practice. So, if they are to be trained to become workers having a useful working knowledge, their lectures should be fortified with experiments and practical exercises. The agricultural college should make it a rule that experiments and practical exercises are to be carried out under any circumstances, as outlined in the curriculum.

Experiments and practical exercises should be conducted in various forms and methods. An exercise in aquatic rice growing, for instance, should be conducted by letting the students attempt it both in dry and watered nurseries, and also by means of direct sowing, on their practice plots. It is advisable that exercises in crop raising should be conducted not only in hothouses or on practice plots, but also on the plains and in mountain areas. Only when practical exercises in the methods of growing crops are organized in this way, can the students learn the crop cultivation methods suitable to the geographical, climatic and other natural conditions of our country.

In order to improve experiments and practical exercises, laboratories and practice bases should be properly established.

At present, the agricultural college is not provided with proper conditions for the students to conduct experiments and practical exercises. Its laboratory instruments and equipment are insufficient, and the hothouse, too, is small in size. You say that you have only two hectares of practice plots. That is also too small. The laboratory and the
practice base should be set up quickly, so that the students will not face difficulties in their laboratory work and practical exercises.

The state should provide the agricultural college with adequate equipment, land, materials and funds needed for the laboratory and the practice base. Although our country is not economically affluent, the state should not make small investments in personnel training. Excellent personnel cannot be obtained without investment. It should spare nothing in building the college’s laboratory and the practice base. To begin with, the 100 hectares of paddy and dry fields in Togwon should be turned over to the college for use as practice plots.

The agricultural college should develop a teaching farm on the land, and run it well. Plots should be reshaped into regular forms, farming done with machines, and farming methods constantly improved, and an advanced economic management introduced, so that the students can learn advanced farming methods, and the manner of operating a collective economy. In the future the college’s teaching farm should be expanded to 200 or 300 hectares.

The college’s hothouse should be expanded for the cultivation of different kinds of crops and other useful plants growing in different parts of our country. This will be a great help to the students in their experiments and practical exercises and also to the teachers in their scientific research work.

The students of the agricultural college are the priceless treasures of our country. You shoulder the destinies of our agriculture and fishing industry. This is why our Party and the people’s government expect a great deal from you. You must apply yourselves diligently to the study of advanced science and technology, and constantly temper yourselves ideologically, in order to become excellent scientists and technicians of our country and cadres who serve the masses of the people in good faith.

The college should prepare desks, chairs, blackboards, teachers’ desks and other school furniture in sufficient quantity so as to ensure education without a hitch.

The college’s educational environment should be properly created and its management improved. The educational environment should be
well developed, so as to be helpful to the students in evolving a scientific outlook on the world.

The college should see to it that even the planting of a single tree around the campus is geared to promoting the education of the students. The college campus should be surrounded with groves which have economic value as well as scenic beauty. This can be done by planting walnut trees, peach trees, plane trees and various other trees and tending them well. In the future the college should propagate many walnut trees.

All the college’s facilities and furniture should be kept spick and span and handled carefully since they are the precious property of the country and the people. The college should establish a system of management by the masses and ensure that all the teachers and students take loving and responsible care of the equipment and furniture.

The welfare supply service to the teachers and students should be properly provided. Taking meticulous care of the lives of the teachers and students, supplying them with necessities in time and providing them with every convenience is one of the important duties of the college’s management personnel. The management personnel should strive to furnish the dining room properly and improve the quality of the meals. More hostels should be built, and adequate public service facilities provided. Housing conditions for the teachers are said to be difficult, and so their houses, too, should be built along with the hostels for the students. It would be a good idea to build teachers’ houses in a quiet and beautiful place at the foot of a mountain, so that the teachers can take a walk after their day’s study or scientific research work. The provincial people’s committee should take measures to build the students’ hostels and teachers’ houses quickly.

The college should also pay close attention to the cultural life of the students. It should provide the necessary means for them to see movies and take a bath regularly.

I firmly believe that the teaching staff of the agricultural college will produce many competent technicians and live up to the expectations of the Party and the people.
TO DEFEND THE WATERS OF THE COUNTRY IMPREGNABLY

Talk with the Workers of the Wonsan Shipyard and Naval Servicemen at the Site of Building Patrol Ship No. 41
August 30, 1949

You have built an excellent patrol ship. It is only a few years since the liberation of the country. Nevertheless, our workers have designed and built this magnificent naval vessel with their own efforts, something they could never do in the years of Japanese imperialism. This is a matter of great pride. The Wonsan Shipyard workers are pioneers in having built an iron warship in our country. This patrol ship built by our working class will be the parent ship of the first fleet in the naval history of our People’s Army.

You have worked very hard to build this large ship with facilities which are not yet adequate. I warmly congratulate all the workers of the Wonsan Shipyard on having built this excellent patrol ship by displaying mass heroism, and I thank them deeply.

As you all know, our country is surrounded by seas on three sides. So a powerful coastal defence is very important. We must defend the seas of our homeland all the more solidly especially because the US imperialists are entrenched in south Korea and are bent on war preparations to invade the northern half of Korea by instigating the traitor Syngman Rhee and his band.

Although we do not intend to invade other countries, we must
always be prepared to repel the enemy promptly, if they attack us. If we are to fight back any invasion from across the sea, we must strengthen the navy. Accordingly, we need many highly effective naval vessels.

Ships are also required in large numbers for the exploitation of rich marine resources and development of the fishing industry. Ships are also needed to advance water transport.

The present large demand for ships cannot be met by importing all of them. We must by all means build ships on our own to equip the navy, catch fish and develop water transport.

The shipyard is confronted with the heavy task of building more vessels with great capacities. Since large supplies of iron plates are expected to come from the Hwanghae Iron Works shortly, you must quickly equip the shipyard and improve shipbuilding techniques, so that different types of naval vessels including patrol ships and many other boats are built.

Naval vessels should be hardy enough to withstand rough seas, but not cumbersome. In particular, a ship’s superstructure should be light. This will give the ship higher speed, greater manoeuvrability and a high degree of stability.

In addition, naval vessels should be noiseless and fast. The shipyard should build many such ships by drawing on the experience gained in building Patrol Ship No.41. Ships must have great tonnage. Big ships can be equipped with more weapons.

In future naval vessels should not be furnished with wooden decks, because they can easily catch fire when hit by shells or otherwise.

A warship’s armament must be adapted to its hull. It must overwhelm the enemy armament. Guns should be installed in such a way as to permit massing in firing power. Gun turrets should be big and durable to prevent the hull from being badly affected by the guns’ recoil.

The ships should be built to facilitate naval action and also be modern, attractive and serviceable. To the sailor the ship is a home to live in and fight from. So the ships should be well furnished with
comfortable living conditions. The sailors’ quarters should be warm in winter, well ventilated in summer and properly furnished with beddings. Cotton is scarce in our country, but the sailors must be provided with good cotton mattresses. Their cabins should be furnished with mirrors and a variety of recreation facilities, and convenient kitchen utensils should be provided for ships.

Patrol Ship No. 41 is a gift with the best wishes from the working class of a new Korea. The sailors should render the nation’s naval defence impregnable with a high sense of pride and honour in performing their duty aboard the first warship built by our working class. They should maintain the ship, its weapons and other technical equipment with loving care and handle them properly.

Naval units should improve the technical knowledge of sailors through proper training as soon as possible. Sailors must strive to improve their marksmanship in particular. Unlike on the ground, naval gunfire is delivered from a moving ship. Hence the need to direct more efforts to gunnery. Sailors should also be well trained in swimming. They should thus make our waters impregnable and safeguard the security of the country and people from enemy invasion with credit.

The shipyard must quickly give finishing touches to Patrol Ship No.41 and turn it over to the Navy for patrol duty on the waters in the vicinity of the 38th parallel.
Deputies,

Today is the first anniversary of the founding of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and the enactment of its Constitution.

The Korean people suffered mistreatment under the rule of feudal dynasties for many centuries and underwent harsh exploitation and oppression by the evil Japanese imperialists for nearly half a century.

On September 9 last year, however, our people founded the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, their country, legislated the Constitution which guarantees their rights and interests and embarked firmly on the road of carving out their national destiny for themselves. As a result, our country which remained absent from the world map for a long time has again emerged brilliantly on this map with the new flag of the DPRK. Our people had suffered the sad plight of homeless people as colonial slaves, wronged and abused in every possible way with no one to care for them even when they collapsed. But, on this day a year ago, they joined, on an equal footing, the ranks of the peoples of democratic countries of the world, as a dignified nation with their own homeland, and could have
economic and cultural exchanges with other peoples of the world, taking pride in their time-honoured history.

Deputies,

The DPRK was established at a critical moment when the US imperialists and the traitor Syngman Rhee clique, their stooges, were making frantic efforts to perpetuate the division of the country and the nation and reduce south Korea to a permanent colony of US imperialism.

On the day it was established by the unanimous will of all the Korean people, the Government of our Republic had to assume a high responsibility—to thwart the sinister moves of the US imperialists and the traitor Syngman Rheeites, who are interested in keeping our nation and territory divided for ever. This would include the liberation of the south Korean people from colonial exploitation and oppression and the achievement of national reunification and territorial integrity.

The Government of the Republic and all our people defined as the first and foremost task the struggle to put into effect the proposal of the Soviet Government for a simultaneous withdrawal of Soviet and American troops, the most fundamental prerequisite to the fulfilment of the high responsibility.

As you all know, in order to implement the initial task, the First Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly, in view of the above-mentioned proposal made by the Soviet Government on September 26, 1947, sent letters to the Soviet and US Governments requesting them to pull their troops out of Korea.

The Soviet Government, in compliance with the request of the DPRK Supreme People’s Assembly, withdrew all its troops from the area of north Korea by the end of 1948.

The US Government, however, refused to pull out its troops from Korea. With an eye to turning south Korea completely into its colony it instigated the traitors to let the south Korean National Assembly adopt a request for the continued presence of US troops. The traitor Syngman Rhee and his clique bullied the others into accepting this request in spite of opposition from even some of the members of the National
Assembly who denounced foreign military presence in the country and stated that such a thing should never be tolerated for the sake of national independence. The traitors quashed the opposition mercilessly and put it down as communist influence.

The US imperialists not only refuse to pull out their troops, ignoring the will of all the Korean people, but are bringing to south Korea the UN Commission on Korea, the puppet organization they rigged up to obstruct Korea’s reunification.

Some time ago the US imperialists proclaimed loudly that they had withdrawn their troops from south Korea except for a military mission of 2,000. This was just to deceive the Korean people. Only a few days later they brought a warship with a naval contingent aboard. They explained that it was a “military visit” to Korea. The US imperialists are cheating the Korean people in such a crafty manner, while at the same time stepping up preparations towards a fratricidal war by building up the National Defence Army in south Korea.

As you see, Soviet troops have withdrawn from north Korea, but the Americans still remain in south Korea, meddling in the internal affairs of our country, and oppressing our people hand in glove with the traitors to the nation.

Deputies,

Under the present circumstances in which the US imperialists continue to interfere in our internal affairs and the south Korean reactionaries, acting under their patronage, grow more desperate with each passing day, the Government of the Republic has stated that the most important task before it is to unite all the Korean people and patriotic forces more closely around it, lay powerful political and economic foundations of the Republic by drawing on all the successes achieved in the northern half in the three years since the democratic reforms were put into effect and thus hasten the reunification of the country.

Only by strengthening the democratic base in the northern half further can we quickly improve the material and cultural standards of living of the people in the north. We can also make them feel
confident of victory and mobilize all their efforts in the struggle to reunify the country and build a democratic state. And by building the democratic base well we can show the people in the south that a rich and powerful country can be built solely on the basis of democratic social system. We can inspire them with boundless strength and courage and intensify their resistance struggles to save the country. Moreover, a powerful democratic base in the northern half will serve as a solid asset with which to rehabilitate quickly the south Korean national economy devastated by the US imperialists and the traitor Syngman Rhee and his clique, and raise the living standards of the impoverished people when the country is reunited.

We already carried out the 1948 National Economic Plan successfully and adopted the 1949-50 Two-Year National Economic Plan at the Second Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly.

The Two-Year National Economic Plan is designed to increase further the rate of development in all fields of the national economy. Its aims are to rehabilitate all the factories yet to be rebuilt, reinforce the inadequately equipped factories, utilize the equipment of those in operation to the maximum and remove the colonial deformity from all economic branches. This would accelerate the pace of building an independent national economy and produce daily necessities in sufficient quantities to meet the demands of the people.

The Government of the Republic and all the people are now making all efforts to implement successfully the Two-Year National Economic Plan adopted at the Supreme People’s Assembly session.

Deputies,

The people in the northern half have achieved great success in the democratic construction in one year since the founding of the Republic.

Such a success has been achieved first and foremost in the iron and steel industry, the most important branch of our industry. A blast furnace of 350-ton capacity at the Hwanghae Iron Works and another of 500-ton capacity at the Chongjin Iron Works will be completely rebuilt very soon, and construction for the production of steel and
rolled steel is briskly under way at the Chongjin Iron Works.

Although it had been totally impossible in our country before, we started producing, on a full scale, electric motors and transformers on our own at the Kangso Electrical Machinery Factory at the end of 1948. This is to meet the pressing need of industry and agriculture.

At the end of 1948 the Pyongyang Central Machine Plant was built. Thus, the most neglected machine-building industry is now gradually increasing its proportion in our industry.

With the complete rehabilitation of the Wonsan Oil Refinery, the chemical industry is now able to produce liquid fuel and machine lubricant by its own efforts, solving one of the most pressing problems in our country.

The power plants built in the years of Japanese imperialism needed considerable repair and reconstruction if their life span was to be prolonged. The Government decided to start the repair work and reconstruction, and made an investment of several hundred million won this year on the project. They also succeeded in finishing preferentially, before the rainy season, repairs on the dam of the Suphung Power Station which had been close to breaking, thus preventing possible accidents in the rainy season.

The development of mineral resources has been more active since the spring of this year, and many mines have been rehabilitated or newly developed.

One of the central tasks under the Two-Year National Economic Plan is to resolve the question of clothing for the people. Immediately towards the end of 1948, the Pyongyang Staple Fibre Mill was rehabilitated, and this year the construction of a large Pyongyang Textile Mill which will employ more than 10,000 workers was started.

The Kilju Paper Mill, the construction of which began in 1948 as an extension of the Kilju Pulp Mill, was finished in the spring of this year and has been productive since April. Construction work of the Nampho Glass Factory is going on smoothly and it will start functioning before long.
As I have mentioned above, many factories have been rehabilitated or newly set up during the one year period, and projects for the rehabilitation or new construction of other factories are being carried on successfully as planned. The factories now in operation are steadily increasing the utilization of their equipment.

In 1948, production in the state-owned industries, the cornerstone of our national economy, was more than 2.6 times what it had been in 1946. The planned tasks for 1949, the first year of the Two-Year National Economic Plan, are being successfully carried out. We are highly confident that the 1949 plan will not only be fulfilled but overfulfilled.

In particular, quite a few state-owned local industry factories were newly built, and the utilization of their equipment increased. As a result, the output of daily necessities in 1948 was over three times that in 1947, or, over 948 million won. Judging from the fact that the targets set for the first half of this year are being more than fulfilled, we can foresee that the production of daily necessities in 1949 will increase by 50 per cent as compared to the previous year.

In this way our industries are not only developing rapidly, but also eliminating their colonial lopsidedness and backwardness quickly. They are gradually increasing the output of different kinds of daily necessities for the people.

Our industries owe this rapid progress to the high enthusiasm of the workers and their creativity displayed under the new social system established in the northern half of Korea as well as to the scientific plan which guarantees their balanced development.

Great success has also been registered in agriculture. The productive zeal of the peasants who became the owners of land has risen higher, and the agricultural productive forces have grown markedly.

The Government and the people’s committees at all levels have supplied a large amount of fertilizer to the countryside and widely disseminated advanced farming methods. They have particularly seen to it that irrigation facilities for paddy fields were increased on a large
scale to save agriculture from natural calamities and increase crop yields and that land reclamation was undertaken actively. In 1948 alone, more than 16,400 hectares of new land was brought under cultivation, approximately 4,500 hectares of paddy fields came under irrigation, and irrigation canals were extended by as many as 90 kilometres. The huge Phyongnam irrigation project, which will bring 25,000 hectares of paddy fields under irrigation, is being carried out as scheduled since 1948, boosted by the patriotic enthusiasm and strenuous efforts of all the people. In addition, a survey is being made under the plan for the reclamation of the tideland on the west coast to increase the total area of paddy fields.

Consequently, the total cultivated area at the end of 1948 reached over 2,356,000 hectares. In 1949, in spite of a severe drought, the cultivated area was over 2,386,000 hectares, an increase of more than 94,900 hectares over the figure in the year immediately before the agrarian reform.

The total grain output in 1948 was 10.4 per cent greater than that of 1939, the peak harvest year during the period of Japanese imperialism, and 29 per cent higher than that in the year before the agrarian reform. Some of the paddy fields solely dependent on the rains were affected by the drought this year, but on the whole the harvest will be no worse than last year.

With the twin development of industry and agriculture, the distribution of goods increased rapidly. The state and the consumers’ cooperative trade networks have multiplied considerably. The result is that there are shops even in remote mountain villages. In 1948 the shops were over 2,200 in number, and the trade turnover was more than 11,710 million won. In 1949 the state and consumers’ cooperative shops will number over 3,300 and the trade turnover will exceed 18,100.8 million won.

The expansion and development of state and consumers’ cooperative trades promote closer economic ties between towns and villages and at the same time helps a lot raise the material standard of the working people by preventing unscrupulous middlemen from
controlling the market, by regulating market prices properly and by lowering prices systematically.

Since the establishment of the Government of the Republic, trade with the Soviet Union, China and other People’s Democracies has grown more active, and a large amount of raw materials, machines and other supplies needed for our economic construction have been imported and supplied to the factories which are being rehabilitated, newly built or already in operation.

Turnover in our trade with the Soviet Union, which holds the lion’s share in our foreign trade, was 267,936,000 rubles in 1948, and in 1949 it will reach 675,159,000 rubles.

Nearly all goods imported from the Soviet Union are raw materials and machines necessary for our factories. Our country does not have coking coal needed for the production of iron and steel. In 1948 alone we imported about 300,000 tons of coking coal, and this year some 600,000 tons.

Ships and automobiles were nearly immobilized because of the lack of liquid fuel and machine lubricant during the period starting from liberation to last year. However, we coped with the shortage of liquid fuel by importing tens of thousands of tons of crude oil from the Soviet Union and supplying it to the Wonsan Oil Refinery.

We have built the Central Machine Plant by importing machine tools able to make parts, and intend to import spinning machines with 30,000 spindles soon for a large spinning mill in Pyongyang which is to be constructed in 1950. We are importing plenty of raw materials and machine parts needed for different factories as well as several thousand kinds of essential commodities which are not yet produced in our country.

In order to facilitate a normal development of the private trade and industry, our Government abolished the system of licensed enterprises and has adopted the system of business registration. It has introduced the system of consigned mine management and of renting out mines. It gives loans to businessmen who are short of funds and provides congenial conditions for the development of the private trade
relations with other countries. Private merchants and manufacturers have thus been ensured free economic activities and are provided with all the necessary conditions to participate actively in developing the commerce and industry of the country and contribute to nation building, with their capital, know-how, and greater creativity.

In 1948 the total output of the medium and small industries in the private sector was valued at 3,459 million won, a 17 per cent increase compared with the figure of 1946.

Considerable success has been achieved in the fields of transport and communications as well.

In the first place, one of the major successes recorded by the railways is that the Pyongyang-Wonsan line and the Manpho line were electrified in part towards the end of 1948. Not only has this increased our railway hauling capacity considerably, but also opened up a further prospect of railway electrification.

The 1948 plan of the railways to transport 11,600,000 tons of freight was carried out ahead of schedule, and the target of the 1949 plan, too, is expected to be surpassed. Progress in rail transport has accelerated development in all branches of the national economy and ensured smooth goods distribution between town and country.

In the field of communications, the setting up of post offices and extending of the network of telegraph lines was much more than aimed at in the 1948 plan. This year, too, all that the plan aims at in this field is being carried out successfully.

In the field of construction and town planning, the plans of building roads, bridges and houses are being successfully implemented. Seventy-seven per cent of the river embankment projects covering a distance of 170 kilometres was finished in the first half of the year. When all the embankment projects are carried out this year, approximately 25,000 hectares of farmland will be safe against floods and more than 1,200 hectares of barren land will become fertile.

In the field of education, active preparations are being made for introducing compulsory primary education in 1950.
Thanks to the enthusiastic participation of all the people and to the efforts of the educational workers, the reinvestigation of children of school-going age, the division of school-going districts and the construction of school buildings are being undertaken on a large scale. The groundwork for the scheme of compulsory education will thus have been finished in the main by September 1, 1950 and the scheme of compulsory primary education implemented from 1950, as proposed by the Government of the Republic in its political programme.

The Government of the Republic has been paying the utmost attention to the training of our cadres, and greatly increasing the number of primary and secondary schools, and specialized schools and institutions of higher education.

The number of primary and secondary schools was 4,160 in 1948, and their total enrolment went up to approximately 1.7 million. Different types of specialized technical schools and elementary technical schools grew to 73 in number, and the total number of students there was over 22,000.

In addition to the technical schools under the Ministry of Education, there are over 140 factory technical schools and specialized technical schools, which are run by other ministries, and their students number more than 9,000 in all. In 1948 over 13,000 students studied in 11 institutions of higher learning.

A greater success has been achieved in the field of education during the one year after the founding of the Republic. In 1949 in the field of general education, over 1,905,000 pupils and students are being educated in more than 5,000 schools at different levels. The enrolment in the specialized technical schools and elementary technical schools under the Ministry of Education has increased by over 4,700 students as against the number in 1948. In addition, the number of technical schools for those on the job under other ministries and their enrolment have increased greatly. This year more than 18,000 students are studying in different institutions of higher learning whose number has increased to 15, including the newly
established Wonsan Teachers’ Training College.

We have sent many students to the Soviet Union and a number of other countries to study advanced science and technology. The Government sent 80 students abroad in 1948 and over 100 in 1949.

Formerly, there was no scope for technical training at home. But this year the new technical cadres trained in our higher educational establishments have started working at sites of production.

In 1949 specialized technical schools and elementary technical schools have already sent out 2,117 graduates, and about 2,000 students will graduate by the end of the year. This year 923 students have already finished their higher education, and by the end of the year 417 students will graduate. In addition, many technicians who have finished different technical courses while working are participating actively in economic construction.

The Government of the Republic has paid a lot of attention to the training of the cadres on the active list.

In 1948, 2,800 administrative officials, over 8,500 educational workers and 26,800 technicians were trained, and in 1949, more than 11,400 administrative officials, over 12,300 technicians and nearly 20,000 educational workers were trained and sent out to administrative, economic or educational branches. Besides, political parties and social organizations have re-educated thousands of their own cadres, and thousands of security workers and military cadres have been trained.

The Government of the Republic is thus educating a large number of youths through the general education system. It is also training a large number of political, economic, cultural and military cadres in various ways. This is fulfilling a need for the running of the state.

The Government has introduced extensive adult education schemes to raise the cultural standards of the people in general. It has set up many adult schools and adult middle schools not only to wipe out illiteracy but also to spread general knowledge, with the result that about 160,000 working people are now studying in more than 2,300 adult schools and adult middle schools. This is in addition to
the hundreds of thousands of working people studying in short-training adult schools.

Insofar as health services are concerned, 74 new clinics were set up from October 1948 to June this year. At the end of 1945 the sub-counties without medical facilities numbered 451, but by the end of June this year the number of such sub-counties dwindled to 134. Great care is taken by the state to improve the health of all the people.

Deputies,

In December 1948, the Government lowered the state prices of consumer goods by 19.2 per cent in order to raise the people’s material and cultural standard of living further in keeping with the rapid development of the national economy. The reduction of state prices and the consolidation and growth of the value of won since the currency reform resulted in a marked fall of retail prices in the market.

Wages for the workers and office employees have been raised on several occasions. The rates of the wage increase were 35 to 37 per cent for educational workers, and 50 per cent for the transport workers. The average wage of the workers under the Ministry of Industry in the second quarter of this year was 16.6 per cent higher than that in the corresponding period last year.

The decision on according preferential treatment to workers and office employees at collieries, other mines and lumber stations has come into effect this year. Accordingly, they are being provided with additional pays, fuel and various other things needed in their lives, so that their living standards are raised further.

Three years of progress in agriculture has basically solved the food crisis which had been posing a problem ever since liberation. The food situation has improved considerably.

From the beginning of 1949 the workers and office employees have been receiving food rations in larger quantities. Since the market price of rice has dropped notably people no longer talk about food shortage.

In August this year the Government also decided on lowering the income tax rates by 19.7 per cent with a view to raising the income of
the people. Moreover, in order to give education to more children of
the working people, the Government has seen to it that stipends are
granted to the children of mining and timber industry workers from
their middle school years, and that the number of scholarships to
students of specialized schools and higher educational institutes was
increased from 50 to 80 per cent of the total enrolment.

A special rationing system has been introduced for the workers
and office employees in important branches of production at every
place of work. Large numbers of houses are under construction to
improve the living conditions of the working people.

During the previous year, under the social insurance system, over
37,000 persons benefited from accommodation in sanatoria and
holiday camps. Tens of thousands of workers and office employees
received allowances and free medical care.

With the improvement of material standards of the people, their
cultural demands also rose. In order to satisfy their growing cultural
demands, the Government ensured publication of many newspapers
and magazines and a number of theatrical companies and artist teams
were established and were active. Also many documentary films were
produced for public screening.

At present, people even in the remotest mountain villages in the
northern half of Korea read newspapers and magazines. They work
with delight, singing the songs of democratic construction.

All this is possible only under a democratic social system with a
genuine people’s government like ours which completely guarantees
a free development of the people in all fields of politics, the economy
and culture.

The Government has achieved great success in strengthening its
local bodies, establishing closer ties between the people’s committees
and the broad masses of the people, improving the work style of
government officials and developing, among the cadres and working
people, the habit of protecting productive enterprises and other state
property.

Last March the Government held the provincial, city and county
(district) people’s committee elections for the purpose of further democratizing the local organs of power and consolidating them. In these elections 99.98 per cent of the total number of constituents in the northern half of Korea voted and elected 5,853 representatives belonging to all strata, to the people’s committees at different levels.

Due to the grave political situation created in our country by the US imperialists and the traitorous acts of pro-Japanese elements and other national betrayers, the Government strengthened the People’s Army in order to defend solidly all that has been achieved in the democratic construction in the north and ensure successfully our people’s struggle to repel encroachment by foreign imperialist aggressors and reunify the country.

Our People’s Army has now grown into a powerful force, capable of defending the country and the people. Our People’s Army and the Security Forces are prepared to destroy the enemies whenever they are called upon to do so by the country and the people.

The Government has also done a great deal of work in the sphere of foreign relations.

We have established diplomatic, economic and cultural relations with all the People’s Democracies and considerably enhanced the international position and prestige of our Republic.

Our Republic has established diplomatic relations on an equal footing with the Soviet Union and the People’s Democracies of Czechoslovakia, Poland, Romania, Hungary, Bulgaria, the Mongolian People’s Republic, etc., and has taken its legitimate place in the world arena as a member of the international democratic camp.

In February this year, a delegation of the DPRK Government visited the Soviet Union, and an agreement on economic and cultural cooperation was signed between the two countries. This agreement has consolidated friendship between the two countries and serves as an important guarantee for speeding up the democratic construction in our Republic.

Deputies,

During the last one year, in contrast to the great success achieved
by the people in the northern half of Korea in their democratic
construction, the lives of the people in the southern half of Korea
have deteriorated. This is caused by the US imperialist policy of
colonial enslavement and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique’s
bloody plunder and atrocities.

The national economy in the south is bankrupt, and the people are
starving.

The US imperialists, however, signed the Agreement on Economic
Assistance with the Syngman Rhee puppet government, under which
they have credited to themselves 830 million dollars, the amount they
spent by June this year on military supplies since the establishment of
their military government in south Korea, and made this sum a part of
the “economic aid plan”. They have set up the ROK-US Joint
Company through which the railways, marine transport, mines and
other major economic establishments in the southern half are
monopolized by the aggressive capital of America. Needless to say,
this is an evil scheme of the US imperialists to undermine the
economy of our nation and reduce the southern half of Korea to a
commodity market completely under their monopolistic control and
to their permanent military base.

At present, the medium and small traders and entrepreneurs in
south Korea, in general, are going bankrupt quickly on account of the
inroads of American monopoly capital. In February 1947, there were
more than 4,500 enterprises in all in south Korea, but at the end of
December of that year only 340 of them were in operation, the rest
having become insolvent.

In the mining industry, too, only 54 enterprises or 10 per cent of
the total remain; 90 per cent have gone bankrupt.

The output value of farm implements from September 1946 to
August 1947 dwindled 61 per cent compared with the preceding one
year period.

Several new enterprises have been set up in place of the ruined
small and medium enterprises, but most of them are commercial or
foreign trade bodies of American monopolists and traitorous Korean
capitalists. Much more than half of the new enterprises are under the
direct control of Wall Street merchants, according to the newspaper
*Uri Sinmun* published in Seoul.

In his article carried in the Chinese *Shanghai Weekly*, an American
journalist said, “The level of industrial production in south Korea
before May 1948 was 20 to 30 per cent of that in the previous period,
and after May, it was only 10 per cent of the preceding level.” On
August 30 last, the Associated Press reported that south Korea’s import
in 1948 amounted to 387.9 million dollars, whereas its export
accounted for 22.26 million dollars, or only 5.7 per cent of the import.

These facts clearly prove that the US imperialists and their
lackeys, the Syngman Rhee clique, are ruining the national economy
in south Korea and turning it into a market under the monopolistic
control of Wall Street merchants. It shows the predatory nature of the
ROK-US Agreement on Economic Assistance between US
imperialism and the south Korean puppet government.

Agriculture in the south is also in a deplorable state. The
cultivated areas have been reduced by hundreds of thousands of
hectares and grain harvest dropped to at least 80 per cent compared
with the previous figure.

The feudalistic tenancy system still exists in an even more vicious
form. The puppet government is following the policy of looting grain
by merciless means such as forced delivery and forced purchase. The
rice squeezed from South Jolla Province alone in 1948 is said to
amount to 1.4 million *sok*, or an amount of 180,000 *sok* more than the
record figure of annual plunder in the years of Japanese imperialism.
This practice is not limited to South Jolla Province but is common in
all other provinces of south Korea. The plundered grain is exported to
Japan, to help her rearm herself as a US imperialist base of Eastern
aggression.

Today the rural economy in south Korea is devastated, and the
peasants are living in a state of destitution.

Workers in south Korea not only suffer from hunger and poverty
because of low wages and brutal exploitation, but are mostly out of
work and swarm about the street. At present the unemployed and bankrupt number more than three million.

Under such circumstances, all the patriotic people in south Korea are fighting under the unfurled banner of the DPRK against the US imperialist aggressive forces and the Syngman Rhee puppet regime. They are struggling to force an immediate withdrawal of the US imperialist troops and the UN Commission on Korea. They are bravely fighting for agrarian reform, the nationalization of enterprises owned by the traitors, the enactment of democratic labour law, sex equality law in south Korea just as we carried out in north Korea.

The puppet government in south Korea is mobilizing civil and military police forces and the National Defence Army to slaughter in cold blood the patriots who cry for independence and sovereignty. As many as 154,000 patriots had been imprisoned and 93,000 killed in south Korea by July 1949.

The brutal massacre of people by the US imperialists and the reactionaries compelled large sections of patriotic people to rise up in an armed struggle. The patriotic armed struggle which started on Jeju Island against the ruinous May 10 separate elections is still spreading from Mt. Halla to Mt. Jiri, from Mt. Jiri to Mt. Thaebaek, and from Mt. Thaebaek to Mt. Odae.

Some time ago the guerrilla forces in Mt. Thaebaek raided Uisong, Yongju and other county seats. Those in Mt. Jiri destroyed one enemy battalion at Kwangyang and captured many weapons. Recently they attacked Kochang county seat and reinforced their ranks. During the last one year more than 3,000 guerrilla actions, large and small, have taken place in different parts of south Korea, in which they captured thousands of enemy rifles, machine guns, mortars and other weapons.

The destructive south Korean puppet government has mobilized many army divisions in a “mopping up” operation against the guerrillas. But the guerrilla movement which is organized and developed by the people themselves with the support of large sections of the population is spreading wider and growing stronger through struggle as the days go by.
The Syngman Rhee clique are not only butchering people in south Korea, but also stretching their claws into north Korea in an attempt to kill people and loot their property.

Since the beginning of 1949 the National Defence Army and police of south Korea have massed their forces near the 38th parallel and are incessantly attacking the northern half of Korea. They raid villages, set fire to farmhouses and kill innocent children and old people in a barbarous manner.

However, the National Defence Army units, police forces, arsonist bands and spies infiltrating into the northern half are being destroyed by our Security Forces. Our Security Forces is fully ready to deliver decisive blows in future, too, if the enemy continues to carry out such barbarous provocations.

The south Korean National Defence Army and police are not only being hit by the people’s guerrillas and the Security Forces, but crumbling because of their internal conflicts which are getting more and more acute with each passing day.

In November last year the 14th Regiment of the National Defence Army rose in revolt in Ryosu and joined the people’s guerrillas. In May this year the Chunchon battalion in Chunchon and Hongchon battalion came over to the northern half of Korea and joined the People’s Army. Around that time south Korean naval vessels, too, crossed into the north, convinced of the righteousness of this action.

None of these things are accidental. This shows that, even though the traitor Syngman Rhee and his clique are preparing a fratricidal war by forced mobilization of the children of the working people, the Korean youths are determinedly opposed to fratricide and the US imperialist policy of colonizing Korea. In the future, too, such righteous actions will occur continually in the National Defence Army.

As I have said above, the US imperialist policy of colonial plunder and the treacheries of the Syngman Rhee clique in the southern half of Korea have grown more vicious during the last one year. As a result, tens of thousands of compatriots have been killed and millions
of our fellow countrymen are starving.

In this critical situation where the very lives of the south Korean people are at stake, all the people aspire to and call unanimously for the earliest possible reunification of the north and the south and the establishing of a completely unified state by frustrating the enemy’s plot to ignite a fratricidal war.

In order to realize the reunification of the country, more than seventy patriotic political parties and social organizations in north and south Korea formed the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea on June 26, 1949. The inaugural conference adopted the Manifesto Regarding the Measures for the Peaceful Reunification of the Country and called on all democratic political parties, social organizations, persons from various strata and the rest of the people in both parts of the country to support the manifesto.

When the manifesto was made public, all the Korean people supported and approved the proposal wholeheartedly. The Government of our Republic, too, regarded as absolutely justifiable the DFRK’s proposal for peaceful reunification which is in accordance with the will of all the people and declared that it would make every effort to put it into action.

The south Korean puppet regime and the band of traitors, however, are rather afraid of the proposal for peaceful reunification and are using every means to prevent the proposal from being known to the south Korean people.

They are the agents for the implementation of the US imperialist policies of colonial enslavement. So they do not want the reunification of the country; their intention is to turn south Korea into a permanent colony of the United States. Also, they are a band of pro-Japanese collaborators and national betrayers. As such they are afraid of reunification because they well know that they will not be forgiven by the people for the crimes they have committed by killing people in south Korea for the last four years. They are trying to prove their loyalty only to the US imperialists, their masters, and prolong their last days by dividing the nation, betraying the people and
obstructing the attainment of sovereignty and independence.

They are imprisoning or killing mercilessly the south Koreans who are struggling for the peaceful reunification of the country. They are causing bloodshed among the sons and daughters of Korea by provoking armed clashes along and up the 38th parallel. The Syngman Rhee clique must bear the responsibility for their sellout and wicked crimes and be tried by the people.

However frantic they are, the enemies will not be able to obstruct the cause of the country and people for ever. The trend of history will only be decided by the force of the people.

The south Korean people support the proposal for peaceful reunification and are struggling everywhere to put it into effect.

Even the officers and men of the National Defence Army who have been press ganged and oppressed and deceived by the Syngman Rhee clique to follow the traitors’ band will refuse, if they know of the manifesto, to be used as a shameful instrument of the US imperialists and Syngman Rhee for fratricide. They will fight to support peaceful reunification. There is no doubt about that.

If all of the south Korean people rise, and if the National Defence Army now following Syngman Rhee comes out in large forces against fratricide, the traitor Syngman Rhee clique will lose their footholds and find themselves in complete isolation. Thus, our country will be reunified peacefully.

Deputies,

All the developments I have mentioned above raise before us the following tasks to be tackled urgently:

First, we must consolidate the democratic base in the northern half of Korea politically and economically into an impregnable fortress capable of ensuring national reunification and territorial integrity.

The people in the north should consolidate the people’s committees at different levels, the local organs of power, and implement all the decisions, laws and decrees of the Government of the Republic with greater political enthusiasm. All the workers at factories, mines, farm and fishing villages, railways, educational and
cultural institutions must perform their tasks sincerely and launch a
heroic struggle to fulfil and go beyond the targets of the Two-Year
National Economic Plan.

Secondly, all the people should detest their enemies and fight them
uncompromisingly with national awareness and noble patriotism.
They should heighten their vigilance against every sinister plot of the
enemies.

The enemies are cunning and crafty and resort to any method to
attain their purpose. They have recourse to all sorts of vile means and
manoeuvres to break up the fighting ranks of the people in the
southern half. They dispatch spies, subversive elements and saboteurs
to destroy our factories, mills, railways and government
establishments, built through the labour of the people in the northern
half of Korea.

All our people must always be ready and alert, frustrate enemy
plots at every step, detect and crack down on the lurking enemies.

Thirdly, we must strengthen, more than ever, the People’s Army,
Security Forces and Public Security Corps who are serving to defend
the country and the people.

All our people must concentrate their efforts on strengthening
these forces. They should help the dependents of their men,
noncommissioned officers and officers, extend the scope of activities
of the national defence support committees and vigorously push
forward the work of supporting the People’s Army morally and
materially.

Finally, all the patriotic political parties, social organizations and
all the people of the Republic should wage a more powerful struggle
to put into effect the measures for peaceful national reunification
proposed by the DFRK.

We must thoroughly expose the true colours of the traitorous
Syngman Rhee clique who are openly preparing for war. We must
completely isolate the enemy, strengthen the people’s fighting ranks
like steel, and strive to reunify the country peacefully by the united
force of all the people.
Deputies,

Today the international situation is favourable to our people who are struggling to build an independent and sovereign state.

The great successes achieved by the Soviet people in their postwar peaceful construction, the establishment of the people’s democratic system in many Southeast European countries and the great victory of the Chinese people tell us that the international democratic camp has further strengthened and that the road of total victory for democracy is open.

In addition, since the end of the war the working-class movement has grown stronger in many countries, the national liberation movements in colonies and subjugated countries have been mounting, and the movement to defend peace against the igniters of a new war is spreading wider and wider. This indicates that the forces of international reaction are being defeated and weakened everywhere.

It is an immutable trend of the development of world history that the reactionary forces are bound to be defeated and weakened and the democratic forces triumph and become stronger in the international arena. In our country, too, the reactionary forces pursuing the policy of colonial enslavement will be destroyed and the patriotic, democratic forces that have risen up for the reunification, independence and freedom of the country will emerge victorious, without fail.

Let all the Korean people work towards territorial integrity and the reunification and independence of the country under the unfurled banner of the Republic and united more closely around the Government.
Comrades,

Present at this meaningful graduation ceremony today, I would like to warmly congratulate you on leaving the military academy with excellent results.

Let me also offer my hearty thanks to all the teaching staff who have striven to train the cadets to be fine commanders.

To begin with, I will give you graduates some pointers on what to do in the future.

Our country has been divided into north and south. The first Two-Year National Economic Plan is being implemented with great initiative, creativity and enthusiasm by the workers of the northern half of Korea in order to lay the nation’s firm economic foundations. This is being accomplished despite the difficult and complicated situation we are in. However, things are quite different in the southern half. The Japanese imperialists occupied our country previously, but now, the US imperialists occupy the south of our country and lord it over there, stubbornly hampering national reunification.

As the US imperialists and their stooges intensify their aggressive
activities, the situation in our country is getting tenser, day by day. The US imperialists, the ring-leaders of world reaction, have not only frustrated the work of the USSR-US Joint Commission but are also intensifying their aggressive moves to perpetuate their occupation of south Korea and, further, to conquer the whole of Korea. They are frenetically active in instigating the traitorous Syngman Rheeites to engage in a war in Korea and are even reviving Japanese imperialism—the sworn enemy of our people.

Manipulated by the US imperialists, the puppet Syngman Rheeites have infiltrated into a number of places such as Mt. Songak, Mt. Unpha and Yangyang. They have perpetrated barbarities, killing our innocent people and destroying and plundering their houses and possessions. They are intruding into the north more frequently as the days go by. However, our Security Forces are dealing fatal blows to the enemy, each time they intrude.

Today, our People’s Army and Security Forces have grown into a strong force capable of repulsing any aggressors.

In the short period after liberation, we have been able to found, strengthen and develop the powerful People’s Army which will successfully defend the country and people. This is because we have able military and political cadres who have been trained and seasoned in the arduous anti-Japanese armed struggle. Young as it is, our People’s Army has deep roots. It has inherited the brilliant revolutionary traditions of the Anti-Japanese Guerrilla Army. It was born out of it.

With the country liberated, our Party founded the People’s Army and exerted great efforts to strengthen it. The Party endeavoured first to train competent military and political cadres. It is true that the training of an officer involves a great deal of effort and expense, but our Party spared nothing to accomplish this task. Soon after liberation, we instituted a military academy and produced a large number of military and political cadres.

The First Central Military Academy plays an important role in training commanders for the People’s Army. For lack of experience
this academy had some shortcomings in the education of the cadets at first, but, now, I think, it is on the right track.

You have learned a lot at this military academy and are leaving today. This gives us great pleasure. Deprived of our country by the Japanese imperialists in the past, we could not even dream of this kind of ceremony then. But today we have a fine national regular army of our own and train able commanders at the military academy. We take great pride in this, indeed.

You were enrolled in the academy at a propitious time and learned much and are now leaving for units at a time when the situation in our country is very serious. As many officers armed with advanced military science and skills are going to the units, the core ranks of our People’s Army will increase and the army will be further strengthened.

Important tasks are waiting for you who are graduating from this school and proceeding to your units when the country is in a tense situation. You must strive to defend the Government of the Republic and the democratic base in the northern half, drive the US imperialists out of south Korea, and achieve the country’s reunification.

You must sharpen your revolutionary vigilance against the enemy’s underhanded manoeuvres, and fully prepare your men ideologically and militarily so as to increase the People’s Army’s combat preparations and combat capacity in every way. Thus, if the enemy attacks us, you will be able to wipe them out to a man and make sure that the north and south Korean people reunify the country, with their united efforts, in a peaceful way. The country’s reunification should be realized by the Korean people themselves. This is the invariable stand of our Party and the Government of the Republic.

Though you have graduated from the academy you should continue to work hard to raise your theoretical and professional qualifications. You have learned much at the academy, but you cannot claim that you are fully prepared. What you have learned at school is nothing but the basis on which you will work at your units.
You have been taught at the academy so far, but, now, it is your turn to teach the soldiers. Therefore, you should not content yourselves with what you have studied at the school, but strive to consolidate your knowledge and raise your theoretical and professional levels through practical training and work at your units. Particularly, you should take an active part in political life, to be competent officers fully prepared, both politically and ideologically. You should not be content to remain a platoon leader but continue to strive to become the commander of a company, a battalion and a regiment.

Our People’s Army is a genuine people’s army consisting of the finest sons and daughters of our workers and peasants. Its officers and men are all revolutionary comrades and brothers. As inscribed on the colours, our People’s Army fights for the country’s independence and the people. This is the fundamental difference between our People’s Army and the imperialist armies of aggression.

As you all know, almost all officers of imperialist armies and the south Korean puppet army are from the landlord and capitalist classes, whereas the soldiers are sons and daughters of the working people. Therefore, there are acute class antagonisms and contradictions between them; the officers oppress the soldiers, disciplining them with the rod. In the days of Japanese imperialist rule you must have often seen sabre-rattling Japanese officers swagger about, harassing people and beating their subordinates.

Our People’s Army officers must not behave in the same manner. You must root out the remnants of Japanese imperialist ideology in your minds and equip yourselves with a popular work style and method. You must not hold your head high, riding a car or a horse, or adopt a wrong outlook towards your men, just because you have become officers. Like the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters who defeated the enemy in the forests of the Paektu in the past, you should keep close ties with the people and take loving care of the soldiers as if they were your own brothers, thus forming an integral whole with them.
Your units are anxiously awaiting your arrival. You must educate the soldiers thoroughly, on the basis of what you have learned at the academy, be always exemplary in the performance of your work and the observation of discipline, and make your units into “iron ranks”.

Next, I wish to stress a few points concerning education at the military academy.

First of all, positive efforts should be directed towards educating the cadets to conform with the specific features of modern warfare and the natural conditions of our country.

The academy should increase education in military engineering in conformity with our specific conditions, so as to train many able engineering officers, and ensure that all the graduating officers possess a high level of engineering technique.

The role of the engineers is very important in modern warfare. Our country is particularly mountainous and most of it is rocky. If we are to build fortifications to suit these topographical features we have to acquire proper engineering technique. Therefore, the school should study these methods of engineering intensively and teach it to the students.

To guarantee victory on the battlefields, a correct choice of fortification positioning and an efficient use of natural features and personal equipment are important. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle, too, we used our personal equipment to clear walls when taking the enemy’s batteries in assaults on walled towns. We hit the enemy by using trees, rocks, ravines, pools and the like to our advantage in mountain warfare. Applying this experience, the academy staff should teach the cadets so well that they will be able to skilfully choose the positions of fortifications and camouflage themselves, and correctly use the topographical features and personal equipment.

Also, the academy should place more emphasis on signal training so that all our cadets may skilfully use up-to-date signal equipment. When commanding officers handle this equipment with ease, they will be able to command combat operations well, and guarantee
victory. Communications were important in past battles, and they are still more important for modern warfare. The military academy should instruct the cadets on the functions of signal apparatuses and on how to handle and preserve them so that they can use them dexterously in actual combat.

You should intensify shooting practice so that every student can develop into a crack shot. Good marksmanship looks easy, but it is very difficult to become very proficient. Even a good marksman finds it difficult to hit the target if he neglects his regular training. Therefore, the academy should steadily train the cadets in shooting and raise their level to that of the snipers. The role of snipers in battle is extremely important.

In the days of the anti-Japanese armed struggle, the guerrillas would use shrewd tactics and shoot the enemy as skilfully as a sniper would do. So, the Japanese created an uproar about the “preternatural swiftness” of the guerrillas. The academy must produce more crack shots who will hit the enemy as skilfully as the anti-Japanese guerrillas did.

Our units need many more officers at the present time. The First Central Military Academy must train many competent officers from now on, availing itself of every possibility. We must send the graduates to the units quickly and enrol those platoon leaders who have till now had no opportunity to study.

I am sure you will contribute greatly in safeguarding the country and people and increase the combat capabilities of the People’s Army at the units to which you are assigned.

In concluding, I wish all of you graduates and teaching staff greater successes in your work.
As you know, the Fourth Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly held some time ago adopted the law on the enforcement of universal compulsory primary education, effective on September 1, 1950. This is an important step in carrying out the educational policy enunciated in the Constitution of the Republic and the Political Programme of the Government of the Republic.

This educational system will be the first of its kind in the East as well as in the history of our country.

The universal compulsory primary education to be enforced in our country is based on the brilliant successes achieved in the educational spheres over the past four years since liberation. By democratizing education in this period, we abolished the colonial slave education of Japanese imperialism, and established a genuine people’s educational system and built up the material foundations for education by setting up and expanding many schools of different levels, including primary schools, and increasing the production of school equipment and stationery. We also improved the quality of education considerably and trained a lot of teachers. Based on the successes already achieved, education in our country has now reached a stage in which the enforcement of universal compulsory
primary education is the order of the day.

As soon as the law on the enforcement of this system that presupposes a free education was passed, all the people supported and welcomed it warmly. This is by no means fortuitous.

Under the colonial rule of the villainous Japanese imperialists for nearly half a century, our people felt the bitterness of ignorance to the bone but could not satisfy their children’s burning desire for learning. Under Japanese imperialist rule only the children of the privileged few who are rich and influential were able to study, whereas the children of poor working people could not even dream of going to school; even if they were admitted to school, they were expelled because they failed to pay tuition fees. It is our people’s long-cherished desire to let their children study to their heart’s content. Their desire is being realized now thanks to the universal compulsory primary education which is to be enforced. It is natural that they should be grateful. Now, everybody can let his children study as much as they desire. The universal compulsory primary education practically provides all children of school-going age with equal opportunities of learning. So, all the people cannot but welcome its enforcement and it cannot but be an event which will hold an outstanding place in our national history.

The enforcement of universal compulsory primary education is an important event that will enable our people to realize their age-old desire to get their children educated; it is a giant stride in the cultural revolution. As a result, the general cultural standards of our people will rise further and our national culture will develop more rapidly. The enforcement of this educational system will also inspire more forcefully the south Korean people who are fighting for the country’s reunification and democratic education.

Introducing universal compulsory primary education is a very difficult and tremendous task. Therefore, if we only adopt the law on the enforcement of this educational system and neglect the preparations, we cannot effect it smoothly.

We have made systematic preparations for the introduction of
universal compulsory primary education. We discussed this matter and adopted a relevant decision at the 11th Meeting of the Cabinet in December 1948 and, early this year, we formed the central preparatory committee and provincial, city and county preparation committees for the enforcement of the new educational system, as well as sub-county school construction committees. In this way the preparations have been stepped up considerably for universal compulsory primary education.

But this is no more than an initial success. If we are to enforce this education system completely, we should make more preparations. Since our country is still hard pressed for money, there may be quite a few difficulties and obstacles in making the preparations. However, if the Ministry of Education and people’s committees at all levels depend on the strength of the people, they will be able to overcome the hardships.

The Ministry of Education and all people’s committees should first conduct a correct census and registration of the children of school-going age.

This, we should say, is the first step towards the preparations for the enforcement of universal compulsory primary education. Only by correctly checking and registering the children of school-going age can we enrol all the eligible children, and solve purposefully every problem arising out of the introduction of the new educational system—such as the building of schools, training of the teachers and procurement of teaching equipment and school materials. According to the report of the central preparatory committee for the enforcement of universal compulsory primary education, the registration of the children has been completed in the main. Senior officials of the Ministry of Education should directly examine whether the work has been done correctly or not, so that none of the children of school-going age will be left out.

Primary school buildings should be constructed on a large scale and a sufficient amount of equipment, furniture and teaching aids must be secured.
The construction of school buildings is particularly important in the preparations for the enforcement of universal compulsory primary education. The Ministry of Education and all people’s committees should accurately estimate the necessary number of school buildings and actively go ahead with their construction. The state will make investments in the building of new schools, but it would be better for localities, if possible, to construct schools by their own efforts, without relying on the state. And yet, we should not impose additional taxes upon the people as some localities have done. The people are so enthusiastic about education that a good information work will induce them to participate in the construction of schools voluntarily and spare no efforts towards rendering material and manual help.

In order to solve the problem of school buildings you can use those houses which have been confiscated from landlords, and also those buildings which have some connection or other with educational establishments, while building schools through a mass movement. At present, the houses formerly owned by the landlords are being used as offices of sub-county organizations or democratic publicity halls in some rural areas. You can use other buildings, as such offices or halls. If you take over the confiscated houses being occupied now by state bodies and use them as schools, you can ease the shortage of school buildings to a considerable extent.

You must not try to increase the number of primary schools at random. They should be built, keeping in view the distance between the home and the school, and the number of people. Pupils can cover up to 3-5 kilometres on foot. If schools are too far, branch schools should be opened.

Simultaneously with the construction of school houses you should make furniture such as desks, chairs, and blackboards and various teaching aids. You should check the required amount of furniture and teaching aids and take steps to produce them as soon as possible.

Careful attention should be directed to preparing textbooks.

As we have stressed this point many times, schoolbooks should be prepared to conform with the specific situation in our country. Our
children are the future masters of the country. Our primary efforts being directed to educational work in spite of manifold difficulties, are aimed after all at bringing up our children, the future masters of the country, more efficiently. If we are to achieve this objective of education, the textbooks should suit our reality. Nevertheless, we find many foreign things in the textbooks for primary schools as well as for colleges. The primary school textbooks should be re-edited in keeping with the reality of our country. The Ministry of Education should build up the staff who compile the textbooks, while incorporating many excellent teachers, scholars, writers and artists in the compilation work.

If we are to print huge volumes of textbooks necessary for the enforcement of universal compulsory primary education, we may be in short supply of paper and printing machinery. If we need more paper, we should take measures to import it and if the printing capacity of the Educational Books Printing Shop is not enough, we should use others also.

The textbooks should be distributed properly. Because the Ministry of Education neglects this work now, pupils in some local areas receive their textbooks late. This practice should not be repeated. You must confirm the exact amount of textbooks required by each province, city and county, prepare a textbook distribution plan, and send the textbooks in time according to the plan.

The Ministry of Education must educate the pupils well to handle and keep their schoolbooks carefully. If they do so, you can collect them and use them again. I have been told that about 30 per cent of old textbooks can be collected yearly. This is quite good. Of course, it is not good that the pupils should use old textbooks for a new school year. Under the present circumstances, however, even this is inevitable if every pupil is to have textbooks.

Notebooks, pencils and other school materials should be produced as required and, in particular, school uniforms be supplied to the pupils. If we are to provide them with school uniforms, we shall have to tackle problems regarding the fabric for these uniforms and the
financial problems that go with it. Of course, it is not an easy job to make and supply school uniforms. Difficult as it is, we should somehow produce and supply the required quantity of uniforms by the end of August next year. This will enable all the pupils to wear new school uniforms and attend school on the historic day when the universal compulsory primary education will be enforced.

In order to put into effect the new educational system, we need more teachers. Whether we can meet the increasing demands for teachers or not is the key problem, the solution to which will decide the smooth enforcement of universal compulsory primary education. The Ministry of Education should turn out many capable teachers by intensifying their training. We should establish more normal schools to turn out a large number of primary school teachers regularly. At the same time, training should be given to many of them through short training courses to be organized at normal schools. With a view to improving the qualifications of primary school teachers on the active list, measures should be taken for their re-education.

We should ensure good treatment for primary school teachers who stand in the forefront of the educational work of training the future pillars of our country. Everybody knows that of all teachers, primary school teachers have the greatest difficulties. They should be respected by the public and be provided adequate material benefits.

When universal compulsory primary education is introduced in future, many pupils will definitely desire to continue their studies at higher schools. In view of this possibility, the Ministry of Education should take measures to establish more junior secondary schools from now.

Lastly, I will touch briefly on the use of Chinese characters in school education.

At present we find many Chinese characters used in our language. We must use as few Chinese characters as possible and use native Korean words. This is one of principles we should maintain invariably in the development of the Korean language.

But we must be cautious in dealing with the Chinese words which
have been assimilated in our language. It is said that under the pretext of developing Korean, some schools have changed such words as *samgakhyong* (triangle) and *sagakhyong* (quadrangle) to *semoggol* and *nemoggol*. They should not do so. When we say *samgakhyong* and *sagakhyong* everybody understands the meaning. So we need not bother to change them to *semoggol* and *nemoggol*. If we abandon even those words adopted from Chinese ideographs which have been assimilated by our language, it will hinder the development of our national culture. Therefore, we should let the Chinese characters assimilated by our language be used as they are.
Comrades,

Our Party and Government have constantly striven and continue to strive for the peaceful reunification of the country.

Our Party’s peaceful national reunification proposal is most reasonable. Therefore, the people in the southern half of Korea as well as the people in the northern half are actively supporting our proposal. In April last year, at the time of the Joint Conference of Representatives of the Political Parties and Public Organizations in North and South Korea, even such anti-communists as Kim Ku and Kim Kyu Sik expressed their support to our proposal for the country’s peaceful reunification. They were here in the northern half of Korea, and admired our system and said that communists are genuine patriots.

But the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique are dead set against the proposal for the country’s peaceful reunification put forward by our Party and are trying desperately to instigate a fratricidal war.

Seeking a way out of their domestic economic difficulties and political chaos by waging a new war, the US imperialists are now
expanding their military bases in Asia and Europe and concentrating their armed forces of aggression there in a big way. They are presently carrying out large-scale fleet manoeuvres off Taiwan and south Korea and are intensifying their activities to reinforce the south Korean puppet army and equip them with US arms.

Under the direct manipulation of the US imperialists, the traitorous Syngman Rheeites are clamouring to “march north” almost every day. The south Korean puppet troops under the command of the US imperialist armed forces of aggression have already finished repositioning along the 38th parallel and taken up their positions, and are waiting for an offensive order in complete battle array.

Meanwhile, the US imperialists and their stooges are stepping up their repressive moves to stamp out the south Korean people’s anti-US struggle to save the nation. The enemy is engaged in frenzied fascist terrorism against progressives and patriots in south Korea and is perpetrating outrageous brutalities by arresting, imprisoning and murdering innocent people everywhere.

Syngman Rhee the traitor who has long lived on the crumbs thrown by the US imperialists is not only selling out south Korea to his masters but is working furiously to place the whole of Korea under US imperialist domination. In order to help the US imperialists realize their aggressive ambitions, the Syngman Rhee clique are raising anti-communist slogans more vociferously than ever before.

As you see, the situation is tense. In the light of this situation we must sharpen our revolutionary vigilance and fight more actively to crush the aggressive moves of the enemy and effect our Party’s proposal for the country’s peaceful reunification.

The higher the Party holds the slogan for the country’s peaceful reunification, the more the People’s Army should increase its combat power. Strengthening the People’s Army in every way is an important factor for realizing the peaceful reunification of the country; and this is a solid guarantee for repulsing any reckless invasion of the enemy and for achieving the cause of peaceful reunification by the concerted efforts of the people of north and south Korea.
The more tense the situation is, the more the People’s Army should strive to constantly perfect its combat preparedness and increase its strength as a whole. The military academy should play a particularly important role and stand in the forefront in strengthening the People’s Army.

The most important guarantee for increasing the might of the People’s Army is to instil in the soldiers Marxist-Leninist ideas, the ideas of the Workers’ Party of Korea. Only when all the soldiers are equipped fully with Marxist-Leninist ideas, the revolutionary ideas of our Party, and firmly prepared politically and ideologically, can the People’s Army become invincible.

The army, if strongly equipped politically and ideologically, can, even if they are poorly armed, defeat the enemy who is equipped with up-to-date weapons. This is proved by the history of revolutionary wars. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle, too, our poorly-armed revolutionary army won the battle against Japanese imperialism because of their ideological and political superiority.

In order to arm the soldiers with Marxist-Leninist ideas, the ideas of our Workers’ Party, and have them well prepared politically and ideologically, political studies should be intensified among them. It is only when the soldiers study politics well, that they can correctly understand the justice of our revolutionary cause and the aims and mission of the People’s Army, enhance their revolutionary vigilance and observe discipline voluntarily. If they neglect political studies, they will be blind to what lies ahead and will not be able to distinguish friend from foe. This is why you should concentrate on political studies.

In political studies you should learn the long history of our country, the glorious history of the anti-Japanese armed struggle and Marxist-Leninist principles. In particular, a profound study should be made of the lines and policies of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic. Political studies should not be confined to acquiring knowledge but be closely associated with actual practice.

Through political studies you should also root out obsolete ideas
in the minds of the soldiers. Living under the colonial rule of Japanese imperialism for nearly half a century our people saw and heard about many negative deeds by the Japanese imperialists. Consequently, before they knew it they were adversely affected by these deeds to a great extent and were bogged down by them.

Today what remains of Japanese imperialist ideology is one of the biggest obstacles in the way of our progress. Without thoroughly eliminating the last vestige of Japanese imperialist ideology in the minds of people, we cannot expect any success in democratic nation building nor can we succeed in building socialism and communism. Therefore, you must conduct political studies in close combination with the ideological struggle to root out any obsolete ideas that may still remain in your minds.

Through political studies, you must also be able to distinguish your friends from your enemy and develop the revolutionary spirit in such a way that you have a bitter hatred for the class enemy. Our sworn enemies are the landlord and capitalist classes, US imperialism and its stooges, the Syngman Rhee clique. The class enemies are heinous and atrocious and they show no mercy to the people. This is the immutable nature of the landlords, capitalists and other class enemies. You must not harbour the slightest illusion about them but have a firm revolutionary resolve to fight them to the end.

In order to prepare the soldiers firmly along political and ideological lines, it is important to strengthen their Party life and other aspects of organizational life. The strengthening of organizational life enables the soldiers to be better trained politically and ideologically, to develop their loyalty to the country and people and also to wipe out any remnants of obsolete ideologies.

At present, for several compelling reasons, we have not yet formed Party organizations in the units of the People’s Army as a whole, except some like the military academy. But since the People’s Army is the army of the Party, Party organizations should be established throughout the People’s Army in the future and the soldiers should be made to join in Party life. As there is a Party
organization in the military academy now, Party life should be strengthened here so that all the Party members are more trained politically and ideologically.

The Korean People’s Army is a genuine people’s army consisting of sons and daughters of the workers and peasants and is a Marxist-Leninist army of a new type. Maintaining close ties of kinship with the people is one of the important guarantees for strengthening the People’s Army.

It is the lofty mission of the People’s Army to defend the security of the country and the lives and property of the people from enemy aggression and to strive for the independent reunification of the country and for its prosperity and progress. Hence the people’s warm affection, unreserved support, and encouragement to the People’s Army. Serving the country and people and enjoying the wholehearted support and encouragement from the people, is precisely the source of the invincible strength of the People’s Army. This is the characteristic feature and superiority of our People’s Army which no imperialist army of aggression can have.

The imperialist army of aggression is solely engaged in the aggression and plunder of other countries and in slaughtering the inhabitants; it is an anti-people’s army serving a handful of exploiters. The US imperialist army, the puppet army of south Korea and the Jiang Jieshi’s Guomindang army of China are all anti-people’s armies. These aggressive and anti-people’s armies can never serve the interests of the people and command their support.

All the soldiers should clearly understand the aim and mission of our People’s Army, serve the people more faithfully and strive to strengthen their ties with the people. The soldiers should love and respect the people, cherish the interests of the people and protect their lives and property like the apples of their eyes, anywhere and at any time. The People’s Army should be to the people what fish is to water.

If the People’s Army is to be strong, all the soldiers should be well-equipped with modern military science and technique and, in particular, the commanding ability of the officers should be increased.
Modern warfare is different from the past warfare. It is multidimensional involving numerous personnel, the use of complex combat materials and technical equipment. It is a highly organized and scientific warfare. If we are to defeat the enemy in such warfare the soldiers should be well versed in modern military science and technique, to say nothing of arming themselves politically and ideologically.

In studying modern military science and technique you should not try to adopt foreign ones blindly, but study them in relation to the specific conditions in our country. As you all know, our country is mountainous. Everywhere you go you find high mountains and deep valleys, hillocks and dense forests. If you do not take these geographical features of our country into account and just mechanically introduce the military theory and experience of a foreign country which abounds in plains, it will not be relevant to our situation.

Although it is important to learn foreign military science and battle experience, you should also study and learn a lot from the experience of our own anti-Japanese guerrillas, in order to hit the enemy.

Soldiers should be well versed in the use of their weapons and combat equipment and be skilled in shooting.

In fact, the soldier who cannot handle his weapons well cannot be called a soldier. A weapon is the life of a soldier, and it is his elementary duty to take good care of it and be familiar with its use. The soldier should be acquainted not only with his own weapons but also with the weapons of the enemy. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle the guerrillas were all proficient in handling enemy weapons, so they were in a position to use any weapons as soon as they seized them. This is a very good experience, indeed. The People’s Army should apply such precious experience properly, and the soldiers should keep improving their marksmanship in order to become sharpshooters.

The officers should constantly increase their commanding ability.
The students of the training course of this academy will be future commanders or staff officers, so special attention should be directed to increasing their commanding ability.

The commanders should make a scientific judgment of all subjective and objective conditions under the prevailing situation. They should minutely organize combat operations on this basis, carefully ensure coordination between different arms and services and skilfully command the battle. This is one of the very important problems for the commanders who organize and direct modern battles. Only when they have such a high commanding capacity can they destroy the enemy and lead them by the nose. The commanders should also be familiar with various military rules, be well-informed of the features of different arms and of the principles of their usage, and manage the staff and run their units efficiently.

Along with the commanders, the staff members, too, should be familiar with military practices and be alert. The staff members should make a prompt judgment on the situation and should be correct in working on the maps. Then, they can give substantial help to the commanders in their work.

In order to make the People’s Army a strong force, military discipline should be tightened further.

Military discipline is the source of fighting efficiency and an important guarantee for victory in battle. We should establish strict discipline and revolutionary order within the People’s Army, so that all the units and soldiers live and act as required by military regulations and manuals and move as precisely as well-oiled gears in motion.

For the strengthening of military discipline the self-consciousness of the soldiers should be developed primarily.

The discipline of capitalist armies is a coercive discipline, whereas that of our People’s Army, the revolutionary army, is based entirely on voluntariness. Since all soldiers of the People’s Army volunteered to join the ranks of the revolutionary army for the sake of the country and people, there can only be a discipline based on the revolutionary
consciousness of each soldier, and in order to strengthen discipline, there is no other way but to increase their voluntariness.

At present there is the jail house system stipulated in the disciplinary regulations of the People’s Army, but it does not fit in with our particular conditions. We should study this system and correct it in the future. It is true that in the revolutionary army, punishment is a method of education. However, it is more effective to persuade the soldiers to recognize their faults than to mete out punishment to them. We must not take disciplinary action rashly.

During the anti-Japanese armed struggle we made sure that whenever errors were committed by the guerrillas they convinced each other of the errors and made a critical appraisal. Thus, they were made to repent of and rectify their own wrongs by themselves. As a result, the guerrillas always maintained a strict discipline based on their high revolutionary consciousness, and because of this they were stronger than the enemy.

The People’s Army should establish discipline in the same way. Among the recruits there may be some comrades who commit errors once in a while because of the lack of experience and preparedness. If you have such comrades, you should help them kindly to understand their mistakes and to try and correct them by themselves. In other words, you should convince them of their mistakes through criticism and give them friendly help to let them rectify their errors.

One of the important features of a regular army is to organize all aspects of its life and activity as required by regulations and manuals. If the soldiers behave without discipline, sleeping whenever they are sleepy and eating whenever they are hungry, they cannot be called a regular army.

Since our People’s Army is a regular army, every aspect of its life and activity should be in accordance with the regulations. First of all, the barrack service should be organized as the regulations demand and the daily routine should be followed to the letter. Only then, can the soldiers lead an orderly and organized life as befits a regular army. The military academy should first teach the students how to
organize barrack services and how to follow a daily routine.

In order to tighten military discipline the commanders should set examples in observing discipline. This is important. The setting of good examples by the commanders and officers has greater effect in educating the soldiers than hundreds or thousands of words. Therefore, they should observe the set discipline voluntarily and be exemplary in their disciplined life at all times.

The army should perform their drill well, so that they are disciplined and make every movement quick and brisk. It is only then that they will look like a real army.

The soldiers should sharpen their revolutionary vigilance. The greater our success, the more desperate will the enemy be in their attempt to ignite a war of aggression. By increasing their combat readiness and revolutionary vigilance, all soldiers of the People’s Army must not give the enemy an opportunity to strike and should expose and crush their every cunning and vicious move. All aspects of army life are military secrets. Therefore, the soldiers should keep the secrets strictly so that not a single matter concerning the military service leaks out however trifling it may be.

When all the soldiers are equipped closely with Marxist-Leninist ideas, the revolutionary ideas of the Workers’ Party, and with modern military skills, and the officers further enhance their commanding ability and establish stern discipline within the units, only then will our People’s Army be an invincible army. I firmly believe that you will learn much more to contribute actively to the work of developing the People’s Army into an ever-victorious army, an iron army.

I wish you greater success in your future work.
WE MUST MAKE WEAPONS BY OUR OWN EFFORTS TO ARM OURSELVES

Talk to Representatives of Factory No. 65
October 31, 1949

Factory No. 65 has not been established long, but you have accomplished much. You began to make weapons although you had neither blueprints nor diagrams of the technical processes and your technical equipment and tools were poor, yet excellent submachine guns are now being produced by you.

Our working class, who have been exploited and oppressed by the Japanese imperialists for 36 years, have made excellent weapons by their own efforts, weapons they had never made before, and had not even dreamt of making before. I am very satisfied with this.

The production of arms is important in increasing the nation’s defences. Therefore, it was our desire to develop the munitions industry immediately after liberation. But this wish did not materialize till 1948, when we drew up specific plans and started building an arsenal.

It is quite important for the working class who have seized power to produce weapons for themselves and defend their country.

Of course, we can import arms instead of making them at home. Honestly speaking, the production cost of our guns is so high that we can buy several foreign guns with the money spent on manufacturing one gun in our country. But importing weapons is not safe from the standpoint of national defence. Foreign countries may fail to continue
their export of weapons to us or may refuse to give them to us. When they are ready to give us arms, we can purchase them even if we run into debt. But what should we do when they refuse? We can do nothing but sit with arms folded.

We must make weapons for ourselves. Only then can we produce arms which are suitable to our specific conditions and safeguard the country.

Even during the anti-Japanese armed struggle we made a small amount of firearms, manually at our own arsenal. Needless to say, most of the arms we had in our possession were seized from the Japanese imperialists. At that time, a lot of revolutionary fighters had to sacrifice their precious lives to obtain rifles.

Our ancestors were unable to make a gun properly to repulse the enemy; that is why our people lost our country to the Japanese imperialists and suffered exploitation and oppression for 36 years. In the last days of the Ri dynasty, our rulers indulged in factional strife day and night and composed and recited poems about nature and squandered money on carving inscriptions in such places as Chongnyu Cliff. They did not form a strong army or develop weapons worth mentioning. They barely managed to fight with matchlocks while the Japanese were using guns and five-shooters. Therefore, they failed to check the Japanese invasion and, in the long run, our country was swallowed up by the Japanese imperialist aggressors.

Our working class who have power in their hands now, are of a different mettle from our ancestors who used to put on horse-hair hats and ride about on donkeys, chanting poems. They are not the kind who turn the right cheek forward after getting slapped on the left but a revolutionary class who hits back at the enemy. We have the people and brave youth who have risen up as one man to defend the country, and the workers and technicians who know how to make weapons by themselves.

The present situation demands that we further strengthen our armed forces. Japanese imperialism was vanquished but Japan has not yet been democratized. Moreover, the US imperialist aggressors are
entrenched in the southern half of our country in the wake of the Japanese imperialists. The Japanese did not give up their ambition to invade our country again; when they were being driven out, they said they would see us in twenty years. Therefore, if Japanese imperialism is revived, they can attack us again in the future. If they come, we will annihilate them once and for all lest they return home alive. We should also crush the US imperialist aggressors now occupying south Korea and reunify the divided country at the earliest possible date. So, primarily our armed forces must be strong.

From now on, we should make various good weapons in greater quantities for ourselves, so that our People’s Army and all the people can carry guns. When they all have indigenous weapons and are capable of shooting them, our defences will be stronger and the morale of the army and people will be higher.

In order to produce weapons for ourselves and arm the army and all the people, not one or two persons, but the whole masses of the people, should be made to bring their efforts and wisdom into full play. Koreans are more intelligent than any other people. If we believe in and enlist the strength and resourcefulness of our people, there is nothing we cannot do. We must intensify ideological work so that the masses of the people can rally firmly around the Party and Government and actively carry out Party policies.

All the workers, technicians and office employees of Factory No. 65 must not rest content with the successes already gained. You must strive continuously to produce more weapons of better quality and develop our munitions industry quickly.

It is necessary for you to increase production with existing machines and equipment by taking excellent care of the machines and raising your technical levels and skill. The Party and the state will certainly provide you with better machines in the future but, for the present, you should manufacture highly efficient weapons in larger quantities with the machines and equipment you have available now.

We are planning to build up our war industry around Factory No. 65. In future, your factory should become the main body and
cadre-training centre of our munitions industry. The shops which manufacture separate accessories should be developed into independent factories and, on this basis, more factories should be established.

Therefore, though it is important to make an abundance of weapons, it is still more important for Factory No. 65 to train many technicians and skilled workers who should be capable of organizing and directing the munitions industry which is to be expanded and developed in the future. Your factory should, from now on, employ a large number of good workers and seek to develop all of them into skilled workers and also train more technicians and management personnel. Then, Factory No. 65 will turn into a cadre factory, the mother factory of the munitions industry.

The factory’s leading officials should take good care of the workers’ living conditions. They should in particular provide them with a good hostel and dining room and build up the barbershop and other service facilities.

I hope that on your return you will inform all of your factory’s employees of the Party’s far-reaching plan to develop our munitions industry and of its expectations for Factory No. 65, so that they will make more strenuous efforts to produce more weapons and advance the nation’s war industry.
Dear friends,

This conference has been called for factory managers, chief engineers, engineers, assistant engineers and model workers who are best people in the industrial field playing the leading role in the national economy and for activists of trade unions and other social organizations. We are meeting to exchange advanced work methods and experiences gained in the course of implementing the target figures for the first year of the Two-Year National Economic Plan and to discuss matters conducive to rectifying shortcomings quickly and taking measures for the successful implementation of the national economic plan for the future.

Industry has a very big role to play in rehabilitating and developing the national economy. Therefore, the great tasks and duties assigned to you by the state and all the people are most solemn and serious. Their fulfilment is a guarantee for facilitating the country’s rehabilitation, development and prosperity.

With power in the hands of the people and the basic means of production turned over to the ownership of all the people, that is, nationalized, industry has made remarkable progress in the northern
half of Korea thanks to the earnest efforts of our working masses.

Factories and enterprises destroyed by the Japanese imperialists have so far been restored to some extent. Moreover, many new factories, enterprises and coal mines have been built. Thus, the output of manufactured goods went up by 89 per cent in 1947 as compared to 1946, and 44 per cent higher in 1948 as compared to 1947.

In many enterprises the number of advanced workers who have set good examples and displayed creative initiatives has increased. The workers and cadres making selfless efforts on the labour front have grown up to be hard cores capable of rebuilding and developing the country as the Democratic People’s Republic.

But we must be aware of the fact that there are grave shortcomings which hamper the development of industry considerably.

Taking a look at the implementation of this year’s production plan in the industrial sector, we find things very complicated. In some branches the output for the first nine months of the year showed a 50-60 per cent increase compared to last year, while in other branches the plan for increased production was only fulfilled by 20-30 per cent. Worse still, there are areas where the production increase was only 1-6 per cent.

For example, the coal industry showed only one per cent increase as against the planned 3.3 per cent, and the metallurgical industry attained 6.5 per cent as against the planned figure of 52 per cent, which is the worst result.

What does this complexity show and what is the reason for the lag in some branches of production?

As all conditions change in industrial development and new circumstances emerge, new methods of leadership are needed. In other words, new circumstances and conditions in the course of development of industry call for a new way of work. But some of our economic officials do not improve their work. They stick to the old methods. Some leading officials are very slow in learning the methods of production guidance. This is the main reason for the lag in many industrial branches.
First, let us look into the question of recruiting the work force. For decades in the past, unemployment, poverty and hunger compelled hordes of jobless workers and peasants to wander in search of jobs of any kind in factories, mines and other enterprises. This was not the only way used for recruiting manpower by Japanese imperialists in the past. They drove large numbers of people to workplaces forcibly and compelled them to work. Thus, the Japanese imperialists were able to exploit Koreans cruelly, using cheap labour to their best advantage.

Such conditions and circumstances have now changed completely. After the Japanese imperialists were expelled from our land, the people’s democratic system was established and, as a result, our peasants confiscated more than one million hectares of land from the landowners to make it their own property.

At present our peasants are not deprived of the food grain they have produced by anyone; they give a small part of it to the state as tax in kind and keep all the rest for themselves. So they have been free from the menace of famine for a long time. It is therefore quite a rare phenomenon now that labour force comes in of its own accord from the rural areas. Also the situation is such that the fast-advancing industry cannot rely on this rural labour force to satisfy its needs.

In the old days there were armies of jobless people who swarmed labour markets to get any kind of jobs, to escape starvation, just as they do in south Korea now. In the northern half of Korea today, however, the jobless have long disappeared and no hungry worker is to be found.

Therefore, now when things are radically different in the countryside and there are no jobless workers in towns, we can never hope for a labour force to come to factories and enterprises of its own accord.

Since there is no work force coming in voluntarily, it is vitally important to recruit manpower through organizational channels and see to it that existing workers settle down. Only when competent people who possess relevant production techniques and are
well-versed in the use of machinery are settled in their jobs, can industry be developed. Otherwise, we shall have to train workers every time they are recruited, which will entail waste of much time and funds.

However, the labour force does not remain steady in our enterprises. There is a lot of labour turnover. For instance, in the first nine months of this year a large number of workers were recruited by the metallurgical works, and also many workers left them in the same period.

This phenomenon is glaring in the Hwanghae Iron Works. The factory newly employed 700 workers last August, but more than 400 of them left in only two or three days because the manager did not provide housing and other amenities for them.

Who is to blame? The manager of the factory or the workers? The workers were not at fault. All the responsibility lies with the manager and the officials of the chapters of social organizations at the factory, who were not concerned about the people.

In spite of this, the manager of the factory grumbles loudly everywhere he goes, “We’re short of work force.”

The drifting labour at enterprises hinders the development of our industry, makes the fulfilment of production plans impossible, prevents the improvement of the quality of products, and hinders the reduction of costs.

What, then, is to be done to recruit manpower needed at enterprises and prevent drifting of the work force and make the workers settle down to their jobs?

Before anything else, it is necessary to introduce a proper wage system and give incentives to raise productivity at the enterprises. There must be a marked difference between payments to skilled and unskilled workers, for easy and hard work, and a relentless struggle must be waged against wage levelling. A piecework system should be introduced for workers in the basic labour branches. We can refer to many facts as to the advantages of this system. The time needed for one heating at the electric furnace of the Songjin Steel Plant had been
nine hours, but it became much shorter after the introduction of the piecework payment system, and the best workteams have reduced the heating time down to four and a half hours.

It is a great pity that such fine examples are scarce in our factories. Wages should be strictly in line with the energies spent by the workers; it is an established rule that a man who has produced more should be paid more.

In many of our enterprises, however, the piecework payment system is applied perfunctorily, so that the workers are not familiar with it. In many cases the workers are ignorant of their work norm for a shift and also of the pay they should get. The leaders and technical cadres of many enterprises are clumsy at setting wage rates.

The calculation of wages under the piecework system requires correct statistics regarding the fulfilment of work norms. Nevertheless, the technical cadres consider the statistical work superfluous and pay no attention to this. Of course, it is easier to pay wages according to work days than to make statistics of the amount of work done and calculate the wages payable individually. Discussions and acts designed to find out such easy ways are serious drawbacks which do great harm to the state and industry.

Proper setting of wages will raise the workers’ zeal for production and make it possible to increase labour productivity. If you organize work efficiently in this way, more people will be attracted to your enterprises from all walks of life and your work force will be further reinforced.

Right after the surrender of Japanese imperialism, we were unable to absorb each and every worker because our industries were not yet fully rehabilitated. So there were instances of skilled workers of productive enterprises moving to other fields of the economy and some politically backward workers becoming merchants with a view to earning an easy living. Those fellows who thus turned from workers into merchants have lost the feeling of honour for their sacred labour techniques and social status as the working class. They keep away from the material production for the prosperity of the country. We should
conduct explanation and information work for those who misconceived and left the labour front, so that they may return to their honourable workplaces to create the welfare of our country and people.

Along with preventing labour turnover, we should improve the working conditions of the workers. Our economic cadres and technical personnel are still very careless about this.

We still use manual labour much as before. The economic cadres pay no attention to mechanization when machines can be introduced to lighten heavy manual work. In some industrial establishments coal is carried on workers’ backs and not in the pushcarts they have. In many construction works it is considered a common thing that cement is mixed manually when mixers are available. If even such minor work is mechanized, a lot of labour can be saved and the released labour can be diverted to the basic branches of production. Mechanization of heavy work in productive enterprises will not only ease work, but also provide conditions for producing more with lesser manpower.

Workers should be provided with normal living conditions so that the manpower at enterprises may settle down. The Government of our Republic cannot tolerate the delay in the construction of houses and cultural facilities. We cannot let the workers of productive enterprises live in the same housing conditions as in the years of Japanese imperialist rule. The state appropriates large sums of money for the building of houses and cultural establishments. Therefore, economic cadres should strive to ensure the fulfilment of construction plans. Also commercial organizations should improve their work and supply goods preferentially to the industrial workers.

Further, productive enterprises should improve their labour protection arrangements. The Japanese imperialists did not care a straw about labour protection. During Japanese imperialist rule it was common for workers to be disabled or killed while working for no fault of theirs.

With power in the hands of the people, the work of labour protection should be improved to enable people in productive
enterprises to work in safety. All productive enterprises should have every possible safeguard for labour protection. The state is not sparing in money spent for labour protection. Therefore, the leading officials of productive enterprises must see to this and trade union organizations should tighten control on this matter. Only then can we prevent the drifting of labour at productive enterprises.

Secondly, our task is to establish definite order and discipline essential in all productive organizations, and a strict system of responsibility towards one’s assigned jobs. At present many enterprises lack order and have no clear demarcation of duties among the personnel.

Irresponsibility and evasion of individual responsibility are due to the fact that some cadres in economic establishments and social organizations are still ignorant of the principles of factory administration.

One-man management demands that everyone, from ministers down to the workers, take full responsibility for the whole course of work to ensure the fulfilment of plans in terms of quantity and quality. One must therefore evolve a style of work by which he carries out the instructions and orders of his superiors unquestioningly and punctually. The cadres should consult their subordinates, take their wishes and proposals into account and encourage their creative initiative.

Once the cadres have taken a decision, it must be carried out as it is without reservation. But this does not mean, on any account, that they are not checked even when they misuse one-man management, issue wrong orders and perpetrate illegal acts at random. If a factory manager acts wrongly, this must be reported to the higher authorities and he should be admonished for his wrong doings. All instructions and orders can be effective only when their fulfilment is verified from time to time.

One-man management should be put into practice in such a way as to improve the work of all productive enterprises and administrative establishments, ensure the implementation of plans, reduce the costs,
raise labour efficiency, eliminate the production of rejects and stoppage of work, economize in raw materials and other supplies, take good care of the equipment and organize work and coordinate wages efficiently. In order to carry out these important tasks it is essential to mobilize all workers and technical personnel and fully explore their initiative.

One-man management can be totally effective only when a strict code of labour discipline is maintained among all the technical cadres and workers. Therefore, the cadres should first set examples for all personnel through their own acts and by observing strict discipline. Fine instances of cadres observing discipline and setting examples are the manager of the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory who worked hard to carry out orders to increase the output of fertilizer by 40,000 tons, and the manager and chief engineer of the Suphung Power Station who took the lead, together with fine workers, and completed the “intake” project, overcoming difficulties in the water, at the risk of their lives, in the spirit of self-sacrifice and the love of state property.

One-man management and rigid discipline do not clash with the principles of people’s democracy. Successful growth of the national economy, particularly the development of industry in the Democratic People’s Republic, are possible only when the principle of one-man management and labour discipline are strictly observed. The state has entrusted cadres with great amounts of materials and, at the same time, it sternly demands that all cadres, whether high or low, protect the materials entrusted to them and make the best use of them in the interests of the state and people. This sense of responsibility and great, complex tasks can be realized only when the principle of one-man management and rigid labour discipline are established in all productive enterprises and administrative organizations.

During the 36 years of Japanese imperialist colonial rule the Koreans were kept out of the technical field. That is why it is very important for us to train engineers, assistant engineers and skilled workers.

The rehabilitated industries and newly built enterprises have
tremendous potentialities. But we fail to make full use of their great capacity.

In order to make the best use of the already-built precious facilities and available machinery and equipment, we need skilled workers and engineers and assistant engineers who are capable of arranging production processes on the lines of modern science and technology. Therefore, our workers and technical personnel should constantly make both theoretical and practical studies of the technical processes of production. The working results of exemplary enterprises and the experience of their workteams and workers should be widely popularized.

The Ministry of Industry should take steps to impart a broad knowledge on accountancy, finance and production techniques to factory managers, chief engineers, shop managers and skilled workers.

Our state should raise quickly the people’s material and cultural standards in a short space of time.

In carrying out this important task the leading role should be that of the state-owned industries.

You must know that the growth of industry and success in enterprises depend largely on the leading personnel. In order to guide economic work properly, a cadre should become an expert and master of his work. Apart from arranging courses for the workers and technical personnel, the leading officials of enterprises should also make an intensive study themselves and make every effort to learn sciences and technology.

We should boldly promote and actively help in the development of such young people who serve the interests of the state faithfully, strive for progress and display creative initiative. After all, success in work depends on people who are well equipped with production techniques.

Progress in industry demands strict order in the use of raw materials and other supplies. Our economic cadres are not yet aware of the importance of this point and have yet to learn to value the state
resources as much as they should. You must know that saving even a small quantity of materials and funds in every enterprise will amount to a bulk of additional resources for the whole country. For example, a one per-cent cut in the costs of products, though seemingly insignificant, will amount to some 200 million won for the whole Ministry of Industry.

We should step up the campaign for economization. In all industries raw materials and other supplies, fuel, electricity and tools should be saved and cheaper materials used in place of the more expensive ones. Standards of consumption should be fixed for all kinds of raw materials and other supplies and statistical work should be conducted so as to supervise their implementation effectively. Not only managing staffs and technical personnel but producers themselves should be familiar with these norms.

There must be no break in the operation of factory equipment and facilities and no mechanical accident. Nor should the standard of products be allowed to go down. This is essential for raising the quality of products, reducing the costs and carrying on production smoothly. We must find out the exact causes of accidents and energetically endeavour to prevent them. Those responsible for accidents and rejects should be made to face social trials.

All personnel should be taught to take a good care of state property as they would their own and protect it against damage, incendiarism and pilferage. This should be an important duty of the personnel of all establishments including economic agencies and social organizations.

Why so? This is because some people are still ignorant of the fundamental difference between Japanese-owned factories and enterprises in the past and the ones now placed under public ownership.

In the days of Japanese imperialism the means of production did not belong to the workers but were owned by the Japanese imperialists and used for intensified exploitation and oppression. So, the Korean workers, who were compelled by necessity to work for
the Japanese imperialists, would wreck machines and installations, produced many rejects and caused accidents very often. Their acts were quite justified and we praised them.

But today when factories and enterprises have become public property the relationship between ownership and labour has changed radically. The workers in state enterprises work for themselves and for the people, and everything turned out by the workers at enterprises is not pocketed by Japanese capitalists but is used to meet the needs of our people. Therefore, the more they produce in our factories, the faster the material standards of living of the people will rise.

We cannot tolerate mismanagement of and indifference towards factories and enterprises which have become the people’s property. This must be explained again and again to all who work at factories and enterprises.

An important thing in the struggle for economy is to make a good use of waste products from various production processes. The people feel the great need for commodities for daily use but the productive enterprises are making little effort to satisfy their demands. In the meantime, every factory has heaps of waste products which can be utilized in making daily necessities.

The State Planning Commission along with the Ministry of Commerce should draw up a list and determine the quantities of items of daily necessities to be processed from waste materials from each enterprise, and take steps to start production in the first quarter of next year.

In spite of unfavourable weather conditions this year, agriculture has fulfilled its tasks of providing food to the people and feeding the industries with raw materials, thanks to the tireless efforts of the peasants. Moreover, it has enabled the state to build up a stock of rice for emergency and increase food rations to workers of certain categories. For instance, we have been able to raise the food ration for smelters at blast furnaces to the first grade and raise the grades of food ration for other categories of workers, too.

The Ministry of Industry should organize sideline husbandry in
enterprises and install labour supply departments as soon as possible in order to supply the workers with better foodstuff. Thus, every enterprise should have a sideline husbandry to supplement the livelihood of workers. At the same time, enterprises should increase mess rooms and build them well.

Industry should supply farm implements and fertilizers to agriculture to simplify farm labour and increase the output. To this end, an extensive use should be made of waste products to turn out a large quantity of ploughshares, spades, sowers, fertilizers and other products.

We should organize an emulation drive for increased production on a mass scale which is the most effective way to improve the work of enterprises. The chief executives of some enterprises are still indifferent about this. They regard the drive for increased production as something which relates to trade unions only and pay no attention to it. The executives of our enterprises should organize the emulation for increased production in cooperation with trade union organizations.

We should see to it that widespread emulation for increased production gets under way between all enterprises, between workshops, workteams and among workers. Emulation can be fruitful only when it is not formalistic, its commitments clearly stated, the fulfilment of the commitments verified regularly, and results of the drive brought up for discussion at meetings.

Good workers and workteams should be warmly praised in workshops and factories, widely publicized in the press and their work experience introduced extensively to all fields.

Trade unions should play a big part in this context. In our Republic where power is in the hands of the people and factories and enterprises are the people’s property, the activities of trade unions should be revamped in the interests of the state and the people.

Trade union organizations should strengthen the work of mobilizing the masses for fulfilling the state plans and educate them in the spirit of loving state property and valuable materials.
These organizations should strive to tighten labour and production discipline.

They should organize a large-scale emulation drive for increased production among the masses, coordinate the work of introducing and publicizing efficient workers through the press and various other means of information work and methods, and call conferences on production in factories and workshops.

The Government will grant necessary funds for rewarding best enterprises, workshops, workteams and workers. Trade union organizations, together with the chief executives of the enterprises, should try and use these funds properly for the work of giving rewards, which will be an important way for the enterprises to improve their work.

Trade union organizations will have to pay attention to raising the cultural standard of workers, and see how the Labour Law and the regulations on labour protection are being observed. They should be capable of not only sound criticism but also self-criticism whenever shortcomings are found in work.

As you see, under the conditions in which power is assumed by the people, the task of economic establishments and trade union organizations is to attain one goal—consolidating the Republic, making it rich and strong and improving the material well-being and cultural standard of all the people.

In order to improve all types of work in industries, we should carry out the following tasks in the near future:

1. In view of the new circumstances of work, the enterprises should introduce a fundamentally different method in the recruitment of workers. In this matter, they should discard expecting the workers to come of their own accord, but should correctly apply the piecework system, improve housing conditions and supply goods to the workers on a priority basis. This would create conditions for a comfortable life for workers who will join the enterprises. They should also take steps to prevent the workers already on the payroll from leaving for other jobs.
2. Enterprises should improve the organization of work and tighten labour and production discipline.

3. Skilled workers, engineers and assistant engineers should be secured for industries, and technical education should be imparted to economic cadres to enable them to conduct their work in a modern way.

4. Ingenuity and creative ability of the masses should be fully encouraged, and competent people should be trained in the process of production.

5. Strict measures of economy should be introduced everywhere as a means of additional resources for the state and also as the primary factor in reducing the costs of products.

6. Enterprises should take steps to produce articles of daily necessities, and expand the production of various farm implements and fertilizers for agriculture on a large scale.

7. In order to accelerate the pace of industrial development further, production emulation embracing the broad masses should be conducted on a wide scale and the activities of trade union organizations should be channelized energetically in this direction.

8. Criticism and self-criticism should be further encouraged. This is one of the means of eliminating bureaucratism, slackness, evasion of responsibility and irresponsible attitude in work and educating the masses of the people in the spirit of protecting the interests of our state.

9. In our country there are elements hostile to the state. They are not only indifferent to the development of industry but are attempting to hinder its development and consolidation of the state by every possible means like go-slow and sabotage, by relying on the reactionaries in south Korea. Therefore, we should learn to detect the enemy in whatsoever disguise by sharpening vigilance, and crush his underhand schemes by strengthening the organs of people’s power. We should tirelessly inculcate in the people a hatred for the enemy.

We have every possibility of improving our work substantially. When employees in railway transport fulfil their state plans every
month, there is no reason why the industrial workers should fail to work as well.

Industry is the leading sector of the national economy. Successful progress in all branches of the national economy depends on the development of industry. All personnel in the industrial sector should be deeply conscious of their responsibility to the people and the state and know that they are duty bound to improve their work, and should do so.

Our task has become really momentous. By adopting the new methods in work, we should guarantee the fulfilment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan under all circumstances.

The US imperialists and their lackeys, the Syngman Rhee clique, are creating havoc with the national economy and turning south Korea into a commodity market for American imperialism. Thus, the jobless number millions and the people in the southern half are as wretched as ever, poor and hungry.

Only when we strengthen the foundations of our economy which will decide the future of our nation, will we be able to improve further the material standard of living of the people in the northern half, rescue the people in the southern half and rehabilitate the ravaged economy rapidly. Therefore, we should make further efforts to improve our work in keeping with the new circumstances and changed conditions.

Dear friends,

Since power is in the hands of the people and all the people are united firmly around the Government of the Republic with the rich natural resources in the country, we will overcome whatever difficulties and win victory without fail. Let us all move forward towards victory.
CONCLUDING SPEECH AT THE SECOND PLENARY MEETING OF THE CENTRAL COMMITTEE OF THE WORKERS’ PARTY OF KOREA

December 18, 1949

Comrades,

For several days we have discussed various important problems. The present plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee is the first of its kind to consider important problems in earnest over so many days. In the meeting many comrades made enthusiastic speeches. This points to the great progress our Party has made in its work.

Since many problems have been discussed in the report and the speeches, I would only like to emphasize a few points.

As many comrades mentioned in the present plenary meeting, a sharp antagonism exists between the reactionary and the democratic forces on the international arena. But the international situation as a whole is developing in our favour. As the days go by, the democratic camp is growing in scope and strength and the peace movement is forging ahead on a worldwide scale.

The current international situation convinces us that if the democratic forces of the world take a united action, they can crush the hostile provocations of the imperialists and prevent war.

We are by no means afraid of war. If the imperialists unleash war, this will precipitate their ruin. Historical experience has proved this.
World War I gave birth to the socialist state of the Soviet Union, and World War II resulted in the establishment of people’s democracy in many European and Asian countries and the victorious revolution in China. Now, should the imperialists unleash a third world war, it will be the deathbed of world imperialism. Convinced of victory we should step up the struggle against the imperialists, the warmongers.

The change in the international balance of forces and the struggle between democracy and reaction are reflected in the situation of our country, too. As on the international front, the present situation in our country is developing very favourably. Under the favourable conditions at home and abroad our Party should consolidate the democratic base of the northern half of Korea, and further strengthen the work of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea to closely unite people from all walks of life. If this is done, we will be fully able to frustrate the sinister schemes of the Syngman Rhee clique to start a fratricidal war and achieve the peaceful reunification of the country. Therefore, we must further strengthen our democratic base and carry on the work of the DFRK boldly and in a scrupulous manner.

Of importance in strengthening the work of the DFRK is building up unity and cohesion among the working masses, which form its nucleus. The reactionaries are most terrified of the unity of the working masses and viciously attempt to disintegrate them. Graphic evidence of this is the machination of the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique to prevent the merger of the Communist, New Democratic and People’s Parties in south Korea.

We must quash all the obstructive moves of the reactionaries and further strengthen the unity and cohesion of the working masses.

In the northern half of Korea all the working people have already been firmly united under the leadership of the Workers’ Party. We should make this unity and solidarity of the working people even more unshakable and constantly enhance their fighting capacity.

In the southern half of Korea it is essential to take advantage of all the possibilities of legal activities to win over the working people
who are presently under the influence of the reactionary organizations while energetically carrying on the struggle against the US imperialists and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique. Simultaneously, it is necessary to strengthen the lower-level unity with the working people belonging to other parties, and thus keep them away from the influence of feudal and bourgeois ideas.

Work in the industrial field should definitely be improved.

At this plenary meeting criticism of the work in the industrial field has been weak, but this does not mean that there are no drawbacks in this area. At present there are many shortcomings in the industrial sector which must be corrected without delay. In particular, light industry and capital construction have many drawbacks.

Take the production of fabrics for example. In order to meet the shortage of cloth the state has even organized the hand-weaving of cotton cloth. Nevertheless, the Sariwon Textile Mill is operating only in two shifts. The officials of the light industry management bureau of the Ministry of Industry, however, take no steps to organize work in three shifts in this factory.

At present the construction industry has no master to be called as such. People in the field of capital construction have started works everywhere without any order of priority. They are even carrying out construction projects without blueprints. At the Unsan Mine, for instance, they have even set about building cableways before prospecting for and locating the mineral deposits. This year many projects have been started, but they have been left unfinished because of the shortage of engineers and materials. Since construction works have been widely started only to be left half finished, precious state funds have had to be frozen to cause a tremendous loss to the state. This is a very serious lapse.

In some rural areas civil service offices are erected first instead of schools and hospitals. In Nyongbyon County, North Phyongan Province, work has been prematurely started on a bridge while the construction of the school in the settlement of the Ryongmun Coal Mine is neglected. This school must be built first because 80 per cent
of its pupils are sons and daughters of the workers. Nevertheless, it has been left out of the construction plan altogether. To build decent schools in the county seat while neglecting the construction of a school in the coal mine settlement means that the officials have a wrong approach to the workers. Take road construction for example. Instead of constructing those roads which are urgently needed, they are building ones which they can dispense with for the time being.

The poor show in the industrial field today is due largely to the failure of the Ministry of Industry to give meticulous guidance to the factories and enterprises under it. The officials of this ministry, by way of guidance, point out only the faults to be found in the factories and enterprises, but remain inactive in taking steps to rectify them. They are also passive in finding timely solutions to the difficult problems arising in factories and enterprises. However active the production workers may be in industrial establishments, production will not do well if the Ministry of Industry fails to either give it proper guidance, or assistance to remove the bottlenecks promptly.

The hitch in the work of the industrial sector is indeed due to the poor guidance given by the Ministry of Industry, but the responsibility also lies with the Party organizations which pay little attention to the development of industry. Party organizations at all levels including the provincial Party committees are little concerned about the factories and enterprises. Even when production is hampered due to manpower shortage at the industrial establishments, the Party organizations do nothing to help in the matter. The officials of the Labour Department of the Party Central Committee, and of the Party Committee of the East District of Pyongyang, have not gone out even once to see how things are at the construction site of the Pyongyang Textile Mill, the biggest factory in East Pyongyang. For that matter, they have not had a single article about its construction work published in newspapers.

If the Ministry of Industry and Party organizations at all levels do their work in this manner, industry cannot be developed. Without developing industry we can neither bring out the superiority of the
people’s democratic system nor strengthen the worker-peasant alliance. The development of industry is the only way to give fuller play to the superiority of this system. The alliance between the workers and the peasants, too, can be further strengthened only when, after distributing land among the peasants through the agrarian reform, we develop industry and supply them with farm implements, fertilizer and agricultural chemicals and sufficient quantities of their daily requirements. Therefore, everyone should strive for rapid progress in the industrial sector.

First of all, the officials of the Ministry of Industry should definitely improve their guidance of the affiliated factories and enterprises. The Minister, vice-ministers, management bureau heads and chief engineers should scrupulously guide the production activities at these factories and enterprises.

The officials of the Ministry of Industry should assume unified control and provide guidance to capital construction. In particular, the order of priority in this field should be correctly decided so as to concentrate forces on the major projects and thus complete them one by one.

The problem of manpower must be resolved. We cannot hope to bring manpower from other countries to fill up its shortage. The officials concerned must take steps to meet the shortage by themselves.

Party organizations should also pay careful attention to developing industry. Party organizations at all levels, from the Central Committee down to the lowest echelon, should give effective guidance and help to industrial work.

The Democratic Youth League and Women’s Union organizations at the industrial establishments should enhance their role. It is said that the textile mills are now short of skilled and veteran workers. This is because married women leave their jobs for looking after their homes or move to other jobs. Therefore, the DYL and WU organizations at such establishments should intensify the education of the women to prevent this.
They say that there are now instances where some construction workers under the Ministry of City Management, receiving food ration and wages from the state, work only two hours for the state every day, and spend the rest of their time doing private jobs on the side, to earn extra money. The ministry and the Party organizations in this field should strengthen the education of the workers to eliminate such practices.

Distribution of goods should be improved.

At this plenary meeting many comrades criticized the work of the Ministry of Commerce, and their criticism is entirely correct. At present the officials of this ministry are working haphazardly.

This is why the state-run stores in Manpho have no stock of apples to supply to the people, whereas apples not disposed of as yet, are rotting in the storehouses under this ministry. Its officials are pleading shortage of transport as an excuse for their failure to supply the apples on time. But the fact is that the railways fail to carry more freight because there are not enough consignments. These officials do not take steps to make and sell noodles from the buckwheat piled up in the state storehouses. Take Pyongyang for example. There are only two state-run noodle houses in the city. This is all due to the lack of a spirit of service for the working people on the part of the commercial personnel.

They should rectify such shortcomings as soon as possible and decisively improve upon the distribution of goods, so as to make things easier for the working people.

Employment of hired labour should be restricted in the countryside.

As life in the countryside is becoming more prosperous, there are now peasants who use hired labour. It is true that since power is in the hands of the people and the working class plays a leading role, this practice will not present a great danger. But it will not do to overlook it; it must be duly restricted.

If we are to curb the employment of hired rural labour, we should cultivate in the rural population, in the rich peasants in particular, the
spirit of industry and, at the same time, induce them to spend their money effectively to build up their lives in a cultured manner, instead of using it for hiring labour or for doing trade. The trade unions, the Ministry of Labour and the Labour Department of the Party Central Committee should see to it that trade union organizations are formed among hired hands in the rural areas so as to conclude collective agreements with their employers, thus preventing the latter as far as possible from hiring work hands. The surplus rural manpower should be diverted to the state-owned factories and enterprises.

The People’s Army should be reinforced.

The DYL and WU organizations should intensify the education of the young people and encourage them to think it most honourable to serve in the People’s Army, so that they will join voluntarily. They should also be kind and look after the families of the People’s Army, so that the soldiers put their heart and soul into military service without worrying about their families.

The combat and political training of the soldiers should be intensified. The central theme for training this winter should be the improvement of the officers’ art of leadership.

The Cabinet has recently decided to set up an institute of political economy as a study-while-working college to raise the political and theoretical levels of the cadres. This institute must be operated efficiently to quickly improve the political and theoretical qualifications of the cadres. In the future this institute should be turned into a reliable centre for training cadres in political theory.

I hope that you will all work hard to carry out the tasks advanced at this plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee.
TOWARDS EXPANDING AND STRENGTHENING THE AIR FORCE

Talk with Servicemen at the Graduation Ceremony
of Fliers and Ground Crew of Unit No. 867
of the Korean People’s Army
December 18, 1949

Today I warmly congratulate the fliers and ground crew graduating from the military personnel training regiment and offer my thanks to the commanding officers and teaching staff who have brought them up to be good air and ground crews.

This is the first time that we are training and sending out fliers from our own educational establishment. Even though you have trained them for the first time, you have done your work well without any accident.

It seems only recently that we discussed the question of building an air force for the new Korea, but we already have one now consisting of new planes, and able air and ground crews. This is indeed great progress.

Our young hawks are really intrepid and clever. Within a short period of time they have learned to fly new planes solo and have mastered the art of shooting and bombing. Today our airmen demonstrated air-to-ground shooting very well. They put up a very good show. For the first time in the history of our nation we have mastered the skills of piloting planes, making air sorties and carrying out the bombings by ourselves. How splendid this is!
In the past the Japanese imperialist aggressors refused to teach aeronautics to Koreans who, they alleged, were stupid and unfit for aviation.

Nevertheless, through practice we have upset their “theory” that describes aeronautics as something special. Within a very brief span of time we have trained the sons and daughters of the workers and peasants to become capable fliers and ground crew. Indeed the people’s wisdom is immeasurably great, and there is nothing that is beyond the power of the workers and peasants.

Today the equipment of our air force is excellent. Our planes are fitted with more efficient weapons than the enemy’s planes, and our bombs are powerful. Our People’s Army has far better weapons now than those we had during our anti-Japanese armed struggle. In those days we had neither planes nor modern weapons. At that time even the Japanese imperialists did not have weapons of such superior quality as ours are today.

Our success in the building of an air force is really great. But we can never rest content with this. No matter how great our success may be, we have just trained only those who will play a central role in expanding and developing our air force in the future. Our air force has just taken the first step, and our flying skills can be likened to that of a little child finding its feet.

We should expand and strengthen the air force quickly and develop our flying skills further. True, this is a very complex and difficult task requiring large sums of money. But our Party spares no pain in expanding and strengthening the air force in order to staunchly defend our country.

We are going to set up an air force personnel training unit and an air force combat unit separately, so that we can send out more graduates at a time.

In this connection, the commanders of the air force and the comrades who are graduating today, have many tasks ahead of them. Greater efforts should be made by you to train a larger number of air and ground crews at a quicker rate.
It is by no means an easy task to learn aeronautical techniques. No one, whether it be the commanders or you who are graduating today, should rest satisfied with the skills already acquired. On the contrary you should continue to study hard the advanced aeronautical techniques and tirelessly improve your technical qualifications.

In order to train air and ground personnel faster and improve the flying skills of the pilots, it is necessary to train them more intensely. In training concentrated attention should be given to improving marksmanship and to becoming skilled in taking closely concerted action with the infantry. When conducting the air-to-ground shooting practice, it will be better to use live cartridges against life-like targets. Only then will the fliers gain confidence in shooting.

At present only one airfield is used in training with different types of planes, and this presents many difficulties. Other existing airfields should be put into good shape quickly and new ones built.

The combat readiness of the air force should be further intensified. The American imperialist aggressors who are now occupying the southern half of Korea, and their faithful stooges, the Syngman Rhee puppet clique, are madly trying to wreck our achievements in the building of democracy in the northern half of Korea. The air force has the onerous duty of firmly defending the skies of our motherland against such aggressive attempts of the enemy. You should always maintain a high standard of military vigilance and keep yourselves fully prepared to meet and fight bravely against the enemy’s attacks at a moment’s notice. It is essential to properly maintain all the combat equipment and materiel including airplanes at all times and to build adequate oil tanks so as to store enough fuel oil.

The air and ground crews should take proper care of their planes and other combat equipment and materiel as if they were the apples of their eyes. All the equipment and materiel including the aeroplanes which are at your disposal now have been obtained at the cost of precious blood shed by the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters and at the expense of our people’s sweat and blood. Therefore, you must build hangars quickly to protect the airplanes against rain and snow
and handle all combat equipment and materiel with care.

In future we should expand the cadre ranks of the air force and improve the quality of their composition. It is essential to strengthen the Party life of the cadres and step up their ideological education energetically. For the personnel of the air force who handle airplanes personally it is vitally essential to strengthen their ideological preparations. If you are ideologically sound, acquiring technical skills will come quite easily to you.

In ideological education great attention should be paid to enhancing the class consciousness of the air and ground crews. The US imperialist aggressors who are occupying and lording it over the southern half of Korea are the sworn enemies of our people, and the puppet Syngman Rhee clique who are their minions are never-to-be-pardoned quislings who have sold out the southern half wholly to the US imperialists. In intensifying class education, we should inspire all our air force personnel with a revolutionary determination to fight the national and class enemies to the bitter end.

The airmen are a precious asset to us. The air force commanders should look after the fliers well, seeing that no inconvenience is caused in their lives. They should regularly provide the fliers with good foodstuff, for instance, and ensure that the air force stores are stocked with large quantities of high-quality goods.

The ground crew, too, should be well clothed so that they are not cold, and their well-being should always be seen to.

I wish you greater success in your future work of strengthening and developing our air force.
Today I would like to talk about some tasks before writers and artists at the present time.

The present situation at home and abroad is very complex. On the international scene the conflict between peace-loving democratic forces and imperialist reactionary forces is getting more intense.

The peoples of the Soviet Union, a socialist country, and of the People’s Democracies, are waging a vigorous struggle in the cause of world peace and security against the war manoeuvres of imperialists. The national liberation struggle against colonial oppression and exploitation, and the movement of the working class to break away from the chains of capital are fierce in many countries.

Oblivious of the historic lessons of World War II and dreaming of dominating the world, the imperialists are now working by all means to start another world war and to plunge mankind into its horrors.

In particular, US imperialism, which emerged imperialist boss after World War II, has made pronounced attempts to unleash a new war, along with intensified exploitation and plunder of the people at home, in order to achieve its aggressive aims. The US imperialists have set up military bases all over the world, rigged up various types of military blocs, such as the North Atlantic Treaty Organization, and are building up forces of aggression by bringing together the
reactionary forces of their satellite states. Moreover, in violation of the international agreements, they are reviving West Germany and militarist Japan. They are plotting to break up People’s Democracies from within by smuggling spies, wreckers and saboteurs into these countries.

Mercilessly suppressing the international working-class movement and the movement for peace, the US imperialists are making use of all the press media available to justify war and aggression.

All this shows how frenziedly the imperialist reactionary forces are preparing for another war.

The US imperialists are openly manoeuvring to start a new war in our country, too.

In order to realize their sinister plans of turning our country into a colony, they are tightening their colonial rule in south Korea and, at the same time, stepping up war preparations to invade the northern half of Korea. The US imperialists and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique are together intensifying fascist suppression and plunder of the south Korean people more than ever. They are continuously introducing lethal weapons into south Korea and committing armed skirmishes along the 38th parallel. In short, the situation in our country today is so tense that a war may be sparked off by the US imperialists and traitorous Syngman Rheites at any moment.

The prevailing situation at home and abroad demands that all the people always live and work in a tense situation and be ready for mobilization. Writers and artists, in particular, should step up their literary and artistic efforts as required by the situation.

However, they are failing to keep up their creative activities as required by the situation. Many of them are ignorant of the reality and the Party’s political demands at the present moment. They are carrying on their activities merely to entertain. Some are engrossed in praising the beauty of nature, oblivious of the lesson taught by history–that the feudal rulers of old frittered away their time doing nothing but riding donkeys and reciting poems, only to spell ruin for the country. This is apparent in their recent works. Our writers and artists should stop
trying to recite poems, sing songs or create works interspersed with
flowery words. These are all devoid of the revolutionary spirit and
serve only to entertain. However full of frills, a work which fails to
reflect the needs of the time and the people is useless.

Literature and the arts are one of powerful means of political and
ideological education of our Party. Therefore, writers and artists
should become defenders of and spokesmen for the interests of our
Party and people. They should be warriors who educate the people
and defend the Republic.

The writers and artists should be fully aware of the Party’s
political demands and the trend of the situation and make their
activities fall in line with them.

What, then, are the important tasks before the writers and artists at
the present time?

First, they should direct great efforts to portraying the struggle of
the working people, including the workers and peasants who are
performing heroic feats in their endeavours to carry out the national
economic plan.

Portraying their heroic struggle is the most important duty of our
literature and the arts. The working people are the masters in the
building of a new, democratic Korea. Success, in the cause of building
a prosperous, completely independent and sovereign democratic state,
depends entirely on how we organize and mobilize them.

All means of political and ideological education in the hands of
our Party should make a positive contribution to mobilizing the
working people for carrying out the great task of nation building, and
should serve them. Literature and the arts are not exceptions. By
depicting the proud struggle of the working people for building a new
society, they should arouse them actively to the cause of nation
building and should faithfully serve them.

At present our writers and artists fail to produce many works
which delineate the struggle of the working people, who have turned
out to accomplish the cause of nation building. Their works are at a
very low level of artistic representation. Many of them are only bent
on producing works on historical themes, and are hardly interested in handling the burning, contemporary realities as their themes. It is true that historical themes are also necessary, but it is of still greater importance to produce works reflecting the pulsating realities of today.

In a short period of slightly more than four years, our people under the wise leadership of the Party have achieved great success in building the nation since liberation.

By establishing a people’s government for themselves and triumphantly carrying out democratic reforms, our people set up a progressive system of people’s democracy firmly in north Korea and laid a solid democratic base for the country’s reunification and independence.

In September last year, the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea was established, a genuine people’s power, with the participation of all the people in north and south Korea. With the establishment of the Republic, our people became proud citizens of a sovereign state, for the first time in their history, and are now in a position to intensify the struggle for the reunification and independence of the country as well as building up a new society under the banner of the Republic.

Today all the people, with a sense of unbounded pride and self-respect as citizens of the Republic deep down in their hearts, are making every effort for the prosperity and development of the Republic.

Our workers are making vigorous endeavours to fulfil the Two-Year National Economic Plan ahead of schedule. The workers in the iron industry have restored completely blast furnace No. 1 of the Hwanghae Iron Works and coking oven No. 2 of the Chongjin Iron Works by bravely overcoming the difficulties and hardships that lay ahead of them. Thus large quantities of iron and coke are being produced. The workers in the machine-building industry pooled in their wisdom and strength in advancing new ideas and proposals and introduced advanced technical skills, thus constantly increasing productivity of labour.
Peasants who are now masters of their land are making patriotic endeavours to increase grain output. Model peasants including Kim Je Won in Jaeryong County, Hwanghae Province, continue to raise grain yields by improving the soil and introducing advanced methods of farming. In doing their farm work well and gathering a rich harvest every year, our peasants have solved the country’s food problem.

Through the devoted and laborious endeavours of our people, the Two-Year National Economic Plan is being carried out successfully and the democratic base of the northern half of Korea is consolidated further.

Many innovators of labour are emerging amidst the solemn struggle to build a new society. Their great services will be remembered long by generations to come.

The life of the people, pulsating with the efforts for carrying out the Two-Year National Economic Plan ahead of time and building a new society, provides in itself a canvas of epic. Writers and artists should depict such heroic efforts of our working people proficiently in novels and stories, poems, films, plays, dances, fine arts and various other kinds of literary and art works.

What needs attention in works of literature and art, portraying the endeavours of the working people, is to give a good artistic representation to their noble spiritual and moral features. Writers and artists should depict the beautiful and noble spiritual and moral traits of the working people well. The patriotic zeal and mass heroism displayed by them, and the feelings of honour and pride as working people cherished by them deep in their hearts, their ardour for increasing production and their revolutionary comradeship should find expression. In other words, they should explain through the medium of artistic representation the motivating power of the great social and economic changes taking place in our country. This is essential for works of literature and art to fulfil their mission as effective means of political and ideological education by teaching the working people and arousing them in their effort to build a new society.
Secondly, writers and artists should produce a large number of works that portray the people in the southern half struggling for social democracy and national reunification.

At present people in the south are fighting dauntlessly against the US imperialists and their stooges for the right to live, for the cause of democracy, territorial integrity and national reunification. After the establishment of the Republic, in particular, their anti-US save-the-nation struggle has undergone a change. Looking upon the northern half of Korea as the beacon of hope, the patriotic youth and people of south Korea have taken up arms and are waging guerrilla warfare everywhere, thus dealing a heavy blow to the enemy. They are fighting courageously without being afraid of prisons and the gallows; in their dying moments, they shout slogans like, “Long live the complete independence and sovereignty of Korea!” and “Long live the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea!”

The righteous national-salvation struggle of the people in the southern half for the reunification and territorial integrity of the country will serve as an excellent subject for literature and art. It is the solemn duty of the writers and artists to produce works depicting their struggle.

Through numerous works representing this struggle, writers and artists should give a strong impetus to the struggle of the people in the south, inspire our people with a greater love of the country and hatred for the enemy. It would induce all the people to aid and support actively the struggle of their brothers in the south.

An important thing that must be emphasized in this respect is to represent profoundly the patriotic spirit of the south Korean people who love their country and nation warmly. The heroic struggle waged by them at the cost of their blood is an expression of their unanimous desire to crush the US imperialists and their lackeys, and enjoy a happy life together with their brothers in the north under the care of the DPRK. It is also a manifestation of their burning patriotism.

Robbed of their country by the Japanese imperialists in the past, our people lived the bitter life of a ruined people for 36 years, which
cut deep into their hearts. That is why the people in the southern half are fighting bravely against the US imperialist aggressors. They do not want to revert to the life of colonial slaves.

Writers and artists should portray vividly the selfless struggle of the people in the south for the country. It should be seen that both ideological content and artistic expression are maintained.

Another important thing to be kept in mind is to inspire the people with a burning hatred against US imperialism, by exposing its true nature and its acts as an aggressor.

US imperialism is the most heinous enemy of our people. For over a hundred years the US imperialists, with a wild desire to invade our country, had carried on their aggressive activities. After liberation, they occupied the southern half of our country in place of the Japanese imperialists and have since then been making every attempt to turn the Korean people into their colonial slaves for ever. Taking advantage of fascist colonial rule over the southern half, the US imperialists are now plundering the people of their treasures and property, arresting, imprisoning and murdering numerous patriots and innocent people at random.

In their works the writers and artists should plainly expose the fact that the US imperialists are the craftiest and most ruthless plunderers and most cruel murderers. This should prevent the people from having the slightest illusions about, or pinning hopes on, US imperialism and encourage them to fight against it with determination.

While disclosing the aggressive acts committed by the US imperialists, they should at the same time acquaint the people clearly with the traitorous activities of their faithful minions, the Syngman Rhee clique.

Yet another matter that must receive attention in the handling of the struggle of the south Korean people on a literary and artistic level is to inspire the people with a firm confidence in the victory of their cause.

The enemy of the people in the south today is US imperialism, the chief imperialism. The south Korean people may encounter many
difficulties in their future struggle to drive out US imperialism and reunify the country.

The writers and artists must show convincingly in their works that if the patriotic people from all walks of life in the southern half form a strong, anti-US, national-salvation united front and fight to the bitter end by concerted efforts, nothing will stop them from emerging victorious.

By using various literary and artistic means to expose fully the bane of bourgeois ideology spread by the US imperialists and the reactionary and corrupting nature of the American way of life, the writers and artists should awaken the people politically and ideologically.

Thirdly, writers and artists should deal more with the People’s Army which is the genuine people’s armed forces in their works.

Producing numerous works which deal with the People’s Army is of great importance in educating the soldiers and working people and increasing the fighting power of its soldiers. Particularly, the tense situation prevailing in our country now calls for the production of more such literary and artistic works. Therefore, writers and artists should pay due attention to them.

What is important in this connection is to depict well the superiority of the People’s Army.

Our People’s Army directly carries on the glorious revolutionary traditions, built up during the anti-Japanese armed struggle. It is an army truly of the people, consisting of the best sons and daughters of the workers, peasants and other sections of the working people, along with veteran anti-Japanese guerrillas as its backbone.

The armed forces of the imperialist states defend the exploiting system for the tiny privileged classes, and suppress and exploit the working people who make up the overwhelming majority of the population, along with invading other countries. Unlike them, the mission of our People’s Army is to defend the country and the people against the invasion of the enemy and protect the system of people’s democracy and the achievements of democratic construction. The writers and artists should depict the superiority of the People’s Army to the armed forces of imperialist states well in their works.
It is also important to show the noble fighting spirit of the soldiers of the People’s Army.

As you all know, our People’s Army, though young, is fighting devotedly to defend the security of the country and the lives and property of the people. The soldiers of the Security Forces have foiled all provocative attacks by the enemy, displaying mass heroism and a self-sacrificing spirit in battles along the 38th parallel, including the battles on Kosan Hill, Mts. Songak and Unpha, and Kuksa Hill. They are defending every inch of our land with their blood. They have eliminated the Paekgol Unit and Horim Unit of the puppet army which had invaded certain territories of the northern half of Korea, killing innocent people and indulging in loot and demolition. This illustrates the noble fighting spirit and boundless fidelity to the country and the people of the soldiers of our Security Forces, who have inherited the revolutionary traditions set during the anti-Japanese armed struggle.

If writers and artists depict the great fighting spirit of the soldiers in their works, these will imbue the soldiers with courage and confidence in victory, contributing greatly to inspiring them to further military feats.

Creative works should also illustrate well the noble tradition of amicable relations between officers and men as well as between soldiers and civilians.

The soldiers of the People’s Army are sons and daughters of the workers and peasants, who have taken up arms voluntarily in order to defend the country and the people. Therefore, the officers and men of the People’s Army are all revolutionary comrades and fellow soldiers. So their relations are always permeated with militant friendship and warm revolutionary comradeship. The officers look after their men with warm comradely love, and the men respect and love the officers from the bottom of their hearts. This is a laudable quality characteristic to our People’s Army.

The kinship of the People’s Army with the people is now stronger than ever before. The soldiers defend the people’s lives and property with their own lives, and the latter love the soldiers as their own flesh
and blood and help them as best as they can.

In their works, the writers and artists should depict in depth such wonderful traditions of noble solidarity between officers and men and between the army and the people. This will be a positive contribution to further increasing the fighting capacity of the People’s Army and strengthening the kinship of the army with the people.

In order to fulfil their heavy responsibility satisfactorily, the writers and artists should acquaint themselves well with Party line and policy.

This is essential for them to be able to analyse and judge all matters and phenomena correctly in political terms and suit their creative activities well to the political requirements of the Party.

Writers and artists should intensify the studies of Party line and policy to equip themselves firmly with its ideology. They should broaden their political horizon constantly.

They should improve their creative skills. However high their patriotic zeal may be, they will not be able to produce works good enough to meet the requirements of the Party and the people, if they are qualitatively poor. So, they should improve their skills decisively by acquiring extensive knowledge on everything—politics, the economy, culture and military, and by making an intensive study of literature and the arts.

Delving deep into realities is an important method for the writers and artists to produce works of good quality. By maintaining a close contact with current events, making a detailed study of the life of the masses—the workers, peasants and soldiers, and personally acknowledging more of the pulsating realities, they should be able to produce impressive works that strike a sympathetic chord in the hearts of the masses, that are beloved by the masses.

I am convinced that writers and artists, working along the lines I have mentioned, will produce many good works from next year and thus contribute actively to educating the masses and the cause of nation building.
BE CADRES EQUIPPED WITH ADVANCED SCIENCE, TECHNOLOGY AND PATRIOTISM

Speech at the First Graduation of the Faculty of Physics and Mathematics of Kim Il Sung University

December 28, 1949

Comrades,

Today I am very happy that this sole university of our Republic is sending out its first graduates for the benefit of the country and the people. On behalf of the Government of the Republic, I would like to express my thanks to you, the president, vice-president and all other faculty members who have made great efforts in training our own cadres.

Let me also offer my warm congratulations to you graduates who have successfully completed the course at the highest academic institution in the Republic after making untiring efforts during the past four years and who are now going full of hope to workplaces to assist in building an independent and sovereign democratic state. I also offer my warm congratulations to all other students who are to be the future cadres of the nation.

As you know, the university was built by the people themselves after liberation. It has grown and developed along with our country and people.

In a few years since the establishment of the university, great changes have been made in all spheres of political, economic and cultural development in the northern half of our country. When it was
being founded there was not a single institution of higher learning in the northern half of Korea, but now there are 15 of them. This fact alone is enough to prove that tremendous changes and progress have taken place in the north and nobody can deny this.

Comrades,

There is a strong demand in the Republic for talented people. The Government of the Republic has paid the greatest attention to the task of training our own cadres.

Our country has now entered a new phase of historical development.

All the Korean people have risen up for the reunification and independence of their country and are waging a staunch struggle to build a genuine people’s state. The people in the northern half of Korea are struggling to fulfil the Two-Year National Economic Plan to consolidate the base for the building of a democratic country and to provide a firm economic foundation on which the future of the country and the nation rests. The people in the southern half are rising up in the save-the-nation struggle to oppose the persecution and slaughter by the US imperialists and their lackeys, the Syngman Rhee clique. They are rising to deliver the country from the colonial enslavement of US imperialism.

Indeed, making their own history is not a general concept but a practical task for our people now. They are creating a glorious history of building their country into a new, democratic nation.

The Korean people, freed from the chains of Japanese imperialist marauders, have embarked on the only right road in the struggle to make their history. They rejected the road to capitalism, the road to darkness and destruction, and instead chose the road of building a bright new society, along with the progressive people the world over. Namely, now they have embarked on the road of building up the Democratic People’s Republic, a new form of people’s state which represents the interests of the working class and all the rest of the working people and can develop our society to a higher stage. Considering the development of world history or the history of our
national liberation struggle, this is the only correct road which has been proved in practice.

In the northern half of the country great democratic reforms were already carried out victoriously. It does not matter to our people today whether ours is the right road or not. What matters is how to keep going along the only right path and how to quickly win greater victories on it.

One of the main tasks in solving this problem is to train talented people.

A people’s history does not develop smoothly towards its set goal by itself just because they have found and embarked on the right road for making history. In order to lead them along the right road and propel their advance, talented people who can struggle in defence of this course are required.

The building of a completely independent, sovereign state necessitates excellent cadres of our own in the political, economic, cultural, military and all other spheres, who are loyal to the country and people.

Training talented people takes on special importance because our country was under the protracted colonial rule of Japanese imperialism.

As a result of this barbarous colonial rule there are not many experienced native cadres left in Korea. Some branches have few cadres of our own. Therefore, ever since the first days of seizure of power and the building of a new form of state, our people have suffered hardships caused by the lack of technology and the shortage of trained personnel in the different political, economic, cultural and military spheres. These circumstances inevitably demand that our nation, more urgently than any other, train talented personnel.

The capitalist ideas which Japanese imperialism imbued our nation with against the latter’s will, are a great obstacle to building a new country. Liquidating these ideas poses an important problem which is inseparable from nation building. Therefore, training new
cadres is highly important in stamping out capitalist ideas and building a democratic state.

In the northern half of Korea the agrarian reform, the nationalization of major industries and other democratic reforms were already carried out and the national economic plans for 1947 and 1948 fulfilled. Now, the Two-Year National Economic Plan is being carried out successfully. As a result, in the north a great change has been made in the people’s life, conditions of industrial development changed entirely, and a new situation created. The new, changed circumstances require a new method of leadership and a new way of working. In particular, the rehabilitated industrial establishments and newly-built enterprises have tremendous potentialities, but we are not as yet in a position to make good use of them. If we are to maximize the effects of the priceless installations, machinery and equipment we already have, it is vital for us to have talented people who can organize and lead production at a high level by means of modern science and technology.

Our experience in building industries shows that only when we secure able people equipped with modern scientific knowledge and a high level of production technique, will we be successful in the industrial spheres. Therefore, throughout the industrial, agricultural, transport, cultural, military and other fields, we must overcome the scarcity of cadres quickly, develop our technology and have a sufficient number of able people who can operate modern machines.

In the Republic today talented people are by far the most precious asset. Accordingly, their training is the most important task facing the Government of the Republic.

The Government of the Republic has paid minute attention to strengthening the training of our own cadres, so as to supply the developing national economy with talented people. It is striving to develop the contents and methods of education at specialized schools and colleges up to the level of advanced countries as soon as possible.

It is by no means fortuitous that 15 institutions of higher learning were opened newly, where more than 10,000 sons and daughters of
the working people are learning advanced science and technology in the northern half of the country, whereas not a single college existed during Japanese imperialist rule. This is a result of the Government of the Republic paying utmost attention to the training of cadres; it is a success achieved through the active participation of the people and the devoted efforts of the educational workers.

Comrade graduates,

This is the only university in the Republic and the first university of the working people set up through the devotion and effort of workers, peasants, technicians and office employees.

Having completed the collegiate course, you are leaving today, as the honoured first graduates of the only university of the Republic, amid the welcome and expectations of the people.

You are the people’s intellectuals of a new type having close ties with the people and prepared to serve them wholeheartedly. You are Korean cadres who are equipped with advanced scientific theories before anybody else. However, you must not forget that your completion of the collegiate course means that you have undergone only the first trial. As far as the tempering of personnel is concerned, school is but a preparatory stage, your actual tempering will be out of school, in the course of actual work where you will have to defy and overcome hardships.

Instead of marking time, advancing steadily, filled with burning patriotic devotion and untiring patience, is the noblest quality builders of a new society should have. Even while working, you should always study assiduously and train yourselves tirelessly with burning zeal and confidence.

You have been prepared as competent specialists having acquired advanced theories on physics and mathematics at a high level. But this is not enough.

All our specialists must be equipped with advanced theories concerning their own fields and, at the same time, become faithful Marxist-Leninists who know the law of social development and can use it skilfully. They must become genuine patriots who share their
lot with the nation. They must also take an active part in the political affairs of the state.

I am pleased that you have passed the state examination with excellent marks on the subjects of political theories, and hope you will become cadres, who can put your theoretical knowledge learned at the university to practical use.

Comrades,

You are the beloved sons and daughters of Korea’s working people and a new type of native cadres from whom the state and nation expect a great deal.

Now, the Korean working people, along with the peoples of the socialist state of the Soviet Union and other People’s Democracies, are admirably shattering in practice the absurd allegation of the capitalists that only they can rule and run a state. You must take an active part in state affairs, thus crushing the capitalist allegation absolutely and demonstrating again in our country that only the working people can administer a state with distinction.

Most of you graduates will obtain the honourable posts of training new cadres. You should be keenly aware of the great significance of this work. You must devote all your talent and energy to training our own cadres, arming them with a new world outlook and advanced scientific knowledge and create a sound and militant atmosphere in our specialized schools and institutions of higher learning.

The US imperialists and their lackeys, the Syngman Rhee clique, are now manoeuvring to unleash a fratricidal war and all the Korean people are rising up in the struggle to frustrate their schemes. You must carefully observe the situation prevailing in our country, be prepared ideologically and be alert, so that you can go into action the moment the country and people call for you.

You must always remember that in the southern half of our country there are reactionary forces committing hostile acts against our Republic. You must heighten your vigilance still more and spot and expose totally their subversive activities.

At the same time, you should step up the work of cultivating
hatred against the enemy and patriotism for the democratic state, among our people. You should eradicate the narrow-minded nationalist tendency that hinders the country’s reunification and independence and educate them in proletarian internationalism.

Comrades,

The victories and successes achieved by our country and people are immense. Considering the work to be done by us, however, it is no more than just the beginning.

We have before us manifold hardships and trials which we must overcome at every step. You must not forget that genuine cadres are trained through contending with difficulties, and become staunch men facing any hardships fearlessly.

I hope you will actively display your creative initiative and patriotic devotion for the country and people and advance vigorously to win fresh victories.

In conclusion, I wish you good health and success in your work.
ADDRESS TO ALL THE PEOPLE
OF THE REPUBLIC ON THE OCCASION
OF THE NEW YEAR 1950

January 1, 1950

Dear fellow countrymen, brothers and sisters,

On the occasion of ushering in the new year 1950, on behalf of the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, I would like to offer my honour and best wishes to all of you who are struggling for the country’s reunification, independence and freedom.

Our people were unable to accomplish the cause of national reunification last year, on account of the US imperialists and their henchmen, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique. Nevertheless, they scored tremendous successes in their struggle to accomplish this cause. We roused all the patriotic and progressive democratic forces to the nationwide struggle to reunify the country and thereby completely isolated the treacherous Syngman Rheeites from all the Korean people. We carried out with credit the historic task of laying solid foundations of the DPRK by creating a powerful political, economic, military, and cultural base in the northern half of our country.

Last year the people in the north waged an august struggle to strengthen the democratic base. They were fully aware that because of the complicated situation of our country, only when they had a powerful democratic base in the northern half of Korea, could they secure national reunification and independence and territorial integrity at an early date.
Upholding the policy of the Government of the Republic, the people of the north conducted an intensive labour drive and succeeded in carrying out the assignments of the first year under the Two-Year National Economic Plan, overcoming all hardships and obstacles.

In all parts of the north, factories and mills were rehabilitated and newly built, road construction and irrigation projects were undertaken and cultural establishments and schools built through an all-people movement. The result was that the northern half of Korea changed completely in its appearance and the successes of democratic reforms already won, were further consolidated and developed.

The people’s material and cultural standards were notably enhanced, democratic order systematically established and the prestige of the Republic rose considerably both at home and abroad.

On the occasion of the new year, on behalf of the Government of the DPRK, I would like to extend my warm thanks to all the workers, peasants, office employees, intellectuals, entrepreneurs, tradesmen, handicraftsmen and people belonging to other social strata in the northern half of Korea. These people rose up last year in the struggle to reunify the country and strove to turn our northern half into a mighty political, economic, military and cultural base, a wellspring of fresh power for guaranteeing the victory of the democratic forces.

In the southern half of Korea, also, during the last one year, fierce struggles continued to reunify the country under the banner of the DPRK.

Under the manipulation of the US imperialists the treacherous Syngman Rheeites indulged in harsh fascist repression, despotism, terrorism and massacre against the patriotic, democratic forces. But the patriotic people in the south waged a vehement and dauntless national-salvation struggle against the US imperialists’ interference in its internal affairs and against their lackeys.

With weapons in hand our best sons and daughters in the southern half of Korea are carrying on guerrilla warfare against the traitors to the nation and for the sake of their country and people at the cost of
their lives; and the workers and peasants are rising in insurrection everywhere against the landlords, capitalists and marauders. Even among those of national conscience who are serving the puppet government organizations and the National Defence Army the tendency to resist the Syngman Rhee traitors is growing stronger.

The heroic national-salvation struggle of the people in the south is getting fierce; the insidious and brutally aggressive intentions and reactionary policies of the US imperialists and their running dogs, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique, are being laid bare to all the people and the complete isolation and downfall of the latter are drawing nearer.

In the name of the Government of the DPRK, allow me to offer my ardent New Year greetings and heartfelt thanks to the heroic guerrillas, the patriotic progressive-minded democrats and all the rest of the people in the south who have risen up in the struggle to save the nation, risking their lives for the country and the people, while faced with the enemy’s cruel repression and slaughter of our countrymen.

Dear fellow countrymen, brothers and sisters,

The US imperialists and their pawns, the pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation, have now converted the southern half of our country into a prison under their fascist police rule, where famine and poverty prevail and terrorism and massacre are rampant.

The treacherous Syngman Rhee band, who are isolated from all the Korean people and fear them, have turned down the just proposals made by the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea for the peaceful ways and means of reunification and are making every desperate effort to keep their remaining days with the support of the US bayonets.

Far from rehabilitating and developing our ravaged and bankrupt economy in the south, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique is handing over the industrial establishments and buildings raised at the cost of the blood and sweat of the Korean people to the pro-Japanese and pro-American elements, on the pretext of “disposing of enemy
property”. They are driving the people into the direst of straits, using various coercive means of plunder.

What is worse, the Syngman Rheeites are not only openly in collusion with the Japanese militarists, the sworn enemies of our nation, but are also overtly trying to unleash a fratricidal civil war. They are intrigueing and manipulating in every possible way to divide the patriotic, democratic forces and destroy the democratic construction in the northern half of Korea.

Dear fellow countrymen, brothers and sisters,

All the Korean people who are ushering in the new year today, are confronted with the sublime task of materializing territorial integrity and national reunification as soon as possible through a yet fiercer struggle against the US imperialists and the treacherous Syngman Rheeites.

The people in the northern half of Korea must sharpen their vigilance against the enemy as never before. They must endeavour to further consolidate and develop the successes already achieved in the democratic reforms.

Through the successful carrying out of the assignments during the second year of the Two-Year National Economic Plan, in the next twelve months, we must solidify the economic foothold of the state, improve the material and cultural standards of the people and strengthen the organs of the people’s power, the People’s Army, the Security Forces and the Public Security Corps. Thereafter, we will be able to further consolidate the political, economic, military and cultural basis for the building of a unified independent democratic state.

The political and economic officials working at state organs should strengthen the government bodies and endeavour hard to become competent leading personnel capable of organizing and guiding the work in their charge skilfully.

Workers and technicians in factories and mills must master working techniques and skills and make strenuous efforts to fulfil the production assignments given to them by the state.
The peasantry should produce more grain, so as to meet the state’s demands and improve their livelihood.

Teachers and men of culture and art should tirelessly endeavour to arm themselves with progressive ideas in order to serve the interests of the country and the people.

Students should strive to acquire advanced scientific knowledge so as to become excellent cadres as required by the state and people.

The servicemen of the People’s Army, the Security Forces and the Public Security Corps should improve their military techniques and be well acquainted with different weapons. Officers should be competent commanders, and soldiers should be capable of performing combat tasks quickly. All the military personnel should voluntarily abide by military discipline and be equipped with patriotic ideas for serving the country and the people. They will then be fully prepared, at all times, to dependably safeguard the victorious results of democratic reforms and annihilate the enemy at any moment, in response to the call of the country and the people.

With the uplifted banner of the Republic, all people in the southern half must intensify their heroic struggle to save the nation from the clutches of the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique and the marauders who encroach upon the independence and freedom of our country. To this end, they must further isolate the treacherous Syngman Rhee band, expose and foil every sinister move of the enemy to divide the united democratic forces. They must wage a widespread struggle for the country’s peaceful reunification everywhere, rallying as one man under the banner of the Republic, irrespective of their political view, religious belief and social standing.

Violence should be countered with violence. The people of the south must step up their uprisings against the repressive policy of the reactionaries and continue to aid the guerrillas both materially and morally and thus administer blows to the puppet regime from within and without.

The guerrillas who are bravely fighting the reactionaries with arms in hand must intensify their operations and expand their sphere of
activity. They should, at the same time, raise their combat efficiency, further reinforce and develop their units and strengthen their ties with the people.

Victory is in store for the Korean people who have risen in their just struggle for the reunification and independence of the country, freedom and democracy.

Let us march forward vigorously in this new year of 1950 to achieve new victories in the struggle for territorial integrity and national reunification.

Glory to the Korean people who advance towards fresh victories! Long live the reunified Korean people! Long live the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea!
LET US UNITE ALL THE PATRIOTIC, DEMOCRATIC FORCES FOR THE GREAT CAUSE OF NATIONAL REUNIFICATION

Speech at the Third Congress
of the Chondoist Chongu Party of North Korea
January 19, 1950

Esteemed representatives,

Having availed myself of this opportunity of participating in the Third Congress of your Party at the invitation of the Central Committee of the Chondoist Chongu Party of North Korea, I would like to extend warm congratulations to the representatives present here and to all other Party members.

As a member of the Democratic National United Front, the Chondoist Chongu Party of North Korea has, from its very inception, taken an active part in carrying out the democratic reforms in north Korea, supporting the political programme and policies of the people’s committee and has made a great contribution towards building an independent and sovereign democratic state.

Under the complicated situation created in our country immediately after liberation, your Party along with the Workers’ Party, gave positive support to the decision of the Moscow Three Foreign Ministers Conference. This is an international agreement to provide favourable conditions for the early realization of our country’s reunification and the building of an independent democratic state. Together with all the people, your Party rendered every possible
assistance to ensure success in the meetings of the USSR-US Joint Commission held twice, once in 1946 and once in 1947, and actively participated in the struggle against US imperialism and domestic reactionaries who were trying to wreck the commission.

As the US imperialists’ colonial enslavement policy became pronounced, there was an increasing danger of our country being permanently divided into north and south, and national reunification being delayed. Under this situation we were faced with the historic tasks of achieving the reunification and independence of the country, guaranteeing its democratic development, rehabilitating and developing the national economy and culture, and improving the people’s well-being by firmly uniting the democratic forces and laying a mighty democratic base politically, economically and culturally in the northern half.

In the course of fulfilling these historic tasks, your Party took an active part in forming the Democratic National United Front of North Korea led by the Workers’ Party, and endeavoured to put into effect the 20-Point Platform, together with all other political parties and social organizations under the front.

For four years after liberation we held democratic elections successfully on a number of occasions to strengthen the people’s committees, a people’s organ of power. All the people of north and south Korea founded with their own hands the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea which is the state power of the people, and established their central government so as to enable them to reunify the country at the earliest date and build an independent, sovereign democratic state that is wealthy and strong.

We carried out the great agrarian reform by confiscating land from the landlords and distributing it to the landless and the land-poor peasants on the principle of confiscation and distribution without compensation, thus eradicating the feudal system of landownership and opening up a way for the development of agriculture. We also speeded up irrigation projects in order to further improve the utilization of land and increase grain output.
We nationalized key industries which constitute the very basis of the economy in building up a people’s democratic state into a rich and strong one, and placed the factories and enterprises formerly owned by the Japanese imperialists and traitors to the nation, under the charge of the state and the people. With the factories and mills in the northern half belonging to the people, we were able to set about on building the foundation of the national economy for improving the people’s well-being.

We, together with you, fulfilled the national economic plans for 1947 and 1948 successfully. The result was that we rehabilitated the factories, mines and railways destroyed by the Japanese imperialists when they fled, and also built large numbers of new factories. Drawing on these achievements, we worked out the Two-Year National Economic Plan for 1949-50 and are now struggling to implement it gainfully.

All factory chimneys in our country are now sending up smoke showing just how busy the people are with an emulation drive for increased production. Irrigation projects and the construction of bridges and roads are being undertaken everywhere, and houses and hospitals are being built for the people.

In order to rehabilitate and develop our national culture, we set up thousands of primary and secondary schools and many colleges and specialized schools to train native cadres. In particular, we have made full-scale preparations in the past two years to introduce compulsory primary education from this year. As a result, we have built new schools throughout the country, and the sons and daughters of the working people who were denied schooling in the past, are now attending school.

The Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea is formed with the patriotic political parties and social organizations with millions of members. They are firmly united with the Central Government of the Republic, in order to wage a vigorous struggle to carry out its political programme and policies.

All this is the result of the efforts of all the members of your Party.
They were hand in glove with the democratic political parties and social organizations under the DFRK; and it is a victory won by our united efforts.

The democratic reforms and construction we have carried out with you in the northern half, are all for the country and the people and for the future prosperity of our nation. Accordingly, they are solid guarantees for strengthening the democratic base in the northern half of Korea and for achieving national reunification as soon as possible.

No one can deny the brilliant successes we have achieved in the north in the last four years after liberation. How can a man with a national conscience fail to see the stern realities of north Korea and not acknowledge that our cause is just and that the people’s strength is great? If there are those who shut their eyes to and deny this, they are only the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique throwing mud at our successes on purpose.

Dear representatives,

Though we have won great successes in the past, they constitute merely a foundation for national reunification. We have not yet wiped out the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique who are hindering the country’s reunification, nor have we liberated the people in the southern half.

The southern half of our country is under the fascist terrorist rule of police, and tragedies, unheard-of in our nation’s history, have taken place.

The traitorous Syngman Rhee clique have rejected the policy of peaceful reunification put forward by the DFRK and are manœuvring to unleash a fratricidal war. They torture and slaughter patriots and the rest of the people in the south at random and drive the people into an abyss of unemployment and hunger.

They have been selling by auction to the foreign invaders, mines and enterprises in the southern half, and are engrossed in shipping rice to Japan, while the people are suffering from hunger and starvation. As a result of this the price of rice in the south Korean market is now skyrocketing.
Moreover, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique have openly tried to associate with the Japanese militarists in killing their brethren and have sent Sin Song Mo to Japan to have secret talks with the Japanese imperialists. It is well known even to a child that Syngman Rhee is selling out the country to greater detriment than Ri Wan Yong did.

Syngman Rhee assembled the pro-Japanese elements and national betrayers and is slaughtering south Korean people with the bayonet of US imperialism. This fact is fully known to all the Korean people and people all over the world.

All the Korean people are deeply indignant at the Syngman Rhee clique’s treacheries and barbarities of killing their fellow countrymen, and are carrying on a widespread struggle to save the nation against them everywhere.

Dear representatives,

The worse the situation in south Korea, the more responsible and important are the tasks of our patriotic political parties and all the Korean people.

We should put up a fiercer resistance for national salvation, in order to sweep away the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique who are making desperate efforts being themselves on the verge of ruin. We should oppose the interference in our internal affairs by the UN Commission on Korea, which is an aggressive tool of the US imperialists, and frustrate their sinister intention to obstruct national reunification. At the same time, we should ensure that the democratic forces are united more solidly irrespective of their property status, political view and religious belief, so as to reunify the country at an early date.

Our country cannot achieve its reunification due to such uninvited guests as the UNCOK. It must be reunified only by the Koreans themselves.

To this end, we should further consolidate politically, economically and culturally the democratic base in the northern half of Korea, which is a powerful material guarantee and foundation for national reunification.
In order to achieve a greater unity than before, we should bring together under the DFRK, everyone who wants national reunification regardless of their social standing, and realize the solidarity of all patriotic, democratic forces. We should also actively support the Central Government of the Republic which has been set up by our own efforts, and strive to enforce its political programme and policies in the whole of Korea.

You should keep up the same patriotic spirit displayed in the struggle for democratic construction in the past four years after liberation, and educate all your members more intensively in progressive democratic ideas. On the other hand, you should expose the ruse of the south Korean reactionaries to split the democratic forces affiliated with the DFRK, and wage a merciless struggle against all the attempts and inclinations of reactionaries. These reactionaries locate themselves in our democratic political parties and instigate the feudalistic die-hards and backward elements still remaining in the parties to disorganize our united democratic forces and check the advance of the people along democratic lines. Therefore, we should consolidate our democratic camp further.

Upholding the political programme of the Government of the Republic, you, together with all other people, should be active in thoroughly carrying out state laws, decisions and policies and, for the present, you should mobilize all your Party members for fulfilling the Two-Year National Economic Plan. They should be made to discharge their duties as citizens in the work of construction for raising the people’s material and cultural standards, and to understand more clearly through actual experience that the people’s democratic system is, indeed, a system which is in the interests of the people.

As you have already experienced in the four years of democratic construction, ours is the only correct road, one that enjoys the people’s support and is for the country and the people. We will have to stand firm on this road without the slightest vacillation and traverse it dynamically along with the people.

We will surely win victory if we take this approach. That is
because this is the road to patriotism and democracy, the people’s road. History has already proved clearly that anyone who follows steadily along the people’s road will emerge victorious without fail.

The Soviet Union which follows the people’s road under the leadership of the Bolshevik Party has not only destroyed all exploiters on its vast land, which is one-sixth of the globe, but also annihilated the Hitlerite German fascists who were trying to dominate the world and has liberated countless millions of oppressed people. Now it has become a great bulwark of the democratic forces against warmongers.

China with one-fourth of the world population has also achieved the people’s democratic liberation, putting an end to the feudal rule which had lasted for thousands of years and the semi-colonial oppression which they had suffered for nearly one century, because she took the people’s road under the leadership of the Communist Party of China.

Today, many People’s Democracies have appeared on the world map, covering a wide area from Europe to Asia.

Dear representatives,

At present, the US-led world imperialists are making desperate attempts to start another war in order to prolong their existence. There is no doubt, however, that their sinister designs will end in failure because of the growing strength of socialism and people’s democracy.

As historical experience shows, victory always belongs to the people who rise up in a struggle for freedom, liberation and independence. However maliciously the US imperialists and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique may manoeuvre in the southern half of our country, the road to people’s democracy we are following, one which all the Korean people want and support, will be sure to be crowned with victory.

But victory does not come by itself. We must achieve it through struggle.

Let all of us rise up in a national-salvation struggle in order to win victory with greater united efforts.
Friends,

I should like to offer my thanks to all the workers, who have been endeavouring days and nights since liberation, for the development of agriculture, forestry and fishery in the fields, in the remote mountain regions and on the seas in the northern half of Korea.

As you all know, thanks to the agrarian reform the agriculture of our northern half has undergone a lot of changes during the four years since liberation.

In 1949 we produced over 626,000 tons more of grain and 45,000 tons more of cotton than in 1944, in spite of the unfavourable climatic condition when drought was so severe. In this way, we solved, in the main, the food problem which had been quite a big headache here in the north and were able to keep a considerable amount of grain in reserve. Also, we increased the production of cotton, which greatly aided in solving the question of clothing for the people.

In 1949 the number of domestic animals, too, increased notably as against that of the preceding year: cattle 10.8 per cent, pigs 56 per cent and sheep 34 per cent.

This is a tremendous achievement our liberated peasants in the
northern half have made with their creative labour and it greatly inspires the peasants in the southern half who are being ruined day by day, by the exploitation of the landlords.

Farm villages in the south are being devastated more and more and the people are suffering from hunger and poverty. Their discontent against the Syngman Rhee puppet regime increases as the days go by and the peasants’ struggle for land and liberty gains momentum.

However, our peasants in the north are displaying all their creativity and enthusiasm to further develop agriculture and improve their living standards. This is because they have themselves become owners of land, free of the feudal shackles of the landlords, and know well that they can lead a happy life through the efforts of their own labour.

After liberation they made great efforts to increase grain output. Their effort to increase the per-hectare yield of grain is clearly to be seen through the mere fact that they already ploughed one half of the total area under cultivation in the autumn of 1949.

Peasants have started working devotedly to produce more grain because their zeal for production has heightened and organs of people’s power have properly organized and guided agriculture. These organs paid constant attention to meeting their requirements and opportunely organized and directed farming work such as autumn ploughing, sowing and weeding. We supplied the countryside with over twice as much chemical fertilizer as that in the years before liberation and provided peasants with a large amount of superior seeds and farm implements.

In this way, agricultural output has rapidly increased and peasants’ living standards have risen remarkably.

In 1949 the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry surveyed 42 villages consisting of 2,466 farming households; the results show graphically how agriculture has developed and the living standards of the peasants have improved in the northern half of the country.

These villages yielded 117,000 sacks of grain in 1944 and the
figure increased to 150,000 sacks in 1949. In 1944 they had 65,000 sacks left after paying farm rent to the landlords and out of these, sold 5,000 sacks in the market. But, in 1949 they had 117,000 sacks left after paying the tax in kind and of these, sold 22,000 sacks.

In 1944 the peasants in these villages were short of food and so they had to buy or borrow 8,000 sacks of grain; but in 1949 they not only had all the food they needed, but also had a surplus of 10,000 sacks, despite selling a large amount of grain in the market as well.

In these villages, the houses newly built during the last three years constitute 18 per cent of the total number of the farmhouses and the oxen bought during the same period are 628 head.

The number of primary schools there grew sevenfold and that of clubs and libraries 48 times as against those of 1944, the year before liberation; and the number of primary school pupils increased by 2.5 times, middle school students 10 times and college students 6 times.

During the August 25, 1948 election I dropped in on a farmhouse while passing through Junghwa County, and talked with a peasant. I was told that he had been very poor as a tenant farmer before liberation, but when I called on him he was leading an affluent life in his new house. When I asked him to show his surplus grain, if he had any, he led me to his storeroom and showed me six huge earthen jars full of rice. He still had so much rice out of the previous year’s stock even when the year’s harvesting time was near at hand. This was quite unimaginable in the life of our peasants before liberation.

As you see, during the four years after liberation our agriculture developed remarkably and the material and cultural standards of the peasants rose rapidly.

This is because you who direct agriculture and the peasants who became owners of land devoted all possible efforts to the production of grain for the sake of the state and people.

However, there still are many shortcomings in our work. Owing to the shortcomings of some leading agricultural officials in their guidance work, we have been unable to achieve successes we could otherwise have achieved. Therefore, I am going to dwell on our
shortcomings while, at the same time, pointing out the great successes achieved by us.

The first defect revealed in the fields of agriculture, forestry and fishery is that some people do not maintain discipline. As you correctly stated in your debate, to observe state laws and thoroughly execute decisions of the Government and directives from senior offices is the primary duty of officials of state bodies and the rest of the people. Particularly for civil service personnel, there is no duty more important than putting into effect state laws and decisions and directives of the senior offices. Nevertheless, among some people in the fields of agriculture, forestry and fishery, a strict discipline, which requires them to carry through to the end state laws, decisions and directives, has not been established.

For example, in the field of animal husbandry, the state plan was not fulfilled and, as for the plan of increasing the number of cattle, in particular, they implemented only 92.9 per cent of it. The state plan is a law of the state. Once the state has adopted a plan as a law, everyone must combine their efforts to put it into effect by all possible means. The improper execution of the state plan is a manifestation of a loose discipline on the part of officials in fulfilling state laws.

Secondly, some people still lack the sense of responsibility as government officials and consciousness of being faithful servants of the people.

In the past all the assets obtained by the sweat of our people’s brow were in the hands of the Japanese imperialists, who lorded it over our country. The Japanese imperialists plundered our country of everything and shipped them off to their land. They did not build storehouses in Korea. They thought it better for them to keep their spoils in storehouses in Japan rather than in Korea and hence shipped them to Japan. Go to the north port of Wonsan, you can see loading machines but no machines for unloading are there.

However, our people are masters of the country now. We are working, not for plunderers, but for our own country and people, and
the results of our work contribute towards ensuring our country’s prosperity and our people’s happy life. We are building new storehouses everywhere with a view to keeping tax in kind and other materials there, and are trying to accumulate more goods which are necessary for our people.

The harder we work, the happier our life will be and the more quickly our country will develop and prosper. Therefore, we should do any work better, as masters. But some people lack the sense of responsibility of being masters and lack devotion to the country and people; they still have the old habits they acquired when they ran errands for individual capitalists or private companies. Some people do not feel sorry to see things go wrong; they also work haphazardly and take little care of state property.

At the Phyonggang State Agro-Stock Farm, a considerable number of pigs died owing to the irresponsibility of the management personnel and at the Pyongyang State Farm, 14 calves perished. This would never have happened if senior officials of the farms had taken meticulous and loving care of state property. Many other defects have also been revealed in the management of state farms.

It is true that our state farms were set up in barren areas devoid of any advantages, after all the fertile land had been distributed to peasants through the agrarian reform. But there is not a shadow of doubt that if they had introduced advanced farming methods zealously and run the farms in a responsible way, they could have overcome all unfavourable conditions and achieved greater success.

Some fishery officials do not endeavour to develop the state-run fisheries; instead, they have sold quite a few ships to individuals and caused some factories to be damaged. The sardine-processing factory is in a miserable shape now because they neglected it. All its boilers were stolen, not one of them is left.

All these defects are attributable to the fact that they do not build up the nation’s economic life responsibly as their own, as masters, but work in a haphazard manner just as they used to do earlier, when employed by exploiters.
Thirdly, you do not work hard enough at discarding obsolete knowledge and learning advanced science and techniques and boldly introducing them.

We need to progress rapidly. Conservatism hampers our development. Old techniques cannot guarantee our advancement and conservatism runs counter to our people’s desire for progress. Nevertheless, some people engaged in agriculture, forestry and fishery cling to the old methods and make no efforts to introduce modern methods, sticking instead to their outdated experience.

We should steadily endeavour to learn advanced science and techniques boldly and to study and introduce modern methods.

Fourthly, there are two grave deficiencies in your work, which you must correct. The first one is that you are not proficient in statistical work. Unless you do this work accurately, you cannot draw correct conclusions, without which you can never work well. But you are little interested in statistical work and do not conduct inspections properly.

In 1947, you made a fuss, claiming that it was impossible to sow cotton properly for lack of seeds. So, we instructed you to reexamine the situation closely, deciding, however, to import cotton seed. But, in actual fact, you sowed the cotton seed, which the peasants had, and did not use the imported one. At that time, the officials of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry insisted that their figures were based on accurate surveys made throughout all provinces, but the results showed the statistics were sheer nonsense.

Last summer some people claimed that radish seed had to be imported because of severe drought. Nevertheless, you were able to cultivate radishes well last year without importing the seed.

Here is yet another case. At a meeting, officials of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry made out as if they would not be able to run orchards any more, unless they were given a fund amounting to tens of millions of won. But a careful estimation showed that our orchards were in a position to be of benefit to the state without requiring any money spent on them. In fact, they benefited the state
in no small measure that autumn.

The Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry still has no exact statistics with regard to their work. With such inaccurate statistical figures we can never manage a planned economy.

Another shortcoming is that in organizing work you lose sight of the whole, while thinking only of one aspect and propose many “innovations” which bring no profit.

As regards irrigation projects, too, there are many instances in which they are carried out haphazardly, without any consideration of their order of priority, and without any calculation or plan, on the plea that once they are started, they might as well be completed. In the work of construction you must be able to distinguish projects of primary importance from those of secondary importance and be careful in deciding the order of priority. There may be some less important or unnecessary projects in view of the whole, though they might seem important when we see them separately. To deal with things from a partial point of view, without calculating about them expertly from a general point of view, is a dangerous work style. It can cause much loss to the state.

It is impossible to commit no errors at all while working. The question is how to correct them. What is important is to find them out in time and rectify them quickly.

Therefore in order to further consolidate the achievements already made and successfully carry out the 1950 national economic plan, we should correct the above-mentioned shortcomings at once.

We now have before us complicated and difficult tasks.

Above all, we should fulfil the 1950 plan with success.

Under this year’s plan the grain output is to rise to 115.9 per cent as against that of last year, the number of oxen to 117 per cent, pigs to 126.5 per cent and sheep to 116.8 per cent. These are not small figures.

If we are to carry out the task successfully and develop agriculture more rapidly in future, we should combat the conservative tendencies of the peasants who insist on using old farming methods and hesitate
to use new machines. At the same time, we should provide them with vigorous education and organizational leadership, so that they can introduce new methods and machines on the farms.

In order to direct the peasants properly, leading personnel should, first of all, themselves know how to farm. Accordingly, the leading personnel in the field of agriculture should exert all their efforts to study farming and acquire a knowledge of advanced farming methods and techniques. The Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry should supply the people in the field of agriculture with materials necessary for their studies in time.

You should organize and direct all farming work such as spring sowing and weeding in a more accurate and more concrete fashion. It is wrong to leave private farming to follow its own course.

You should also decisively improve the work in the state sector of agriculture.

If you are to lead peasants along progressive lines, it is necessary, first of all, to run state crop and stock farms in an exemplary manner. However, state crop and stock farms have failed to set an example for the peasants. They should teach the peasants advanced farming methods, show them their superiority and train cadres who are possessed of modern agricultural techniques. Therefore, state crop and stock farms should be developed into exemplary agricultural enterprises, which are not only well-planned and orderly, but also highly profitable.

The most important problem in the development of our agriculture is to expand irrigation facilities. In order to overcome all kinds of natural calamities such as drought and flood in our country and expand the area of paddy fields which yield several times more than dry fields, you must reequip and enlarge irrigation facilities. With a view to making use of tideland, too, you should build dikes and never fail to construct irrigation facilities. That is why we have, immediately after liberation and then onwards paid great attention to irrigation projects.

In future, we should expand irrigation facilities on a large scale
and provide them wherever possible. What is most urgent is to expand the facilities so that rain-dependent rice fields can also be brought under irrigation.

To concentrate efforts on carrying out the Anju irrigation project as scheduled is more important than planning new irrigation projects this year. This is no simple project. All the people must take part in it and all civil engineers must be mobilized.

Through the irrigation project in Anju we should train many cadres, who will then be capable of directing similar projects. This will enable us to carry out a large number of irrigation works successfully in future, through the efforts of experienced cadres and technicians.

You should also pay attention to improving conventional farming implements. You should introduce improved ploughs in place of the old ones.

As for the problem of manufacturing farm implements, we have discussed it already with the Ministry of Industry and taken some measures. We are going to improve the design of farm implements and produce more convenient ones in large quantities in future.

But this is not enough. What is important is to let our peasants know what farm mechanization is like.

This year you should set up, in some areas where tractors can be applied, farm machine hire stations which will assist the peasants in ploughing with tractors, and receive rent for it.

Peasants welcome tractors. Tractors plough rice and other fields quickly and deeply at little expense, and peasants want to use them. We should meet the demands of the people step by step.

This year you should organize the work of setting up farm machine hire stations first in the plains like Ryongchon, Jongju, Pakchon, Anju, Phyongwon, Jaeryong, Anak, Sinchon, Hamju and Anbyon. Needless to say, there may be quite a few difficulties since this is our first undertaking. However, if you give it meticulous organizational guidance, while studying deeply and learning well, you can make this work a success. A government decision will be issued.
on the work of farm machine hire stations. Then you should widely propagate its significance among the masses and actively work to organize the training of cadres needed for operating these stations. In this way, you will settle down to the task, fully confident and prepared from the very beginning.

As to fisheries, you should make efforts to develop the state sector. In 1950, you should further develop state fisheries so that they can exceed the plan quota. We have not yet laid firm bases for developing state fisheries. Therefore, the first and foremost task before the fishing industry is to lay firm foundations which can help to rapidly develop the state sector in future.

In addition, you should direct fishermen’s cooperatives properly. They are a form of the people’s cooperative economy. We should develop cooperative economy more than private economy and provide the former with good working conditions, so that it can display its advantages. You should direct a great deal of concern to the functioning of fishermen’s cooperatives and convince the people of the vast superiority of cooperative economy, as well as state economy, over private economy.

We have failed to pay due attention to forests until now. Forests are the major natural resources of the country. They provide industry and agriculture with important raw materials and other supplies. They are essential for reforming natural features and beautifying the country. So you should be deeply concerned about creating and preserving forests.

Some time ago the Government announced the regulations on the conservation of forests. But we cannot solve the problem with this alone. You should study more seriously the ways and means for supplying the state with more timber and turning our country into a beautiful land covered with green foliage. You should educate the people to protect the forests and make untiring efforts to create them in a planned way, as well as take better care of them.

Another important problem is to enhance the sense of
responsibility among officials of state bodies and to remould their ideological consciousness by equipping them with the spirit of serving the country and people faithfully.

Special efforts should be made to raise their level of ideological consciousness so that they may hold state property dearer than their own, take better care of it and manage the state economy more expertly. In this way, we should establish among all the officials the habit of conserving any state property, even if it is worth only a penny, cherishing the interests of the state and people more than anything else and working for them with devotion.

In addition, order and discipline should be tightened in your work. We must thoroughly eradicate the old desultory, disorderly way of life and set up new habits of living in an orderly and organized way. We should become disciplined workers who observe state laws and carry through the decisions and directives of the senior offices.

In conclusion, I should like to reiterate this: We have already achieved a great deal during the four years after putting into effect the agrarian reform. But we are now confronted with the fresh task of consolidating the achievements and, on this basis, further developing the agriculture, forestry and fishery of our country.

If we are to perform these tasks, it is imperative to rid ourselves of old farming methods and actively introduce advanced ones, as well as improve the work style of leading personnel and increase their capabilities.

We should carry out all the proposed tasks and thereby further consolidate the democratic base in the northern half and convince the people deeply of the advantages of our democratic system not merely by words but in practice. In this way we will make sure that all the people fight for the democratic system until the end.

I firmly believe that you officials engaged in agriculture, forestry and fishery and all other working people will carry out all the above-mentioned tasks with honour and victoriously attain the set targets during the last year of the Two-Year National Economic Plan.
ON SETTING UP FARM MACHINE
HIRE STATIONS

Concluding Speech at the Fourth Plenary Meeting
of the Cabinet of the Democratic
People’s Republic of Korea
February 8, 1950

At the meeting today we discussed the question of setting up state farm machine hire stations, summed up the implementation of the 1949 national economic plan and dealt with the 1950 national economic development plan.

1. ON SETTING UP STATE FARM MACHINE
HIRE STATIONS

In our countryside, farming is still being done by conventional methods, using obsolete farm implements of feudal days. At present the main tools of production of the peasants are conventional ploughs, hoes and sickles, and they farm with difficulty by hand.

The countryside at present is lacking in oxen and other draught animals. So, there are negative practices of exploiting the peasants by using draught animals.

The state has so far taken various measures to improve the
outdated feudal farming methods, and ease the shortage of draught animals.

In 1947 and 1948, the state imported tractors, although the country was economically hard pressed. At that time, however, the peasants had little knowledge about mechanization, and neither welcomed the tractors, nor were too willing to use them in farming. So, the imported machines were given to forestry and agricultural experimental stations.

But, now the peasants want tractors. I talked with the peasants who had used the machines at agricultural experimental stations, and they spoke very highly about them. The peasants in the Jaeryong area in Hwanghae Province and other plain areas as well, want to have tractors. This is because they know that ploughing the fields with tractors is better than by using draught animals. At present, in the countryside, a peasant without an ox has to pay 4,000 won per hectare if he ploughs his field with a hired animal, and, while it is in his use, he must feed the animal and even the driver and he himself must work alongside in the field. Again, with an ox you cannot plough the field deep and fast enough.

Tractors could not be used in the countryside before, because the peasants did not welcome them, but today the machines can be actively used in agricultural production, because the peasants themselves wish to have them. Therefore, the state has decided to import tractors, in order to mechanize agricultural production.

The question is how to utilize the tractors in the countryside, that is, whether the machines should be sold to the peasants or managed by the state.

We should not sell the tractors to the peasants, but set up state farm machine hire stations which would till the fields for them and receive payment in lieu. It is true that procuring the tractors and setting up the farm machine hire stations is no simple task. It requires a sum of more than 100 million won. In addition, many difficult problems may arise, as we lack tractor drivers and skilled mechanics and the level of consciousness of the peasants is also low. But, despite all this, we must set up the farm machine hire stations as they are
politically and economically important.

When the stations are set up, it will be possible, firstly, to expand the cultivated area and ease the shortage of draught animals in the countryside and, secondly, to clearly convince the peasants of the advantages of mechanization and accelerate the transformation of their ideological consciousness. Setting up these stations is essential today from the political and economic point of view.

The stations must be set up in the plains first. It would be a good idea to set up five stations in the plain areas such as Ryongchon, Jongju and Pakchon Counties of North Phyongan Province; Anju and Phyongwon Counties of South Phyongan Province; Hamju County of South Hamgyong Province; Anbyon County of Kangwon Province; Jaeryong, Anak and Sinchon Counties of Hwanghae Province, as well as establish sub-stations attached to them.

As for the tractor drivers required for the setting up of the farm machine hire stations, the Ministry of National Defence should provide 15 of them, and the Ministry of the Interior 20 for the first stage. Also, we should set up a system to train the drivers. As regards accommodation, the buildings of other establishments and enterprises should be used for the present and it should be provided later.

2. ON CARRYING THROUGH THE 1950 NATIONAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT PLAN

The execution of the 1949 national economic plan and the 1950 plan for the development of the national economy have been mentioned in detail in the report of the Chairman of the State Planning Commission, so I am going to stress a few points concerning the implementation of this year’s national economic plan.

First of all, it is necessary to rid our officials of bureaucratic tendencies.
As was pointed out in the report, last year the Ministry of Industry caused considerable damage to the state, because they organized work in a bureaucratic manner. Regarding the development of a gold mine, the officials of the ministry did not pay heed to the opinions of their subordinates and forced their own incorrect views on them in a bureaucratic manner. This made them mine where there was no gold, thus causing great wastage of state funds and manpower. As was criticized at the Conference of Economic and Trade Union Activists from the Industrial Field, at present there are quite a number of instances of unnecessary industrial projects, which hamper production, having been started.

At the meeting today, an official of the Ministry of Industry would not accept criticism of the detrimental errors made by the ministry last year. This is wrong of him. If officials committed mistakes and caused a loss to the state, it is harmful even though it was not done deliberately. Loss incurred because of the bureaucratic work style of officials and that occurring due to deliberate harmful acts, in any case, both are losses to the state. Naturally, officials of the Ministry of Industry are not harmful elements, just because they have caused losses to the state.

Officials must work efficiently, so that the state does not incur any losses. Officials of the Ministry of Industry should not feel unhappy about criticism regarding the harmful mistakes they committed last year, but accept it, and rectify their errors.

At present, there is a tendency among our officials to be pleased when they are praised, and displeased when criticized. This is wrong. Errors should be criticized and corrected promptly. It is also harmful to justify mistakes instead of criticizing them.

If they are to eliminate bureaucratic tendencies, our officials must go deeply among the masses, and rely on them in their work. They should always be attentive to the opinion of the masses, respect it and, if there is anything they do not know, they should openly learn about it from the masses. Also, they should keep on acquiring scientific knowledge.
For instance, if you intend to develop a mine, you should first go among the masses and take their opinions, study them closely, and then undertake the project if it is good. Then you will not make mistakes and achieve successes in your work instead.

Last July we visited the Cholsan Mine to discuss the production of monazite. At that time, the officials of the Ministry of Industry said the mine was able to produce 1,000 tons a year only. So we went among the miners and discussed with them ways and means of digging for more ore. They then advanced some original views, according to which the work was so organized that more monazite was mined.

If officials get rid of bureaucratic tendencies and rely on the masses in their work, it is possible to effectively combat against harmful elements.

We must bear in mind that there are harmful elements amongst us. They are only watching for a chance to carry out acts of subversion and sabotage.

The bureaucratic work style of officials offers favourable conditions for such harmful elements to do mischief. If our officials work in a bureaucratic manner, like those of the Ministry of Industry, they might involuntarily assist these harmful elements and be used by them for their conspiratorial activities.

Every official must do away with bureaucratic work attitudes, and go among the masses and rely on them in their work, so as to promptly reveal harmful elements and prevent their subversions and sabotages. You cannot solve the problem if you only stress the necessity of sharpening vigilance against these elements. Officials should establish the revolutionary habit of relying on the masses in their work, thereby preventing the manoeuvres of harmful elements and successfully performing their tasks.

Next, we have to establish a rigid system of unconditionally fulfilling the national economic plan.

If you draft a plan and do not carry it out, it is entirely meaningless. You must develop the habit of fulfilling the plan daily,
monthly and quarterly without any reservation.

At present, however, discipline in planning is loose. Last January, the plan was not carried out the way it should have been. The figures were set low for the quotas in January because it is a winter month and the machines are repaired at that time. But even this was not fulfilled by the machine-building, coal, power, ferrous and nonferrous metal industries. This means that the spirit of the Conference of Economic and Trade Union Activists from the Industrial Field on exceeding the Two-Year National Economic Plan targets has not yet been disseminated deeply enough among the workers. You cannot solve the matter if you just shout the slogan, “Let us uphold Party and Government policies!” Success should be achieved in actual work. If our officials work as they do at present, they will not be able to carry out this year’s national economic plan properly. We must not think it is an easy task to fulfil the plan.

All the officials must, from now on, take thorough measures to fulfil this year’s national economic plan.

Leading officials must not remain in the office just to receive production statistics from factories and enterprises, but must go there to meet the masses and find out exactly what is wrong or lacking, and what are the reasons for the same, before taking appropriate remedial steps. Only then can they carry out the plan with success.

On January 29, the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory, Pongung Chemical Factory, Tanchon Mine, and Hamhung Railway Management Bureau held meetings of employees, and appealed to the workers, technicians and office employees throughout the nation to wage a competitive drive for increased production in order to fulfil the Two-Year National Economic Plan ahead of schedule. This is very good. The workers, technicians and office employees in all fields must actively respond to this appeal and wage this drive vigorously, so as to exceed the targets of this year’s national economic plan. Each ministry should take specific measures to guarantee this drive.

If everybody applies himself diligently to the task and fights tenaciously, it will be quite possible to fulfil and even surpass the
targets of this year’s national economic plan before schedule.

Lastly, I will touch on a few points raised during the debate and in the questions.

If the Ministry of City Management considers it difficult to carry out this year’s capital construction projects for the city of Pyongyang, we should not assign the task to it. In any case the ministry cannot do it. It is short of technicians and its discipline is loose.

It would be better to assign this year’s capital construction projects to the Pyongyang Municipal People’s Committee. This task will be carried out if we assign officials with a high sense of responsibility to the urban management trust under the Pyongyang Municipal People’s Committee. We also need to allot 3,000,000 won out of this year’s capital construction fund to local industrial construction.

Officials of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry said they require 25,000 tons more of chemical fertilizers, if they are to fulfill this year’s grain production plan. But we cannot supply them with more.

The recent inspection of 42 farming villages shows that the supply of chemical fertilizers increased 2.5 times compared to that of the pre-liberation year. If they make effective use of the chemical fertilizers, they can fulfill this year’s grain production plan with the amount of fertilizers being supplied today. Therefore, the officials of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry should not ask for more fertilizers, but should correctly distribute the available supply and make effective use of it. They should not distribute the fertilizers evenly, as they do now, but take into account that some areas need more and some less.

They should also understand the actual situation of the production of home-made manure and supervise this work, so that the peasants produce more.

At today’s meeting the vice-minister of agriculture and forestry, who does not even know the exact number of cattle we had in 1948 and 1949, said that it would be hard to fulfil this year’s plan for increasing their number, because the figure is set too high. His
attitude is quite wrong. The Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry should breed cattle in large numbers and lessen their slaughter, so as to carry out this year’s plan for the increase of cattle.

We must improve plough and other farm implements. At present some officials are arguing about a foreign plough, claiming it weighs 34 kilogrammes or 27 kilogrammes. What is the need for this? What is important is to design and widely distribute improved ploughs, which are suited to our soil and can plough the fields deeply.

If experimental instruments have been omitted from this year’s plan for the production of educational supplies, they should be included in the plan. Students cannot study properly without experimental instruments, which should be produced by the Ministry of Industry.

In the production of pencils we must better their quality. At present their quality is low. Therefore, in their production we must endeavour to better it instead of increasing the quantity.

As we are short of passenger cars this year, it seems to be difficult to increase passenger traffic to a great extent. The State Planning Commission should reconsider carefully the possibilities of increasing passenger traffic as much as possible. If we cut the turnaround time of the freight cars, we may be able to increase passenger traffic. But we must not carry passengers beyond the capacity of the cars, just for the purpose of increasing traffic. If we do so, we cannot establish discipline nor guarantee civility in traffic. In passenger traffic it is important to do so, as well as to prevent accidents.

If we are to fulfil this year’s freightage plan, we should shorten the turnaround time of freight cars and the Ministry of Industry, the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry and other authorities concerned should guarantee timely delivery of freight, so as to eliminate fluctuations in transport.

We must also carry out our foreign trade plan thoroughly. The fulfilment of this plan is an important task that affects the nation’s international prestige. Therefore, we must dispatch the goods for
export, envisaged in the plan, punctually, and also receive imports promptly. The production of exports should come under the responsibility of each minister, and the Minister of Commerce should deal with all imports.

You should keep reducing the production costs of goods. For this purpose, it is necessary to study ways and means for reducing production costs, and send out a plan mapped on a scientific basis. If possible, factories and enterprises should also reduce the estimated production costs. The lower the production costs, the better. In the spheres of capital construction, they should strive to lower the construction costs, so as to save more than 15 per cent of the expenditure on capital construction.

I am sure that all officials will make strenuous efforts to exceed this year’s national economic plan targets before the set time.
TASKS BEFORE THOSE WHO WORK AT NONFERROUS ORE MINES IN THE CARRYING OUT OF THE TWO-YEAR NATIONAL ECONOMIC PLAN

Speech at the Consultative Meeting of Managers and Model Workers from Major Nonferrous Ore Mines

February 14, 1950

Originally, I intended to discuss today the problems of the production of nonferrous ores with the manager and model workers of a nonferrous ore mine. But since I thought it better to discuss the problems with all the managers and model workers of major nonferrous ore mines, I have called this consultative meeting.

As you all know, our country has an inexhaustible deposit of nonferrous minerals.

In former days the Japanese imperialists forced Korean workers to mine our nonferrous metals which they used in developing their industry and invading weak and small nations. Under the Japanese imperialists, Korean miners neglected their work. This was their way of opposing the Japanese plunder of our nonferrous metals. It was quite natural.

But today our resources of nonferrous metals are being used for building a prosperous, independent and sovereign democratic state and make a happy life for the people. We must not just boast of our country’s inexhaustible deposit of nonferrous metals, but should dig out more of them to make effective use of them in building a
prosperous, independent and sovereign democratic state and
improving the people’s living standards.

Our people are not well-off as yet.

Of course, it is an undeniable fact that our people’s living
standards are incomparably higher than those of the south Korean
people. The present living conditions of the south Korean people are
miserable. They are suffering from hunger and poverty just as in the
days of Japanese imperialism. It is said that last winter more than 600
people died of cold and hunger in one day in Seoul alone. In south
Korea, over three million jobless and ruined people are roaming about
the streets and their number increases as the days go by. In the
countryside the number of peasants who quit farming increases every
year. All these misfortunes which the south Korean people are
undergoing are the aftermath of the US imperialist policy of colonial
enslavement and the anti-people policies of the puppet Syngman
Rheeites.

In the northern half of Korea, however, nobody dies of cold or
hunger; there is neither a beggar nor a jobless man who wanders
about the streets. The living standards of the people in the north have
improved thanks to their own creative labour and the people’s
government’s people-oriented policies. The people’s government
which protects the interests of the working masses, including the
workers, peasants and intellectuals, has not only guaranteed stable
livelihood for all of them but has also built many hospitals and
holiday camps to promote their health and has opened a large number
of schools for their children.

In the northern half of Korea today, all the working people are
enjoying a stabilized life without any worries, but we must not rest
content with this. We have not yet been able to fully solve the
problems of clothing, food and housing for the working people; we
must do so in the next few years, so that everyone can lead a more
affluent life.

What then must we do to solve these problems completely?

First, in order to solve the food problem satisfactorily we must
mechanize farming and carry out irrigation projects in a big way.

Mechanization of farming is very important. If we plough rice and other fields with tractors, it will be far more efficient than using cattle and will increase grain output substantially. If we use tractors in ploughing, we can use the cattle for the production of meat so as to help solve the meat problem. Furthermore, the rural surplus manpower which we have here can be allotted to the industrial spheres to augment the production of daily necessities. The mechanization of farming is so important that a few days ago the Cabinet of the Republic decided to set up farm machine hire stations at a few places this year.

Carrying out irrigation projects on a greater scale is as important as mechanizing farming in increasing grain production. We can only produce 700 kilogrammes of wheat or barley per hectare of dry fields but more than three tons of rice per hectare of paddy. Therefore, if we carry out the irrigation projects and change the dry fields into paddy fields we will be able to more than treble the grain production. We must carry out the irrigation projects with machines and must secure pumps and electric motors needed for the projects.

Second, in order to solve the clothing problem satisfactorily, we must develop the textile industry.

Our working people’s clothing problem has not yet been solved fully. This is entirely the noxious result of the colonial rule of Japanese imperialism. The Japanese imperialists obstructed the development of our light industry in every way. The textile mill at Sariwon was the only relatively large one before liberation. After their surrender, even this was destroyed by the Japanese imperialists while they were fleeing. After liberation we rebuilt and expanded the textile mills at Sariwon and Sinuiju, but at present these two mills produce only 13,000,000 metres of fabrics a year. This means that the per-capita production of fabrics in the northern half of Korea is no more than one metre.

If we are to solve the clothing problem efficiently, we must build many large textile mills and increase the production of textiles
substantially. Developing the textile industry is also necessary for relieving the south Korean people who are ragged and hungry. At present the state is constructing a textile mill in Pyongyang, and we are importing foreign equipment to build another mill in Hamhung. We intend to build more textile factories in future.

Third, to solve the housing problem satisfactorily, we must develop the building-materials industry.

Today we are short of dwelling houses in the light of the working people’s demands. In order to ease the shortage we must develop the building-materials industry to produce bricks and cement in large quantities and must mechanize housing construction. Mechanization will enable us to build many dwellings in a short period and lower the construction costs to a considerable extent.

We need a lot of machines and equipment if we are to mechanize farming, carry out many irrigation projects and develop the textile and building-materials industries for the purpose of solving the clothing, food and housing problems for the people. How should we get such large quantities of machines and equipment? Basically, we must produce at home the machines and equipment necessary for the development of agriculture, textile and building-materials industries. But since our machine-building industry has not yet reached such a level as to be able to produce all these machines and equipment, we must import those which cannot be produced at home. This requires a large sum of foreign currency. Nobody will give us machines and equipment gratis.

Our manufacturing industries are not developed at present; so, if we are to obtain the necessary foreign exchange for the procurement of machines and equipment, we have no other alternative but to increase the output of nonferrous metals and export them. At present there is a big demand in the capitalist market for nonferrous metals, particularly, gold. If we mine plenty of gold and sell it to the capitalist market, we can get the foreign exchange needed to procure the machines and equipment. If we keep gold underground, it is of no use. We must mine large quantities of gold before capitalism perishes.
Gold and other nonferrous metals are not only an important source of foreign currency but they are also precious raw materials essential for industrial development.

Increasing the production of nonferrous metals is of great importance also for the strengthening of our defence power.

Any nation is bound to be a colonial slave of imperialism unless it strengthens its defence power. This is eloquently proved by our nation’s history.

In the past our country was reduced to a Japanese imperialist colony because the nation’s defence capabilities were weak. When the Japanese imperialists were making guns to invade our country, the corrupt and impotent feudal rulers of the Ri dynasty whiled away their time taking no measures for checking their aggression. Taking advantage of this, the Japanese imperialists invaded our country. Thus, the Korean nation lost its country to the Japanese imperialists and led a bitter life for 36 years as a nation without a country.

At present the US imperialists and their stooges, the puppet Syngman Rheeites, are making frantic war preparations to invade the northern half of Korea and the Japanese militarists, too, are waiting for a chance to re-invade our country. If we forget the bitter lesson of the past and do not strengthen our nation’s defence capacity, we will be destined again to be a ruined people.

We must strengthen our defence power so as to repulse the enemy whenever they attack our country, and, to do this, we must develop our defence industry to produce large quantities of weapons and ammunition by our own efforts. In order to develop this industry we need plenty of lead, copper and other nonferrous metals.

Increasing the production of nonferrous metals is, in the final analysis, an important guarantee for fully solving the problems of clothing, food and housing for the people and strengthening the nation’s defence power.

Because of this necessity, our Party and state are urging the mines to produce more nonferrous ores. Particularly, they expect the Songhung, Komdok, Songchon, Taeyudong, Holtong, and Hwaphung
Mines, which are of decisive significance in carrying out the production targets of nonferrous metals under the Two-Year National Economic Plan, to produce more ores than envisaged in this year’s plan.

But these mines, far from increasing the production of nonferrous ores, are not fulfilling the basic production quotas assigned to them by the Party and state. Except the Songhung and Hwaphung Mines, there is no mine that has fulfilled its production plans for last January. It is a shame for the leading officials and workers at the nonferrous mines to have failed to fulfil the production quotas given to them by the Party and the state.

The peasants work hard day in and day out to fulfil the tasks given by the Party and state to increase grain production. Their political consciousness is very high. Particularly, those in the areas along the 38th parallel work devotedly to fulfil additional grain production quotas, at the same time fighting spies, wreckers and saboteurs infiltrating into the northern half of Korea.

The soldiers of the Security Forces on the 38th parallel, too, are fighting courageously to defend the power of the Republic and the people’s democratic institutions from the incessant armed provocations by the puppet Syngman Rheeites. A platoon of the Security Forces on the 38th parallel fought three puppet army battalions valiantly, unmindful of the sacrifice they had to make, and defended the height. They are, indeed, patriotic fighters unwaveringly faithful to the Party and the state.

Why is it that the leading officials and workers of nonferrous mines cannot fulfil the production plans given to them by the Party and the state? This is because they lack loyalty to the Party and the state.

The nonferrous mines must fulfil their plans for this year unconditionally, come what may. At today’s meeting the managers of the Songhung, Taeyudong, Komdok and Holtong Mines said they would produce more nonferrous ores than the figures allotted to their mines. They must do so.
The fulfilment of this year’s production plans at nonferrous ore mines depends mainly on how the miners will work. If they work conscientiously with a high degree of patriotism, they will be able to fulfil this year’s plan for the production of ores without difficulty.

At present, however, among the workers of nonferrous mines there is a tendency to be lazy. I was told that some workers of a mine are unwilling to work in the pits. This is unbecoming of the working class. Of course, in the days of Japanese imperialist rule the pits had no facilities to protect the miners at work, and they were not provided with labour protection supplies; therefore, many miners became crippled because of disasters during work down in the pits, or lost their lives to diseases. But today the pits are adequately equipped with facilities for labour safety and the miners are supplied with nutritious food every day.

Therefore, if they work in the pits there is no danger of meeting with disaster at work or contracting diseases. If every worker only seeks his own comfort and is reluctant to do hard work, how can we build a prosperous, independent and sovereign democratic state? In the past the anti-Japanese guerrillas fought for many years against Japanese imperialism solely for the sake of the homeland and people, unafraid of making sacrifices. Like them, the workers should devote their all to the struggle for the benefits of the country and people. This is precisely the noble moral trait in the character of the working class.

The miners must strive to fulfil this year’s production plan, bearing in mind that mining nonferrous ores is a sacred job which will benefit the country and people and that it is a civic duty to fulfil the production assignments given by the Party and state. The miners should actively introduce advanced extracting methods to increase labour productivity and must form production shock brigades to wage a vigorous patriotic campaign for increased production. In this campaign the Party members should play a central, vanguard role. They say there are over 500 Party members in the Songhung Mine; if they play their role properly among the miners, there will be an innovation in the production of ores.
The miners must intensify the struggle against reactionaries. Planting themselves among the miners, the reactionaries are obstructing the implementation of the production plans, by carrying out a malicious propaganda that the plans cannot be fulfilled and thus alienating the workers from the management personnel. The reactionaries do not like us to mine plenty of nonferrous ores and use them in strengthening the democratic base. They want the US imperialists to invade the northern half of Korea and a regime of landlords and capitalists to come into force. The miners must unmask and wipe out all the reactionaries who are hiding themselves among their ranks and craftily manoeuvring to hamper the implementation of the production plans. They must not be deceived by the vicious reactionary propaganda and must not forget their duty as the working class. The miners should also fight against dissolute idlers.

If the mines are to fulfil this year’s production plans, the management officials must improve their performance.

The managers and chief engineers must direct production well and thoroughly establish discipline in carrying out the plans. They must organize production carefully and intensify technical guidance to production and get into the habit of fulfilling monthly plans unconditionally.

The leading workers of the mines should take measures to mechanize the operations in the pits and equip them with adequate facilities for labour protection and safety.

They should establish a rigid discipline and order in the mines similar to that of the army. Otherwise, it is impossible to fulfil the production plans successfully and prevent accidents. It is because of a lack of a rigid discipline and order that machine accidents and various other troubles occur at the mines. The leading officials of the mines must make sure that every miner voluntarily observes work and safety regulations and the regulations governing the management of machines and equipment, at the same time combating violations of the regulations uncompromisingly. Also, they should see to it that every operation in the pits is organized and
conducted under a system of command.

It is necessary to decidedly improve the work method of the management of the mines. I have been told that at present some managers stifle the workers’ original proposals and do not help them solve problems as they should. This is wrong. The leading officials must discard their bureaucratic work method and always go among the workers and pay heed to their original views and must help them solve difficult problems in production, in time.

It is necessary to guarantee adequate living conditions for the miners. The urgent problem to be solved is that of housing. At present some workers do not settle themselves to work but run around restlessly because they have no houses. The managers should see to it that those houses which can be repaired, are repaired and that where more houses are needed, they are built quickly. As the nation’s economic situation is still difficult, you should not try to build fine multi-storeyed houses in the miners’ settlements. We shall build them when the nation’s economic situation has improved; for the present it is better that we build many one-storeyed houses. A certain manager claims that if the state does not provide necessary funds and materials for housing construction, it is difficult to build houses. He is wrong. As for the funds and materials for housing construction, the mines should try to obtain them for themselves by all possible means.

We should raise the role of the trade union organizations at the mines.

The trade union organizations should educate the miners properly to exceed the targets of the production plans. For this they should enhance the miners’ class awareness and arouse their patriotic zeal. It is also necessary to educate them to observe work discipline voluntarily and to be convinced that our struggle to fulfil the Two-Year National Economic Plan will definitely succeed. As long as we have the people’s power and international support and encouragement, there is not a shadow of doubt that we will triumph in our struggle.

The trade unions should educate the miners properly so that they
will not make exorbitant demands with regard to their living conditions. At present, some workers make exacting demands and ask for wage raises without doing the work to merit it. This is wrong. In the future communist society everybody will be given all he wants, but in the present situation, it is impossible to give a large remuneration for a little work, just because they want it. In our society today everybody receives remuneration for the work he has done strictly in accordance with democratic principles. The trade unions should correctly convince the workers that if they participate in work conscientiously and exceed their work norms, they can get paid more and receive bonuses, too. Meanwhile, they must fight against those who do not work and who make unprincipled demands with regard to their living conditions.

The trade unions must not be opposed to the manager but actively cooperate with him in his work. Yet, they should not let him go when he does not work well or behaves in a bureaucratic manner. When this happens, they must bring him to book.

In the nonferrous ore mines you should wage a vigorous struggle to fulfil or exceed production targets under the Two-Year Plan with the slogan, “Let us all rise up to build democracy.”

On your return to your posts you should inform your miners of the tasks given at today’s meeting and follow them through to the end.
TASKS BEFORE THE PEOPLE IN THE FIELD OF TRANSPORT IN FULFILLING THE TWO-YEAR NATIONAL ECONOMIC PLAN

Speech at a Joint Meeting of Employees under the Ministry of Transport and Activists of the Trade Union of Transport Workers

February 21, 1950

Comrades,

The people in the field of transport have performed great laborious feats in fulfilling the Two-Year National Economic Plan which has a great bearing on the independence and sovereignty of the country and on its democratic progress. Allow me first to extend my warm thanks to all of you who are engaged in transport and who have contributed immensely to the development of the national economy by more than fulfilling the haulage plan for 1949.

Present here now are excellent people in the field of transport—engine drivers, dispatchers, yard workers, mechanics, linemen, drivers, model workers and leading officials—and activists of trade union organizations in this field.

This meeting aims to exchange advanced experiences gained in carrying out the first-year assignment of the Two-Year National Economic Plan and to discuss measures to correct some shortcomings revealed in its working and fulfil the tasks of transport more successfully.

Transport plays an important part in rehabilitating and developing
the national economy, and you comrades engaged in this field are entrusted with heavy duties towards the state and people.

Transport in the northern half of Korea, which has come under the ownership of the state and people, has rapidly developed through the devoted labour of our working masses.

In 1947 the railway freight turnover grew by 152.9 per cent as against that in 1946, in 1948 by 41.5 per cent as against that in 1947, and in 1949 by 38.8 per cent as against that in 1948. In 1949 the transport plan for major materials including coal, ore and fertilizers was fulfilled in all indices, with the result that factories, mines and enterprises were supplied with raw materials in time. Fertilizers were carried to the countryside and the working people of all areas across the country were supplied with enough necessary goods.

New timetables for train operation which are basic to railway transport were drawn up in order to concentrate on the transport of major materials and cut down on transportation time; a system of specific personnel taking care of their own specific locomotives was introduced, which raised the workers’ sense of responsibility and increased the efficiency of locomotives.

Road transport ensures that there is a smooth transfer of food grain and other things between towns and rural areas, and water transport and wharf operation are also developing according to plan.

In the days of Japanese imperialist rule there was no rolling-stock plant, but there are six of them now, including those in Wonsan and West Pyongyang. They are manufacturing spare parts for themselves and repairing plenty of locomotives so that they can be used again. Many construction projects such as electrifying the sections with steep gradients on the Pyongyang-Wonsan line and the Manpho line, and reconstructing the Kaechon line on the standard gauge, were undertaken.

In the struggle to achieve these brilliant successes, a large number of model workers came forward. They displayed a high degree of patriotic zeal and creativity, performing splendid feats for the state and people. More than 200 workers had the honour of receiving the
Order of the National Flag and Medal of Merit of the Republic.

However, quite a few shortcomings still remain in the field of transport.

An analysis of various railway accidents that occurred last year ascribes their causes largely to some railway workers’ violation of the regulations, and neglect of transport work.

Since accidents in transport cause serious hindrances in all spheres of state and social activity, their prevention is an important task of transport workers. But, because some of them work in a haphazard manner without observing state laws and regulations, they are unable to avert accidents which are otherwise quite avoidable, thus causing serious losses to the state.

Reduction of the turnaround time of freight cars in the railways is of decisive importance in ensuring a speedy circulation of goods and in raising the utilization of freight wagons. However, the efforts made have not been adequate enough. Rahung Railway Station kept freight wagons idle for 30 days, but no fine was imposed for this holdup.

Now that industry is developing rapidly, there are large quantities of goods to be carried but we have a very small number of freight wagons. Therefore, only when the turnaround rate of the wagons is increased can the important state assignments of goods transport be fulfilled. So, delay in the turnaround time can lead to grave consequences.

Now, I must make mention of the passenger service. Although, in the northern half of Korea, democratic construction has proceeded quickly and the material and cultural standards of the people have improved markedly, some of our passenger cars are still in a deplorable condition. Many of them are not good; they are dirty, cold and disorderly and they are not fast enough. In spite of the fact that it has been decided to reequip the passenger cars and assign two full-time men or women attendants to each, the interiors of the cars are very dirty.

Comrades,

The 1950 state quotas for the field of transport are more
voluminous than those of the previous year. In 1949 the freight turnover was 15 million tons, whereas in 1950 it is 18 million tons, which is an increase of three million tons. In order to carry out this massive plan, it is essential to correct the aforesaid shortcomings as soon as possible.

The Government of the Republic has adopted a Cabinet decision which allows the expenditure of funds needed to reward excellent enterprises, workshops, workteams and workers in the fields of industry and transport. Trade union organizations and heads of workplaces should use prize funds correctly to develop transport.

In our country, where power is in the hands of the people, officials of economic bodies and trade unions should all do their best to make the Republic prosper, and improve the people’s material well-being and cultural level.

With a view to promoting the nation’s economic development through the successful fulfilment of the transport assignments, the transport workers should perform the following immediate tasks without fail.

First, they should revise the timetables for train operation on the basis of the experience already gained, and reorganize all transport work in accordance with the new timetables. This will conform with the new circumstances in which progress has been made in every sphere of the national economy in leaps and bounds.

The new timetables should be drawn up in such a way that the rate of operation of passenger and freight cars is adjusted properly in keeping with the fast increasing requirements of the state transport plan. As the technical levels are raised and the lines and other facilities improved, the technical and service speeds of trains will be further increased.

Also, the timetables for train operation should be made so that the traction-load and running distance of locomotives are increased by drawing on the success achieved by highly trained engine drivers. We should also ensure that nonstop freight trains and concentration cars are allocated properly to all the lines.
All transport workers should strive to observe these new timetables strictly. The train timetables in the railway are work plans for transport. They must be observed scrupulously, so that the transport plan can be carried out punctually every day.

Secondly, rigid discipline must be established in the railways just as in the army. Even now, some workers neither observe discipline well nor work in accordance with the railway regulations. A vigorous struggle must be waged against the tendency to neglect discipline and everybody must unconditionally obey the orders of higher organizations and discharge their duties faithfully so that all work will be conducted flawlessly as planned.

Tightening discipline is an important guarantee for preventing traffic accidents and increasing transport capacity.

Thirdly, the turnaround time of freight cars must be reduced further.

Efforts must not be concentrated on loading alone; vigorous endeavours must be made to send loaded goods promptly to their destinations without accident and the time of loading and unloading operations reduced at all stations.

On industrial railways, in particular, the loading and unloading time must be reduced to the minimum; the goods that have arrived must be discharged quickly, and the marshalled vacant cars loaded quickly. When freight cars are kept standing beyond the fixed time, a fine for holdup must be imposed, and the persons concerned be called to account.

The number of passenger cars must be increased to meet the need of the people, and the role of men and women attendants enhanced so that they keep the insides of the trains bright and clean. It should be seen that all the waiting rooms of the stations in the service of the people are always kept clean and beautiful, and that an orderly traffic is established to remove congestion at the stations and in the cars, and to enable all passengers to travel without the least inconvenience.

In the last place, the ideological struggle must be strengthened against the bureaucratic style of work, the servile spirit manifested in
attending to state affairs and other irresponsible behaviour, which continue to persist among some of our officials.

Keenly realizing that what they are doing is a sacred job for the benefit of the state and the people, all our employees in transport should fight every manner of wrong practice such as bureaucratism, formalism and irresponsibility. They should feel sorry that the tasks given by the state and the people remain unfulfilled and should become dependable workers who will carry their tasks through to the end, no matter what difficulties and obstacles they may encounter.

Comrades, we have already accumulated a great deal of experience and have every possibility to develop our country’s transport more quickly.

In order to carry out the Two-Year National Economic Plan successfully, all the transport workers should perform their weighty tasks creditably, and achieve new, brilliant successes in the advancement of our transport.

Today the US imperialists and their henchman, the traitor Syngman Rhee, are trying frantically to turn south Korea into a colony of US imperialism, and are wrecking the national economy of the southern half of our country, making it a commodity market for Wall Street. Millions of unemployed people are roaming about the streets and other people, too, are suffering from poverty and hunger.

Only when the country’s economic foundations are firmly laid, will we be able to quickly improve the material and cultural standards of the people in the northern half, relieve the people in south Korea from distress, and restore and develop the demolished economy in the future.

Ours is a sacred and honourable job that decides the future of the state and the people, and our duty is important. Let us all join hands and fight on untiringly to develop our national economy quickly and build a prosperous country.
Fellow Deputies,

Yesterday and today we discussed highly important problems. We examined how the Two-Year National Economic Plan has been implemented, discussed the concrete measures we must take for its successful fulfilment, and are discussing at present the execution of the state budget.

For a thorough consideration of these important problems, you deputies should offer correct criticism and constructive views on each problem.

However, criticisms and views have not been forthcoming in the debate. Needless to say, we have done tremendous work and achieved great successes. So it is natural to highly estimate and praise the excellent results.

However, imperfections still remain in our work. At this session we should correctly criticize our defects and take measures to rectify them.

We must discuss at this meeting the way we are going to expand and develop our past merits and how to correct the demerits, that is,
errors and defects. From this point of view we should make a thorough analysis of the merits and demerits of the subjects being discussed.

As representatives of the people, you deputies should accurately criticize the demerits of the executive bodies and, at the same time, properly consider in this assembly various matters raised by the people.

But you are not active in offering criticisms. This is, in my opinion, because our people have not yet shaken off the old moral concepts and do not fully understand the importance of criticism. Some people worry whether criticism will hurt others’ feelings, and some think that they should just mind their own business, and need not criticize other people. Also, they regard criticism as an indecent act of meddling in others’ affairs needlessly and attacking them. They think it is immodest to raise objections especially with regard to the actions of their superiors.

Criticism must not be understood like this. Criticism is not levelled for criticism’s sake, nor is it to be used for an attack on any individual person. It must never be so. On all accounts criticism is applied to work itself and aimed at correcting faults revealed in work and developing it in the right direction.

Another reason for criticism not being active is that deputies of the People’s Assembly do not fully understand their constitutional duty of supervising the work of the executive bodies. That is to say, some of you deputies do not seem to be fully aware of your responsibilities as elected representatives of the people. In order to supervise the work of the executive bodies, deputies must not be passive in criticizing defects in their work. To properly represent the people’s interests, you should accurately consider, at the assembly, the requirements of the people and their major problems, the solution of which has been entrusted to you by them.

If you deputies fail to fulfil these duties, how can you report your work to the people who have elected you and sent you here? Our people mature politically as the days go by. They demand a
democratic life in accordance with the Constitution and will not tolerate such irresponsible attitudes on the part of their deputies.

It seems that your reluctance to criticize is also because of the wrong attitude of some knowledgeable people. Namely, they are afraid of making any criticism. They claim that if we criticize our errors and defects, these will become known to the enemy and, accordingly, reactionaries will be able to use them in slandering us.

What is important for us is to rectify our mistakes quickly. To realize mistakes and rectify them boldly is beneficial to the development of our work, and is in accordance with the interests of our people. What we should fear is not the enemy’s slander but the attempt to cover up our mistakes, instead of rectifying them promptly. If all our work goes well, we need not fear any abuses that are hurled at us by the enemy. The abuses may have some effect temporarily, but the masses will not believe them and, sooner or later, they will fizzle out. If we correct our mistakes through strong criticism and take the right path, our work will develop and the people will realize the justness of our cause more fully with each passing day. We should not be afraid of the reactionaries’ slander, but intensify criticism in the interests of the state and the people.

It is not because the work of our executive bodies contains no defects that criticism is not given. Everything we do is for the state and the people and that is correct, no doubt. But it is true that quite a few defects are revealed in the course of our work. Let me cite a few instances.

Many defects are found particularly in capital construction.

Firstly, some senior officials in this sphere are still unable to perform their tasks according to importance and priority.

Last year many road improvement projects were undertaken in North and South Phyongan and South Hamgyong Provinces. However, quite a few of them were not really necessary at the time. Many people were mobilized to straighten short winding roads and, for these projects, they did unnecessary work such as building new roads and obliterating farm lands in the process. As a result, a large
amount of manpower, materials and money were wasted.

Last year in Nyongbyon, North Phyongan Province, a project was conducted in which a wooden bridge was replaced with a steel-concrete one, which is not bad, of course. But this project was not urgently needed for traffic, because the bridge has little utility value.

Should they take the trouble to undertake such projects now? I do not think they should. It would do well to do them ten years hence. True, a tortuous road is not pleasing to the eye and is also inconvenient for traffic. But at present we have a great deal of work which is many times more important and urgent than such projects.

As you know, the Government is performing colossal tasks at present for the prosperity and progress of the state and the welfare of the people. Therefore, we shall put off those jobs that are relatively unimportant and do not have to be done right away. I think, therefore, our leading officials should give due consideration to the importance and necessity of given jobs before deciding on the order of priority.

Secondly, there is still plenty of wastage in the sphere of capital construction. Needless to say, waste is a general defect to be seen in other fields too, but it is particularly serious in this specific area.

Construction enterprises are loosely disciplined with regard to their work and work forces are not organized in a rational way. Some of them pay full wages even to the saboteurs who come late, leave early, and stay from work without due notice. And because they neglect a struggle to economize in building materials, there is much wastage in construction work—using ten steel reinforcements in place of one, iron rods in place of sorghum stalks and cement in place of sand.

This kind of waste may seem to be a trifle but, put together on a national scale, it is tantamount to squandering a vast amount of property worth hundreds of millions of won. If we continue with such waste, it will be impossible to reduce the construction cost. Since we are doing a great deal of building, we are short of everything—materials, funds and manpower. In order to construct
more with insufficient materials and funds, we should practise stricter economy and strive to eliminate waste.

Thirdly, in the sphere of capital construction, projects cannot be completed in time because of the failures to execute the state budget accurately.

Some enterprises feel the shortage of money as a result of financial waste, and others, on the contrary, do not spend the money allotted by the state on time, with the result that they have precious state funds frozen, bringing no profits to the state.

Besides, they do not invest funds on essential projects, because they are unable to decide the order of priority in appropriating funds, nor can they earn a due return as funds are used at random.

Both the financial waste and the failure to use money in good time are wrong. If the allotted funds are not used in time, it will not only hamper the circulation of funds but also prevent capital construction from being carried on systematically and, in the end, retard economic development.

Had they done their work a little better, the Ministry of Industry and the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry could have brought larger profits to the state and the people. But they did not. If we do not work properly and cause losses to the state and people, it means committing a serious crime against them.

Our People’s Assembly deputies are not too interested in the administration of state finances. They should be continually concerned about it and check to see how the executive bodies carry out the state budget adopted unanimously by the People’s Assembly. They are duty bound to supervise the enforcement of important state laws adopted at the assembly sessions.

Fourthly, the quality of capital construction works is low and they are not completed on schedule.

Their quality is still low in many respects. This is because senior officials do not strive to improve it but function in a facile manner, leaving the projects entirely to their subordinates.

We must fight resolutely against the tendency to leave work to the
lower officials and neglect giving timely guidance to and regular supervision of the work.

Next, I should point out that vigorous endeavours towards practising economy have not yet been made in all the spheres. Although we have striven for strict economy since liberation, we have failed to bring about satisfactory results.

Some of our officials complain that they do not have enough but they do not give a thought on how to economize and fill the shortage.

You may hold an opening ceremony, a completing ceremony, an inauguration ceremony or the like after a project has been finished, but it is wrong to give a banquet after the function and waste money. We must desist from this sort of pomp and lead more frugal lives and establish a sound democratic way of life.

We should fully convince the masses that economy is an important way to increase the property of the state and people and accelerate nation building and we should launch a widespread campaign to practise economy.

Furthermore, our officials have a wrong inclination to implement grandiose schemes from the outset. It is improper to make light of minor things, and to try to do great things recklessly, without taking into account the fact that our country is still young and that we are short of experience and our abilities are not yet well developed. Many a mickle makes a muckle. In the present situation we should begin with doing small things well commensurate with our strength and set out to do great things step by step.

Colleagues,

What I have mentioned above is only a few instances of the defects revealed among our officials.

Since you are directly engaged in state affairs, you must be well informed of these errors. Therefore, you should criticize them and be active in making proposals to overcome them at this meeting. This is the only way to enable those working at executive bodies to rectify their shortcomings and develop work still further. Criticism is an important weapon with which to proceed with our work. I hope you
will strive to make better use of this weapon.

In conclusion, I will touch briefly upon this year’s overall state budget.

A decision was made to carry out more capital construction projects which had not been envisaged when the Two-Year National Economic Plan was formulated; this resulted in a deficit of 1,500 million won in revenue in this year’s state budget as a whole. However, we must carry out any task in spite of difficulties if it is essential for the benefit of the state and people. This year we have to further increase capital construction for the rapid development of the national economy.

In the first place, we should repair, reconstruct and extend the railway lines in a big way. It is nearly five years since our country was liberated. We should construct a new modern building for Pyongyang railway station and replace passenger cars with modern ones.

In addition, we should expand the Phyongnam irrigation project, which is very important for the increased production of grain, and set up farm machine hire stations promptly.

On the whole, the food problem in the northern half of Korea has now been solved; but we cannot rest content with this. In order to effectively provide the people with food we should expand irrigation projects on a large scale in the future.

In the beginning peasants were not very interested in farm machine hire stations; they did not know much about them, but at present they earnestly want them to be set up because they are now aware that this will enable them to plough the land quickly and deeply at a low price.

The establishment of farm machine hire stations is indeed an important undertaking, which will open up new vistas in the development of our agriculture. We must make this undertaking a success.

To continue, with a view to fully solving the problem of clothes for the people, the expansion of textile mills is our important task
now. At first we planned to equip the Pyongyang Textile Mill with 30,000 spindles but increased the figure to 60,000. This mill will play a great part in solving the clothing problem for the people.

We have solved the food problem basically but we are still unable to solve the clothing problem. So we should be concerned more deeply about this matter and give first priority to the construction project of the Pyongyang Textile Mill.

Fellow Deputies,

All these undertakings can be completed only with the patriotic enthusiasm and creative labour of the people. Therefore, we must do all we can to carry out the important tasks confronting us by rousing our entire population.

In this way we will never fail to bring the Two-Year National Economic Plan to its victorious conclusion.
THE PRESENT SITUATION AND THE TASKS BEFORE THE SECURITY FORCES

Speech at a Meeting of Officers of the Security Forces under the Ministry of the Interior
March 14, 1950

Comrades,

In the difficult and complex situation after liberation the commanding officers and soldiers of the Security Forces overcame all the troubles and hardships bravely in firm unity and built up the Security Forces into a highly efficient fighting unit. Ever since they came into being, the Security Forces have been boundlessly faithful to the country and the people. They have performed great feats in the forefront of defence of the democratic base of the northern half of Korea.

The Korean Security Forces founded and trained by our Party and inheriting the brilliant revolutionary traditions of the anti-Japanese armed struggle, have demonstrated their indomitable strength in the fierce struggle against all types of class enemies at home and abroad. In particular, the soldiers of the unit guarding the 38th parallel crushed every military provocation of the enemy. In many battles including the battles of Mts. Songak and Unpha and of Kuksa and Kosan Hills the soldiers of the Security Forces defended every inch of our land with their blood. These brave soldiers completely eliminated the Paekgol Unit and Horim Unit of the puppet army which had invaded the northern half of Korea and indulged in plunder, arson and murder.
Further, the soldiers of the Security Forces at all points along the coastlines and frontiers, on the railways and other places shattered the crafty manoeuvres of spies, subversive elements and saboteurs. They defended the great achievements of our democratic construction firmly.

It is because the Security Forces, together with the People’s Army, are safeguarding the security of our homeland impregnably that our people triumphantly accomplished the democratic reforms and are now successfully carrying on peaceful construction.

The Party Central Committee is very much pleased with the Security Forces who are carrying out their militant tasks satisfactorily.

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic I would like to extend my thanks to the comrades attending this meeting and to all other officers, noncommissioned officers and privates of the Security Forces who are so dedicated to the defence of the country.

Comrades, today the international situation is turning in favour of the democratic camp.

On the international scene the socialist and democratic forces are gaining in strength daily, whereas the capitalist forces headed by American and British imperialists are on the decline and getting weaker with the passage of time.

World War II spelled ruin for fascist Germany and Italy and militarist Japan, the wicked enemies of the people all over the world, and greatly sapped the strength of Britain and France. Today, the conflicts among imperialist powers, including US imperialism, who are struggling for spheres of influence in the West, are getting worse every day. The colonial system of imperialism is slowly falling to pieces.

The Soviet Union which occupies one-sixth of the land area of the globe is growing stronger with time, and the peoples of many liberated countries in Europe and Asia have built new states of people’s democracy. The Chinese people founded the People’s
Republic of China after winning the revolution by overthrowing the Jiang Jieshi clique. In many countries of Asia and Africa the national liberation struggle is now going on fiercely against the American, British and French colonial rulers.

Today democratic forces and peace-loving forces all over the world are incomparably stronger than the imperialist forces and they constitute a favourable guarantee for the accomplishment of our revolutionary cause.

Our country has been freed from Japanese imperialist colonial rule for nearly five years.

In this period the people’s democratic system has been firmly established in our country on the basis of worker-peasant alliance led by the working class. On this basis, we founded the glorious Democratic People’s Republic of Korea by means of general elections throughout north and south Korea.

Today all the working people in the northern half of Korea, united rock-firm around the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, are striving selflessly as masters for the reunification and independence of the country as well as the political, economic and cultural development of the democratic base of the northern half. They are achieving brilliant successes in building a prosperous, independent and sovereign state.

In the northern half of Korea democratic reforms including the agrarian reform were carried out under the leadership of our Party, and the national economy is being regenerated and developing rapidly. We took over from the Japanese imperialists an industry which was marked by extreme colonial lopsidedness and deformity and was composed of dilapidated factories and enterprises, along with a devastated agriculture. However, we mobilized the people whose revolutionary enthusiasm erupted like a volcano after liberation and vigorously carried on with democratic construction. In a short span of time after liberation blast furnace No. 4 of the Hwanghae Iron Works, the Chongjin Iron Works, the Kangso Electrical Machinery Factory and the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory were rebuilt. They are installed
with new machines and carrying on production. Last year alone the Nampho Glass Factory was built, the Kilju Paper Mill and the Pyongyang Electric Bulb Factory were expanded and all are carrying on production at a remarkable pace.

In agriculture, in spite of unfavourable weather conditions last year when there was a severe drought, a much larger quantity of cereals was produced than in the pre-liberation year 1944. In our country now the food problem has been more or less solved.

Our successes in the spheres of education and culture are also very great. Everywhere primary and secondary schools have been set up where the children of the working people, denied the opportunity of learning in the years of Japanese imperialist rule, are receiving education. In particular, adult schools have been opened in various areas to educate illiterate persons who constituted the majority of the population. This enabled everyone to read and write, so that there is no illiteracy in the country. At present, brisk preparations are under way for the introduction of compulsory primary education. Many specialized schools and institutions of higher learning including the university have been newly established, where fine cadres are being trained.

The material and cultural standards of the people are rising quickly. The material standard of the working people is very high. Electricity has been provided in farm villages, so that the peasants have electric light. In addition, hospitals have been built for the people everywhere. Rest homes and holiday camps have also been set up to provide cultural rest to the working people.

Through the democratic construction for five years after liberation, a mighty democratic base has been built in the northern half of Korea. Today the people in the northern half, united solidly around the Workers’ Party of Korea and the Government of the Republic, are striving with devotion to strengthen further the democratic base of the northern half. They are waging a vigorous struggle to build a unified, independent and sovereign democratic state.

But a totally different situation is prevailing in the southern half of
our country liberated on one and the same day. The US imperialists are lording it over south Korea, and have turned it into a hellish place on earth.

On the very first day of landing on south Korea, the US imperialists started carrying into practice their long-cherished designs of aggression on our country in real earnest. They established a military government in south Korea and forcibly disbanded the people’s committees representing the people’s will. Cruelly suppressing the growing democratic forces, they even stamped out the democratic liberties and rights of the people. In disregard of the unanimous wishes of the Korean people to build a unified democratic government, they whipped up all types of reactionaries headed by the worst traitor Syngman Rhee and rigged up a puppet government through the May 10 separate anti-national elections. The Syngman Rhee puppet government engineered by the US imperialists is a reactionary regime comprising landlords, capitalists, pro-Japanese and pro-American elements and national betrayers. It is a traitorous regime which sells out the country and the people. Thus, the US imperialists have artificially divided Korea with the 38th parallel as the demarcation line and turned south Korea into their full colony.

Owing to the colonial enslavement policy of the US imperialists, the national industry of south Korea has been undermined terribly. The US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique intensify the exploitation of the agricultural section of the population double and treble. They are sending overseas all the rice produced by the peasants by the sweat of their brow.

The US imperialists and their stooges arrest, imprison and cruelly murder innocent people and patriots and drive people into a slough of unemployment and hunger.

Unable to maintain their existence any longer under the tyranny of the Syngman Rhee puppet clique, the south Korean people have taken up arms. They are today waging fierce guerrilla warfare for freedom and liberation, for the restoration of the genuine people’s power, on Mts. Halla, Jiri and Thaebaek and in many other places. Even
members of the puppet army of south Korea have risen in rebellion against the US imperialists and their stooges. As the days go by more and more people are crossing over to the northern half in large groups in search of a living.

Alarmed at the fighting spirit of the south Korean people, the US imperialists and the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique have started false propaganda to dull it. At the same time, they are moving ahead along the course of stepping up the policy of aggression and war against the northern half of Korea.

Labouring under a delusion to turn south Korea into a strategic base for aggression, use it as a bridgehead to conquer the whole of Korea and, further, invade China and the Soviet Union, the US imperialists are frantically making preparations for an aggressive war. They and their lackeys expand the armaments on a large scale and are forcing south Korean youths and students to join the puppet army. They are intensifying the machination to arm the puppet army and combat police units in an American fashion. The enemy is further intensifying reconnaissance activities and subversive and sabotaging acts against the northern half of Korea. They are continually committing reckless military actions in the areas along the demarcation line.

As you all know, the enemy concentrated most of their troops in the areas along the 38th parallel, and since early 1949, they have often carried out large-scale invasions against the northern half of Korea on Kosan Hill, Mts. Songak and Unpha, Kuksa Hill and other places all along the demarcation line. In the areas along the 38th parallel the enemy is now carrying out large-scale construction works for strongpoints and conducting operational military training more openly for aggressive ends.

All facts show that the war policy and aggressive manoeuvres of the US imperialists and traitorous Syngman Rhee clique have taken a more sinister turn.

In this military and political situation prevailing in the country, we must crush the aggressive schemes of the US imperialists, free the
south Korean people from colonial exploitation and oppression, and achieve the peaceful reunification of the country and territorial integrity. For this we must further consolidate the democratic base of the northern half of Korea politically, economically and militarily. We must step up in the southern half the mass resistance struggles and people’s guerrilla warfare against the US imperialists and their minions, the traitorous Syngman Rhee clique.

In particular, it is of primary importance to strengthen our armed forces. Only when we build up the People’s Army and the Security Forces to be invincible, can we firmly safeguard the country’s security and the people’s freedom and welfare and ensure success in our people’s struggle for national reunification.

As the Korean people in the past had no army capable of defending their country, they fell prey to the Japanese imperialists and had to lead a bitter life of a ruined people for as long as 36 years. Therefore, after liberation our Party founded the People’s Army and the Security Forces, the Party’s revolutionary armed forces, with the revolutionary fighters tried in the anti-Japanese armed struggle as their backbone for defending the country and the people against aggression by foreign imperialists, and has built up and developed them into powerful regular armed forces.

Under the leadership of our Party the Security Forces have now grown into a unit with great fighting capacity. However, you should not become complacent about this, but should do your best to increase their fighting power and combat readiness and make vigorous endeavours to defend the Party and the Government and every inch of the homeland impregnably.

The Security Forces should first of all tighten the work of guard. Soldiers should be clearly aware of the present situation in our country and perform their guard duties with high revolutionary vigilance, without slackening and getting easy even for a moment. In this way our soldiers can ferret out every underhand scheme of the enemy and crush it immediately.

The Party and the people expect a lot from the soldiers of the
Security Forces who are guarding the 38th parallel, the coasts, the frontiers, the railways and the important establishments of the state. Just behind you stand the Party, the Government, and your parents, brothers and sisters. You must not forget this even for a moment, not yield one inch of land to the enemy, and never allow him to desecrate our land.

If we are to check and frustrate armed raids and frequent military provocations by the enemy we should avoid being defensive in military activities and always take the initiative. Initiative in battle is not determined merely by numerical superiority. If an army, though inferior in numerical strength, works out good strategy and tactics in keeping with the existing situation and carries them out, it will be quite able to take the initiative. Therefore, we should take the right decision on the basis of correct judgment of the enemy’s conditions and organize and command the battle scrupulously and administer a crushing blow to the enemy.

In disposing troops and organizing patrols of guard, you must not spread out forces but concentrate them on important points and always keep reserve forces so as to be able to dispatch troops wherever necessary at a moment’s notice. You must stress on the guard duties in ambush and, in particular, arrange efficiently the round-the-clock watch and patrol on no-man’s lands. You should skilfully organize concerted actions between units and closely coordinate operations with the People’s Army.

In view of the enemy’s schemes which are openly aggressive now, we must build strong defence positions. It is necessary to construct more pillboxes and shelters proof against enemy shells and set up various kinds of barriers. The trenches should have solid gun emplacements, and firepower should be well organized and prepared so that you can even fire in darkness and carry on cross fire.

All the commanding officers and men of the Security Forces should organize their lives in keeping with the tense situation and always keep themselves ready to counter any surprise attack by the enemy. While crushing the enemy’s armed raids, the soldiers of the
Security Forces should sharply look out for the attempts of spies, subversive elements and saboteurs to steal into the depths of our rear through the 38th parallel demarcation line, coasts and frontiers. When spies are active using every means and way they know of, how can we remain indifferent? In the areas along the 38th parallel a strict order of traffic should be established among the inhabitants, rigid checkup and control should be exercised, and the units should forbid their soldiers to move about alone. In the rear the work of guarding railways, bridges, important civil service offices and industrial establishments should be strengthened.

If the Security Forces are to fulfil their combat tasks satisfactorily, they should strengthen the ties with the people.

At present the people who live near the 38th parallel have a greater hatred for the enemy and are more vigilant than anyone else. Because you have so far maintained close relations with the people, whenever there was a battle on the 38th parallel demarcation line, the local Party members took the lead and members of the Democratic Youth League and the Women’s Union came forward voluntarily to help the Security Forces. They carried meals, drinking water and ammunition up to the mountain tops braving the bullets.

In capturing spies, too, the people are of great help to the Security Forces. Recently the chairman of the ri branch of the Women’s Union in a village of Kangwon Province near the 38th parallel, captured spies. Disguised as an officer of our army and even accompanied by an “orderly”, a spy came along looking around nervously and told her they were coming from a unit in the rear. He asked her about the location of the unit in the forward zone and the lives of its soldiers. She was very vigilant and started feeling suspicious about the man’s words and behaviour. She scrutinized his attire and discovered that he was wearing civilian clothes inside the military uniform, and reported this to the guard post of the Security Forces. Alarmed by this report, the soldiers of the Security Forces arrested the men and interrogated them, and found out that they were spies who had infiltrated into our area in search of our military secrets. As you see, the people are
making every effort to help the Security Forces.

In future, you should strengthen further the ties with the local Party and government organs and arouse the people in the neighbourhood, so that you receive their support and active assistance. The source of the invincible strength of our army lies in the fact that it fights in close unity with the people. The anti-Japanese guerrillas strengthened their ties with the people under the motto, “As fish cannot live without water, so the guerrillas cannot live without the people,” and thus won the 15-year-long battle against the Japanese imperialist aggressors.

Our Security Forces consist of sons and daughters of the workers and peasants and serve the people with weapons given by them. The soldiers should equip themselves well with the noble revolutionary spirit of serving the people and with our Party’s revolutionary mass viewpoint. Thus, they should always love and respect the people, be humble and nice to them, and defend their lives and property with their own lives. They should establish close ties with the people also, so that they report on matters without delay, keep mutual liaison and give signals well. The Security Forces should particularly strengthen their relations with the local armed self-defence corps and Party and government organs, so that if anything happens, they report on it immediately to the Security Forces to cope with it. If the Security Forces and the people make united efforts in this way, the enemy will never be able to show up and the 38th parallel can be guarded more effectively.

To proceed. Combat training should be intensified in every way.

They say that there is now a tendency in some units of the Security Forces to neglect training on the pretext of battles and guard duties, saying: “It is the hawk that catches the pheasant.” This will not do. Without intensifying combat training you cannot increase your fighting power. If you sweat it out in training in times of peace, you will shed less blood while fighting. That is the rule.

In bygone days the anti-Japanese guerrillas conducted training regularly to improve combat techniques in spite of the arduous
circumstances under which they always had to fight the enemy. You should also conduct training energetically as if fighting the enemy in reality, and make constant efforts to master modern military techniques and a high level of fighting efficiency.

Since the Security Forces are on the alert at all times to carry out combat duties, they should draw up plans accordingly and scrupulously organize and conduct effective training. Given good organizational work, you can easily take time out for training during leisure while performing guard duties. It would even be possible to take collective training in turns. Whether training is conducted efficiently according to plan or not depends on how much interest the commanders take in it and how responsibly they direct it. Therefore, the commanding officers should always direct training personally on the drill grounds and insist on strict discipline to carry out the plan of combat training without fail in any event.

Then, what should be the type of training for the Security Forces to conduct skilfully?

Since the Security Forces perform their combat duties in small scattered units, it is necessary, first of all, to intensify tactical exercises and master superb tactics. The anti-Japanese guerrillas were always able to lead the superior enemy troops by the nose and put them on the defensive and pound them because they applied different tactics dexterously, depending on the battle situation. You must study and learn much from the excellent fighting experience of the anti-Japanese armed struggle.

In training you should learn what you can apply practically in battle, and you should conduct training well on the basis of the experience gained in battle. The Security Forces have already accumulated considerable combat experience. In future a profound study of this experience should be made to further improve the combat efficiency of the soldiers. This is essential to defeat large enemy troops with a small force in whatever difficult battle situation.

The Security Forces have day-to-day schedules of fighting and
guarding, so it is very important to conduct combat exercises like real fighting. You should suppose various situations that might be probable at your positions and the posts you are guarding, and then study and learn how to cope with them. In other words, you should conduct exercises efficiently to repulse or encircle and annihilate the invading enemy troops by using skilfully the positions and the terrain in the areas in your charge now, and to detect and catch spies, subversive elements and saboteurs by various methods such as ambush, surprise, outflanking action, envelopment and trapping tactics.

In the units guarding the coasts, frontiers, railways and important structures, much time should be devoted to searching exercises, and methods of verification should also be learned. In particular, training suited to the physical conditions of our country should be strengthened and a great deal of night training should be done. At the same time, training aimed at improving the specialized technical level of the soldiers should be intensified.

A soldier must be a good marksman. Whatever superior weapons will be useless if the men are clumsy at handling them. Therefore, all the army personnel from commanders to privates should practise shooting diligently. In keeping with the actual conditions of our country which is mountainous, field firing against targets at high and low angles and in mid air should also be practised prodigiously.

Previously the activities of sharpshooters have been very successful along the 38th demarcation line. It will do well to popularize this experience and train a large number of snipers. Thus, all the soldiers should be able to get one enemy with each shot.

If you are to improve your marksmanship, you should handle your guns with meticulous care and become proficient in their use. The weapon is the life and soul of a soldier. Anti-Japanese guerrillas shed blood and even laid down their lives to get hold of a single rifle. You should not forget even for a moment that the weapons you now have are stained with the blood of anti-Japanese revolutionary forerunners and that they have been given you by the Party and the Government
and the people. You should take every possible care of them like the apples of your eyes.

What shape the weapons are in is one of the criteria to judge the moral state of the soldiers and the combat readiness of the unit concerned. Therefore, it is essential to keep and take excellent care of weapons and timely repair disabled weapons and keep them ready for use at any moment.

Further, physical training should be stepped up to build up your bodies.

The soldiers of the Security Forces carry out the guard duties singly or by small teams, so there could be cases in which they have to fight the enemy one versus one, one versus three, one versus ten, and sometimes one team versus one company of enemy troops. Therefore, in the Security Forces various physical exercises including horizontal-bar and parallel-bar exercises should be largely encouraged and bayonet fencing drill be intensified. In this way the soldiers will be able to foster boldness, bravery and fortitude and courageously meet and wipe out any enemy who might attack them.

It is important to strengthen the training of officers in the units. Organizational functions and commanding ability of the commanders constitute an important factor deciding the outcome of a battle. Coming from worker and peasant stock, our officers had little education in the past and they have little experience in commanding their units. You took up arms so as not to become slaves of landlords and capitalists again, and have become officers by improving yourselves through an effort to work and learn with patriotic fervour. You cannot say as yet that your military knowledge and commanding ability are very high. Officers should never become self-complacent but should learn diligently and train themselves with a high sense of responsibility in order to acquire the ability to command units equipped with up-to-date weapons.

It is necessary to establish a system of study sessions for officers and run it efficiently so that commanding officers and staff members may get better acquainted with various military regulations including
combat regulations and improve their ability of organizing and commanding battles.

Officers should be proficient in handling weapons and combat and technical equipment available in their units. Especially since the artillery fire power of the Security Forces is being reinforced, all the officers, to say nothing of the commanders, should acquire a knowledge of heavy weapons and learn to use them well. Last year you brought guns up and fired them from hilltops doing very well in battles. This is a good way of fighting a battle in the manner best suited to the actual conditions of our country. In future you should draw well on such experience.

In the work of guard, too, you should constantly study the methods of organizing it and performing guard duties suited to our conditions and apply them to actual service.

This time you have summed up the work of guard and the winter combat and political training. You should not stop here but form groups and go to the units stationed along the 38th parallel and guide and inspect them, further increasing their combat readiness.

Further, iron discipline and order should be established in the units.

Discipline is the life and soul of the army. An undisciplined army is like an unruly mob. The Security Forces should be a powerful army with iron discipline and strict order. It should establish strict discipline to carry out without fail the tasks and orders allocated by the Party and the state.

Discipline in our army is a voluntary discipline. Our army consists of sons and daughters of the workers and peasants, and all its soldiers have joined it voluntarily, and not under pressure. They fight the enemy with weapons given them by the people; they perform the honourable duty of defending the country and the people. It will never do to maintain discipline by force among the soldiers who, as you know, are fighting the enemy voluntarily.

Our army is fundamentally different from the puppet army of south Korea. In the puppet army there is class contradiction between
officers and men. So the officers keep their men under control with the aid of clubs and “thrashing lessons” and keep their units in order by the threats of the bayonet. In our army, however, the commanders and the men are all like real brothers. So, in order to strengthen discipline, ideological education should be conducted well to inspire the soldiers with a high voluntary spirit.

At the same time, you should organize guard duties and all other work as well as life in accordance with the demands of the military regulations and manuals. You should not tolerate even the slightest undisciplined liberalistic acts. The undisciplined act of a guard may cause grave consequences.

There must be no cases in which a unit is surprised by the enemy because of careless performance of guard duties or it suffers a loss from reckless acts in violation of the set rules and order. We regard the soldiers of the Security Forces as dearly as grains of gold. Each soldier of our Security Forces is more valuable than a hundred enemies. The commanders of the Security Forces should tighten discipline and order in their units and see that their units are up to the mark in all aspects like a regular army.

Next, the work style of commanding officers should be improved. This is of great importance in increasing the fighting efficiency of the units and boosting the moral qualities of the soldiers.

The superiors and subordinates in our army which comprises sons and daughters of the workers and peasants, know no class contradiction and, accordingly, they form a harmonious whole. The commanding officers and men are all up to one and the same revolutionary task with the common objective, and fine comrades from among the men are promoted to officers.

The commanding officers of the Security Forces should love and look after their men with parental affection. Who else can the men count on now that they have joined the army to serve the Party and the country, leaving their parents and brothers behind at home? The privates lean on the commanders like their parents or brothers. So the commanders should love their men as parents would their children,
and maintain a strong personal contact with them and look after them kindly.

Indeed, it is possible in the army to punish soldiers who act against military discipline. But punishment should always be aimed at education. In our education explanation and persuasion should by all means be the principal methods. When a soldier has made a mistake, the commander should not merely abuse him or berate him strongly, but reason with him kindly and correct his mistake, and show him an example by his own deeds. In particular, it should be the most valuable quality of the commanding officers to teach their men by showing the examples of bravery and patriotic devotion in combat actions. Soldiers will respect and follow commanding officers with such qualities.

It is important to improve the work style of cultural officers who are directly responsible for the ideological education of soldiers. Cultural workers should always be modest, simple, exemplary in all work, indefatigable and persevering. More than anyone else they should scrupulously delve into the lives of the soldiers and pay heed to every aspect, and educate them with a good knowledge of their actual conditions.

In the units the cultural workers should treat the soldiers with warm motherly affection. If the mother is also strict in the home with a stern father, the children will not tell even their mother what they hide from the father. Then, the parents will eventually be left in the dark about their children’s behaviours and become powerless to educate them to be good persons. Suppose the father has scolded a child. Then the mother should reason patiently with him on the fault of his deed and teach him how to correct it. In the army units, too, cultural officers should work in this manner. Only then will the men come to them to tell them frankly about their faults or troubles.

During the anti-Japanese armed struggle political commissars used to take the lead in battle and bring up the rear on marches. They not only looked carefully after the guerrillas from the reveille till the bedtime, but also even helped them celebrate occasions like their
birthdays decently in spite of difficult conditions. This is the way the cultural officers should conduct their work effectively.

A company commander of the first battalion of the third security brigade has set a good example. He always looks deep into the lives of his men and finds out all their thoughts, troubles and needs and promptly solves their problems, no matter how small, and educates his men properly.

When the officers take such good care of the lives of the men and direct them properly, the fighting morale of the soldiers is kept very high. When a unit is administered this way, it can successfully cope with any difficult combat duty.

The commanders and cultural officers of the Security Forces should widely popularize this excellent practice. You must bear it in mind that if a private’s work style is defective, it will only concern the man, but the bad work style of a commander will affect the whole unit. You must intensify the ideological struggle to abolish warlordism and bureaucracy in the administration of the units and improve your style of work.

To proceed. The commanders and cultural officers of the Security Forces should pay close attention to the supply service and cultural entertainment for the soldiers.

A commander who is indifferent to the food, clothing and rest of his men is not qualified to command. At present the amount of provisions to the soldiers is considerably large. But I found during my trip of inspection to the units stationed in the forward zone that the diet is not very rich. This points to poor work on the part of the commanders, cultural officers and, in particular, supply service personnel.

If the commanding personnel tackle this matter intelligently and energetically, they will be able to feed the soldiers quite well. I do not think it is a very difficult job growing bean sprouts or making bean curd to feed them. You can salt mackerel in the sardine preservatories on the east coast, for instance, before supplying it to the soldiers. You must not wait simply for the higher authorities to solve the problem,
but you must settle what you can manage by yourselves and go on meeting your own needs.

Commanders should not think first of building a big office room for their own use, but should give priority to building nice bedrooms for the men, and good mess halls so that the soldiers can always have warm rice and soup.

During my inspection along the 38th parallel I saw men playing musical instruments of their own make. More means of cultural entertainment should be supplied.

Our economic situation is not yet satisfactory, and we cannot say that the people lead an affluent life. But our Party and people do not grudge anything for the soldiers of the People’s Army and the Security Forces. For all that, you should not live in a haphazard way. You must value and economize on state property and lead a simple economic life. You must wear your uniforms and shoes with care and save even a grain of rice from waste. And you must take good care of your weapons and equipment and supply service materials and always have enough reserves of them so as to rise to any emergency.

Further, the work of the cultural departments and Party organizations in the units should be strengthened.

We can say that the staff in an army unit plays the role of the human brain and its political organ, the role of the heart. That is why our Party formed Party organizations in the units in the first days when the Security Forces were formed and saw to it that they enhanced their role to ensure politically the successful fulfilment of the combat assignments. In the past the cultural departments and Party organizations of the units have made a great contribution to increasing the potential of the units, fulfilling guard duties and ensuring victories in battles.

What is important in the work of the cultural departments and Party organizations in the units is to strengthen Party cells and tighten the Party life of the members. In the Security Forces there are cells down to the platoons, and many Party members lead their life in the cells.

The first requisite for the strengthening of Party cells is to fill the
posts of Party cell chairmen with sound persons and teach them how to go about their work. They should be well taught concrete problems arising in the work of cells such as the methods of propagating and carrying out Party policy, of framing work plans, of conducting meeting, and of giving assignments and summing up their fulfilment.

The strengthening of cells also requires the fostering of hard cores. The more hard cores in the cells, the better.

The cells must exert a great deal of Party influence on the young soldiers and initiate them into the Party. In particular, many young people seasoned in battles should be admitted to the Party, and the work with new recruits should also be conducted proficiently.

At present there are many Party members in the Security Forces. If the Party members are properly mobilized, you will be able to carry out any difficult combat tasks successfully.

Party organizations should organize and guide the Party life of their members properly. Party members belong to cells without exception, so they should be faithful in leading their life in the cells. Party members should always observe the Party’s organizational discipline voluntarily and cultivate the habit of controlling their own Party life for themselves. A Party member should always reflect on whether he has attended Party meetings regularly, whether he has carried out the Party assignments properly, how much efforts he has made to equip himself with the Party’s line and policies and how he has participated in Party criticism. He should make an introspection of his Party life for himself every evening.

In particular, cadres should take part in Party life conscientiously. Cadres should attend Party meetings without exception and take the floor before anyone else. They should carry out the decisions and assignments of the Party in an exemplary manner.

Party members and cadres should make tireless efforts to improve their political and practical qualifications. If you fail to study and neglect to raise your political and practical levels, you will not be able to lead the soldiers properly and may make mistakes in your duties. All Party members and cadres should study prodigiously and make
vigorous efforts to raise their political and practical levels.

It is important to strengthen criticism in the organizational life of Party members. Criticism and self-criticism within the Party is an important tool to rectify the shortcomings and mistakes in work and advance the revolutionary work without interruption. Therefore, Party organizations should actively develop an ideological struggle against all manner of negative tendencies and particularly criticism and self-criticism by giving full play to democracy. Criticism should not be confined to meetings but be a day-to-day affair.

While properly organizing and guiding the Party life of the members, the cultural departments and Party organizations in the units should simultaneously carry on the work with cadres tactfully.

Our Party organized the Security Forces with revolutionary cadres who shed blood fighting as anti-Japanese guerrillas and with those faithful to the Party from among the sons and daughters of the workers and poor peasants. The cultural departments and Party organizations in the units should look after and educate the cadres constantly, and continue with the work of improving their qualifications by various methods including short training courses, talks and the like.

At present we need a large number of cadres. Take the Security Forces for example. They are in great need of cadres. In the Security Forces good comrades should be chosen and sent to military schools of all levels. In particular, close attention should be paid to the training of cadres for technical arms.

We cannot hope to train cadres in military academies alone. If the units provide good education and training to comrades who have considerable combat experience, they will be able to create enough reserves of competent cadres. Therefore, it is necessary to train reserves of cadres systematically on the principle of fostering into cadres those fine comrades who have been tried and tested in the practice of struggle.

It is essential to carry on properly the work of assuring purity in the ranks of the Security Forces. The enemy is cunningly attempting
to infiltrate into our ranks. One enemy within the ranks is more
dangerous than a hundred enemies without. You should always
maintain high political vigilance in order to prevent any undesirable,
alien element slipping into the ranks of the Security Forces.

Another important task of the cultural departments and Party
organizations is to intensify the ideological education of the soldiers.

Otherwise, it is impossible to perform guard duties and military
training well, to tighten military discipline, to enhance the confidence
in victory or to fight successfully against the enemy. During the
anti-Japanese armed struggle we set Marxist-Leninist education as
our prime task, and we managed to infuse the guerrillas with a firm
faith in the justness of their struggle and in victory. Thus we were
able to emerge victorious from the arduous struggle. The most urgent
task before you now is to carry on ideological and political education
with greater energy.

The important thing in ideological education is to acquaint the
soldiers clearly with the aggressive and reactionary nature of the
enemy and to inculcate a hatred for the enemy into them so that they
fight him resolutely. It is especially necessary to inspire the soldiers
thoroughly with hatred for the US and Japanese imperialists.

The US and Japanese imperialists are historically the sworn
enemies of our people. The US imperialists not only invaded our
country for a long time to swallow it, but are now occupying its
southern half. The Japanese imperialists dominated our country for
nearly half a century, imposing a bitter life of colonial slavery on us
Korean people. At present the US imperialists are pursuing their
policy of colonial enslavement in south Korea under the guise of
“helpers”. Moreover, the Japanese militarists being revived under the
protection of the former are scheming to stage an aggressive
comeback into our country.

The US imperialist aggressors are dead set against the
reunification of our country. The question of our country’s
reunification is after all an internal affair of the Korean people, which
allows of no foreign interference. The Korean question must be
settled by the Koreans themselves, by means of founding an independent and sovereign democratic state through free general elections covering north and south Korea. Nevertheless, the US imperialist aggressors insist on elections under UN supervision and they went to the length of rigging up a UN Commission on Korea. They went back on the decision of the Moscow Three Foreign Ministers Conference on the solution of the Korean question and even torpedoed the USSR-US Joint Commission. Moreover, although Soviet troops withdrew from our country two years ago, the US imperialist aggressors refuse to leave south Korea and are bringing in large forces of aggression to attack the northern half of Korea. By making ourselves sharply aware of such aggressive acts of the US imperialists and the comeback-scheme of the Japanese imperialists and exposing every crime committed by them, we must induce all our soldiers to fight resolutely against them.

The Syngman Rhee puppet government is an anti-people regime representing the interests of the national betrayers and reactionary elements including landlords, comprador capitalists, pro-Japanese and pro-American elements. We must thoroughly expose the reactionary nature of the puppet regime of Syngman Rhee, the quisling who is selling out the country and the nation. We must acquaint our soldiers clearly with the anti-people essence and corrupt nature of the south Korean puppet army.

Almost all the soldiers of the Security Forces personally experienced a bitter life in the past under the harsh exploitation and maltreatment of landlords and capitalists. Telling the soldiers explicitly that the nature of landlords and capitalists does not and cannot change under any circumstances, we should educate them to hate the class enemies and fight on devotedly so that the bitter experience of the past is never repeated.

We should also make the soldiers burn with revolutionary enthusiasm to rescue the south Korean people, by diligently explaining to them the misery and distress of these people who are suffering from poverty, ill-clad and hunger-stricken.
Simultaneously with educating the soldiers to hate the class enemies, it is essential to guide them into the line of thought of ardently loving the country and the people. Without the homeland there can be neither welfare nor future prosperity for our people. What a sad life our people had to lead because they were deprived of the country by the Japanese aggressors in the past! Large numbers of Korean patriots including the communists fought at the cost of their lives to regain this lost homeland. Therefore, we must educate the soldiers to ardently love the homeland won back with blood and fight against the enemy’s invasion defending every inch of the country.

It is the sacred duty and highest honour of the citizen to serve with the army for the purpose of defending the country and people. The soldiers should be taught to have a higher sense of honour and responsibility to guard the nation, and to fight for the country and the people, laying down their lives without hesitation.

Another important thing in ideological education is to teach the revolutionary ideas and theories of Marxism-Leninism. Good education in Marxism-Leninism is essential for convincing the soldiers of the correctness of our Party line and policy, instilling in them a firm faith in the victory of the revolution and equipping them with a scientifically-substantiated world outlook. Therefore, all commanders should pay great heed to Marxist-Leninist education.

You should teach the soldiers the revolutionary principles of Marxism-Leninism to make them clearly understand the truth that the capitalist system and, in particular, the Syngman Rhee puppet ruling system will go under because they are outworn and that our social system will surely win because it is new. When a north-south joint conference was called the year before last, Kim Ku who came and saw how things were in north Korea said that our system was very good and that our policy struck his fancy. He was of the opinion that because the north Korean communists were broad-minded and generous, he could cooperate with them quite readily. Then, he produced the “Seal of the State” saying, “General, please take this over.” I told him that the “Seal of the State” is not a thing to be
handed over or to be taken over, and that the leader will be chosen in accordance with the wishes of the people. At this, he said that he was impressed once more by the superiority of our social system, and bowed down his head.

Like this, even people who once set themselves against us are moved to admiration at the superiority of our system after seeing for themselves the realities in the northern half. You should educate the soldiers to fight for the homeland and the people with their lives with an abiding faith in the true advantages of our system and in victory.

We should educate the soldiers closely in our Party line and policy. This is most important in the ideological education of the soldiers.

Our Party line and policy are the creative application of Marxism-Leninism to the realities of Korea. Our Party sets forth a correct line and policy at each stage and each period of revolutionary development and organizes and directs the work for their implementation. In the army Party policy should be included in the general plan of studies, and lectures and explanatory discourses should be given according to regularly prepared syllabi concerning it. Cadres should form the habit of making a close study of Party line and policy and carrying them through to the end. They should regularly check up how their subordinates implement the Party’s policies and decisions and help them to carry them out in the correct manner.

The cardinal point in ideological education is to equip the soldiers thoroughly with the brilliant revolutionary traditions of the anti-Japanese armed struggle. Our army is the direct inheritor of these revolutionary traditions and has as its backbone true patriots of Korea who dedicated their all to the arduous 15-year-long struggle against Japanese imperialism. It is therefore necessary to make the soldiers know clearly about the roots of our army and to organize educational work meticulously in order to induce them to learn from the precious revolutionary achievements and combat experiences gained in the arduous anti-Japanese armed struggle and from the indomitable fighting spirit of the anti-Japanese revolutionary forerunners. I have
heard that the commanding cadres of the security brigade on the 38th parallel go among the soldiers and tell them a great deal about the experiences of the anti-Japanese armed struggle. This is a very good thing. Along with this, you should further step up education in the revolutionary traditions by preparing a great deal of explanatory material.

The cultural departments and Party organizations should distribute political news reports and hold political motivation work in a big way in line with the specific features of the guard units dispersed over a wide area, thereby helping to turn all the soldiers of the Security Forces into politically well-informed revolutionary combatants and bringing them to fight for the Party and the revolution with all devotion.

Cultural officers should enlist Party and Democratic Youth League organizations to educate the soldiers and give an effective political guarantee and direction to ensure the success of the military tasks in hand.

Further, the cultural departments and Party organizations should tactfully carry on information work to break up the enemy forces. We must widely communicate to the soldiers of the south Korean puppet army of the great successes achieved by our people under the banner of the Republic, their happy life under the people’s democratic system and our Party’s policy of peaceful national reunification and its correctness. At the same time, we must expose everything about the contradictions and discord within the puppet army, the aggressive nature of the US imperialists and the anti-people crimes committed by the Syngman Rhee quisling clique. If we activate such information work to break up the enemy ranks, the soldiers of the puppet army will open their class eyes and yearn after us, repudiate the fratricidal feud imposed by their superiors, and turn their guns on the US imperialists and traitorous Syngman Rhee clique. Eloquent proof of this is furnished by the Chunchon and Hongchon battalions of the south Korean puppet army who have crossed over to the northern half of Korea. If we conduct our information work effectively to
disintegrate the enemy forces, such acts will continue in the future.

Our soldiers should be proficient in the work of appealing to the enemy soldiers. Skilful work of this sort can make many enemy soldiers surrender without our firing a single shot. This work can be successful only when varied ways and means are employed. Methods used in peaceful times should be different from those adopted during battles. During a battle, firing, appealing, leaflet broadcasting and the like should be properly combined. And it will also be good to use speaker-mounted cars and shells containing leaflets. It is especially necessary to conduct the work of distributing leaflets on a large scale. In future the ideological offensive on the enemy should be further stepped up by various means and methods.

The cultural departments and Party organizations should properly draw on the experiences of Party political work gained in battles fought along the 38th parallel demarcation line. You probably have a lot of excellent experiences in ideological mobilization work done by commanding officers before going into battle, in motivation to encourage the combatants on the battlefields, in activities of cultural workers, etc. You must turn these experiences of political work into good account, and popularize them.

Comrades, I once more emphasize the fact that the situation in our country today is very acute. Judging from the enemy’s manoeuvres in the past period and the active reinforcement of his aggressive forces along the 38th parallel, it is possible that a still greater battle is to be imposed on us at an unexpected hour in the future. In view of the threatening situation, the Security Forces should observe sharply every movement of the enemy and maintain full combat readiness.

At present the morale of our soldiers of the People’s Army and the Security Forces is very high. All the officers and men are burning with hatred for the enemy and fully determined to wipe them out in one rush, should they make a reckless attack.

The Korean people have everything at their disposal to solve their problem by themselves. Our people will not allow anyone to deprive them of the liberties and rights they have won and they will never
again become colonial slaves. If the enemy eventually forces us into a fratricidal war, we will rise to the occasion with an all-people resistance and vanquish our adversaries with one blow.

You should strive to completely obliterate the aggressive plots of the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee quisling clique who are openly preparing for war. You should carry into effect our Party’s policy for the complete independence and peaceful reunification of the country.

I believe that all the officers and men of the Security Forces will live up to the expectations of our Party and country and people in further increasing their units’ fighting capacity and combat readiness and fulfilling their guard duties with greater revolutionary enthusiasm.
ON REORGANIZING THE SYSTEM OF GUIDANCE AND MANAGEMENT OF LOCAL INDUSTRY

Concluding Speech at a Meeting of the Organizing Committee of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea
March 24, 1950

Now I would like to speak about reorganizing the system of guidance and management of local industry on the basis of the questions advanced in the report and speeches.

As you all know, our country’s local industry now consists of state-owned factories, and cooperative and private enterprises. Local industry comprises small and medium-sized light industrial factories and enterprises. They produce a variety of consumer goods for the people mainly using local raw materials, the principal aim being to meet the local demands for the same.

Development of local industry is important for consolidating the foundations of an independent national economy and improving the living standards of the people. It is indispensable for strengthening the economic ties between industry and agriculture and enhancing the economic independence of local areas. It is also essential for producing more daily necessities through an effective use of local reserves such as locally available raw materials and unemployed manpower and for improving the local people’s living standards. Local industry plays an important role in developing the economy of
the country and improving the people’s standard of living.

Liberation found our local industry in a wretched state. In the past the Japanese imperialists suppressed the development of our national economy in every way to retain our country as a supplier of raw materials and a market for their finished commodities. They used to rob our raw materials for light industry, use them for manufacturing consumer goods in their own country and bring them back to sell at high prices in our country. Because of the Japanese imperialist policy of stifling our national economy, even handicrafts were ruined in our country. So, after liberation we had to start local industry from scratch.

Right after liberation our Party paid great heed to developing local industry and took various necessary measures. We encouraged private enterprises, saw to it that local people built or expanded factories on their own, and took steps to raise the technical and efficiency levels of the manufacturers, and improve management work in these factories. We also ensured that the artisans and poor fishermen in towns, rural areas and fishing villages organized themselves to form producers’ and fishermen’s cooperatives. Thanks to these steps taken by our Party, local industry came into being and today it plays an important role in the production of consumer goods. But we cannot rest satisfied with this. On the basis of the successes we have already achieved, we should develop it still further.

The material and cultural standards of the people are rising rapidly thanks to the people-oriented policy and attention of our Party and the Government of the Republic. With the successful attainment of the first year’s objectives under the Two-Year National Economic Plan, the incomes of the workers and office employees have increased sharply and the working people’s purchasing power has also noticeably risen. When the Two-Year National Economic Plan has been fulfilled, our people’s living standards will rise still further and the demands for daily necessities will also increase proportionately.

We must satisfy the demands of the working people for consumer goods by developing local industry. This necessitates reorganization
of the system of guiding and managing it, in keeping with actual requirements.

1. ON REMODELLING THE SYSTEM OF GUIDANCE AND MANAGEMENT OF STATE-OWNED LOCAL FACTORIES

The state-owned local factories constitute the backbone of our local industry, and so must naturally play the leading role in the production of consumer goods. Nevertheless, they fail to fulfil their proper role in this production. The consumer goods they turn out are neither varied nor of high quality. Taking advantage of this, private entrepreneurs produce daily necessities of the kind which the state local factories cannot manufacture, and sell them at high prices in order to make undue profits.

The failure of the state local factories to produce various high-quality consumer goods in bulk is due primarily to poor business management by the factory officials. Today the production scale of these factories has grown incomparably larger than before. In this situation, without adroit management of the enterprises they cannot move a single step forward. However, the management staff is not qualified enough to run the factories by themselves. This makes it imperative to further improve the guidance of the state local factories.

At present the local industry management bureau of the Ministry of Commerce is not in a position to guide and control all the state local factories in the country. These factories have now multiplied. So, the local industry management bureau of the Ministry of Commerce is almost unable to control and guide on its own all the numerous state-run local factories scattered all over the country. Therefore, it is impossible, with the existing system of guidance and management, to guide and control these factories efficiently and to
further develop state-owned local industry. This makes it necessary to reorganize the system of guidance and management of the state local factories.

In order to guide and control the state local factories effectively in conformity with the changed conditions, some state-run factories under the local industry management bureau of the Ministry of Commerce should be turned over to the provincial people’s committees. But those factories which require large funds for management or need technological guidance from the central authority and factories of national importance should not be transferred. Due to the shortage of technical personnel, the provincial people’s committees cannot undertake the guidance and control of those factories which need technological guidance. Moreover, in view of the regionalist tendency still found in the provinces, if factories of national importance are transferred to their jurisdiction, the products may result in being consumed in the provinces. This will hinder the proportionate improvement of the people’s livelihood and cause great difficulties to the central authorities. If ceramic factories, for example, are turned over, the provinces will consume a large part of the produced bricks themselves, thus preventing the central authorities from carrying on construction work according to plan.

Therefore, of the state-owned factories under the local industry management bureau of the Ministry of Commerce those which require a lot of money for management or technological guidance as well as rubber factories, ceramic factories and others having national importance should remain under this bureau. The rest should be transferred to the provincial people’s committees. A few days ago, the Cabinet of the Republic decided to remodel the system of guidance and control of the state local factories along these lines. It differentiated between the factories which should remain under the local industry management bureau of the Ministry of Commerce, and those to be placed under the provincial people’s committees.

Such reorganization of the system of guidance and management of the state local factories has a number of advantages. First of all, when
given charge of the state local factories, the provincial people’s committees can give effective and scrupulous guidance to the work of the factories in every detail, as they are minutely aware of the local conditions. Further, the provincial organs will overcome the tendency to rely on the central authorities for meeting the varied demands of the population for consumer goods and will give full play instead to their creative initiative for solving the problem by themselves. The local industry management bureau of the Ministry of Commerce will be relieved of its burden and be able to concentrate its guidance on important state-run factories of national consequence.

The Ministry of Commerce should promptly transfer to the provinces those state-owned local factories which are to be transferred and all the provincial people’s committees should take them over in their entirety.

Party organizations at all levels should pay attention to this work to ensure its successful and smooth progress.

The provincial people’s committees and the Pyongyang Municipal People’s Committee should be quickly provided with a department to direct state-owned local factories.

State-owned local industry will not develop spontaneously simply because we have revised the system of guidance and management of the factories. In future the development of state local industry will depend on the efforts of the Ministry of Commerce and the provincial people’s committees. They should establish a well-regulated system of guidance and responsibly direct and manage the factories under them.

Before anything else, the provincial people’s committees should ensure that their factories turn out products continuously. To guarantee constant production at the local factories, it is important to ensure timely supply of manpower, equipment, raw materials and other necessary things. At present there are many idle housewives, unused equipment and plenty of raw materials to be found in the local areas. By actively tapping and using all these reserves, the local factories should avoid interrupting production because of shortage of
manpower, equipment, raw materials and other supplies.

The provincial people’s committees should see to it that the factories under their jurisdiction expand the variety of consumer goods they produce and improve their quality as well. After all, improvement of their quality is tantamount to increasing their quantity. In order to improve the quality of products, the workers should strictly observe the standard operational procedures and raise their technical and efficiency levels. In particular, the provincial people’s committees should provide direction and exercise control to prevent the factories under them from the tendency to make easy products or expensive products, instead of turning out consumer goods according to planned indices.

The provincial people’s committees should ensure that production costs are steadily reduced at their factories. This is the only way to supply the people with cheap consumer goods and increase the profits of the factories. In order to cut production costs it is necessary to increase labour productivity and economize on raw materials and other supplies in every possible way. Local factories should eliminate waste of manpower and lower the consumption rate of raw materials and other supplies to the minimum.

Creation of more production capacities is necessary for increased production of consumer goods.

The provincial people’s committees should establish many new local factories. Instead of turning to the state for help, the provincial organs should strive to build them on their own. When it comes to building these factories with their own resources, the question of funds will present some difficulty. The state can furnish necessary funds. But if they operate the existing local factories efficiently and increase profits and reserves, they will be fully able to manage by themselves.

The provincial people’s committees should step up the struggle to build many local factories by turning the local reserves and possibilities to good account. The provinces should establish many small and medium-sized factories which suit local conditions. For
instance, they should not attempt to build fertilizer factories, which are large-sized or of a national character.

In order to increase the production of consumer goods the Ministry of Industry and the Forestry Bureau of the Cabinet should also increase workshops producing consumer goods in the factories and enterprises under their control.

2. ON REORGANIZING THE SYSTEM OF GUIDANCE AND MANAGEMENT OF THE COOPERATIVES

Cooperatives are mass cooperative organizations consisting of artisans and poor fishermen. In other words, cooperatives represent a form of collective economy.

In the brief space of time since their inauguration the cooperatives have made rapid progress. Seeing the advantages of the cooperatives, artisans and poor fishermen both joined them voluntarily and organized many new ones as well. Thus, in 1949 producers’ cooperatives, for one thing, increased in number by 92 per cent as compared with 1948, and their output was up by 61 per cent. Their joint reserve funds, too, increased and the living standards of their members are incomparably higher than before. Their members have got rid of exploitation by usurers and profiteers with the help of the state, and they are free from worries about production and marketing. Today the producers’ cooperatives are turning out large quantities of various consumer goods and thus making a great contribution, side by side with the state local factories, to improving the standards of living of the people.

But some producers’ cooperatives fall short of the level of development demanded by the Party and state and perpetrate acts detrimental to the improvement of the living standards of the people.
They fall short of fulfilling their production plans by a big margin and also fail to improve the quality of their products. Some even illegally dispose of the consumer goods they have produced and make undue profits, while wasting a large amount of funds through careless expenditure.

It is true that the Ministry of Commerce and people’s committees at various levels are accountable for such shortcomings in some producers’ cooperatives, but the greater share of responsibility lies with the Central Committee of the Consumers’ Cooperatives which directly guides and controls them. This central committee fails to give proper guidance to the rapidly growing cooperatives. In fact, it finds it difficult to direct and control them because it has so many tasks to attend to. It is also incapable of supplying them with raw materials and other requirements. It is illogical in many respects that the Central Committee of the Consumers’ Cooperatives should direct and control the cooperatives.

The function of guiding the producers’ and fishermen’s cooperatives should be taken away from the Central Committee of the Consumers’ Cooperatives, and separate systems be set up for their guidance. From the localities to the centre, leading bodies of the producers’ and fishermen’s cooperatives should be set up respectively, through elections held on democratic principles. They should undertake the function, formerly performed by the Central Committee of the Consumers’ Cooperatives, of guiding them. Of course, we could entrust the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry with the guidance and control of the fishermen’s cooperatives. This ministry has shipyards and fishing tackle as well as technical personnel for fishery, and so could give technical guidance and material aid to the fishermen’s cooperatives. But I think it reasonable to establish separate leading bodies to undertake the guidance and control of these cooperatives, rather than entrusting the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry with the task. The system of guidance and management of the producers’ and fishermen’s cooperatives should be reorganized at an early date along these lines.
While properly guiding the establishing of the leading bodies of these cooperatives, Party organizations at various levels should pay close attention to their management and operation.

Party organizations should see to it that the cooperatives run their economy on democratic principles, establish system and order and remove not only undesirable elements lurking within but also “idle members” who are loafing on the job. The cooperatives should increase the production of consumer goods and improve their quality by rationally organizing production and labour, increasing labour productivity and strengthening the systems of consultation on production and of imparting technical know-how. At the same time, they should increase joint accumulations, strengthen the production basis and correctly distribute dividends.

At present the cooperatives have no system of education. Neither is there any place that gives their members methodical education. Party organizations should establish a system of education in the cooperatives, whereby the cooperative members can be taught the spirit of patriotism and self-reliance and thoroughly convinced of the advantages of the democratic system and cooperative economy. They should thus ensure that all the cooperative members launch a movement for increased production vigorously, with a high sense of responsibility and zeal for production, and take good care of the joint property of the cooperatives.

Party organizations should properly assign Party forces to the cooperatives, heighten the Party members’ role as a hard core and enhance the functions of trade union organizations in the cooperatives. They should also give profound attention to building up the ranks of the officials in the cooperatives.

Party organizations should educate properly those artisans and poor fishermen who still remain outside the cooperatives, so that they voluntarily join them.

People’s committees at all levels should render active assistance to the cooperatives. Indeed, we should strictly guard against the tendency of cooperatives to rely simply on the state, instead of
standing on their own feet. But people’s committees should help solve such problems as are beyond the power of the producers’ cooperatives. They should use their good offices for obtaining production equipment and raw materials, for finding workshops, and so on, and help them to sell the products in time. The state should loan the cooperatives necessary funds for laying their economic foundations and regularly supply food to their members.

In conclusion, I would like to briefly remark on the collection of agricultural tax in kind in 1949.

We can say that last year the collection of agricultural tax in kind proceeded, in general, along the lines laid down by the Party and state. But considerable shortcomings appeared in collecting the tax for the late crops.

As was pointed out in the report on the results of the collection of agricultural tax in kind last year, few provinces paid their agricultural tax in kind on time, and its collection was generally delayed. The provinces failed to pay back in time the grain which was loaned out for use as seeds and food. It was originally understood that the loaned seed and food grain should be returned simultaneously with the payment of the agricultural tax in kind, but no province has done so till now. So far, Hwanghae Province has paid back only 52 per cent of the loaned seed grain and 20 per cent of the loaned food grain.

Such drawbacks in the collection of agricultural tax in kind last year are due to the negligence of this work by the provincial Party and people’s committee chairmen.

Although the provincial Party and people’s committee chairmen mentioned that the collection of agricultural tax in kind was an important work for implementing state law, they did not, in fact, endeavour to carry out this task precisely. They failed not only to do scrupulous organizational and political work for the purpose, but also to combat with those delinquents who did not pay the tax in kind on time. When the tax collection was being delayed in a certain province, its leading cadre went to the length of submitting a false report to the centre that the work had been completed, then hurried it
through so that the quality of the grain collected as tax in kind suffered, thus inflicting a tremendous loss to the state. In spite of the serious drawback evident in the work of farm tax collection, the provincial Party and people’s committee chairmen did not criticize themselves frankly at today’s meeting. This is very wrong. I deem it necessary from the Party standpoint to call to task the leading cadres of the provinces where grave mistakes have been committed in the collection of tax in kind. From the Party point of view, I feel the agricultural and food administration officials who were irresponsible in guiding the farm tax collection should be taken to task.

The cereals collected as tax in kind should be stored with care. These cereals should always be kept in storehouses or open-air storages, which should be closely guarded. Thorough precautions should be taken against their spoiling or damage from fire. Meanwhile, the construction of storehouses for keeping the cereals collected as tax in kind envisaged in the current year’s plan should be energetically pushed forward.

A proposal has been made to assess the tax in kind according to the fertility of lands instead of harvest estimates. I think it is premature to do so as yet. Although it is somewhat cumbersome to assess the tax in kind according to harvest estimates, the present conditions require us to do so.

By expanding the cultivated area, converting non-paddy fields into paddy fields and raising the per-hectare yields through widespread introduction of advanced methods of farming, we must satisfy to a greater extent the ever-growing food requirements of the workers and office employees.
ON INCREASING THE PRODUCTION
OF NONFERROUS METALS

Concluding Speech at a Small Meeting of the Cabinet
of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea
March 28, 1950

As I mentioned at the Consultative Meeting of Managers and
Model Workers from Major Nonferrous Ore Mines held last February,
we have before us the important task of quickly increasing the
production of nonferrous metals. Producing more gold, silver, lead,
copper and other nonferrous metals is of tremendous significance in
rebuilding and developing the national economy and strengthening
the defence power of the country.

Basing ourselves on the triumphant fulfilment of the national
economic plans for 1947 and 1948, we embarked on the
implementation of the Two-Year National Economic Plan last year.
As a result of the successful implementation of the national economic
plans over the last few years, the major factories and enterprises
destroyed by the Japanese imperialists have basically been rebuilt.
The nation’s economy has grown in scope, the ties among its different
branches have come closer together, and the living standards of the
people have risen considerably. However, this is but the laying of the
foundations for the building of the national economy. In the spheres
of economic construction we have more work to do than what we
have done so far. Within the shortest possible time we have to
complete the rehabilitation of the factories and enterprises, improve
the technical outfits of industry and agriculture, create new industrial branches and further raise the living standards of the people.

In order to carry out this task successfully, we must increase the production of nonferrous metals decisively. If only we have nonferrous metals, we can buy necessary machinery and equipment and other goods from any country at any time we want and use them in building the national economy and raising the living standards of the people. Therefore, we must produce more nonferrous metals and make effective use of them for these purposes.

The increased production of nonferrous metals is also essential for strengthening the nation’s defence capabilities. The present situation in our country is extremely tense. This year the US imperialists, who have occupied south Korea, are carrying out more naked manoeuvres to invade the northern half of Korea. Under their instigation the Syngman Rhee puppet clique are also openly stepping up preparations to unleash a fratricidal war, by reinforcing the National Defence Army in a big way and carrying on large-scale projects to build up positions along the 38th parallel. They are frequently perpetrating large-scale armed intrusions into the northern half of Korea. Of late, the manoeuvres of the US imperialists and their stooges, the Syngman Rhee puppet clique, are alarming.

The present military and political situation requires us to keep a close watch over every move they make, and to further increase the defence capabilities of the country. We must strengthen our defence capabilities in every way in order to cope with the enemy whenever he unleashes a war. For this we must augment the production of nonferrous metals quickly and develop the defence industry. Without copper and other nonferrous metals we cannot make shells and bullets or signal equipment.

If we are to satisfy the demands of the national economy and defence, we must produce more nonferrous metals than envisaged in this year’s plan. Proceeding from these demands we have discussed the plan for their increased production at today’s meeting.

Inclusive of the additional plan considered at today’s meeting, this
year’s plan for production of nonferrous metals envisages over the 1949 figures an increase of 166 per cent in gold, 118.8 per cent in silver, 210.6 per cent in copper and 245.8 per cent in lead. It is true that these figures are much higher than those of last year, but the absolute figures are not so high. Last year’s gross industrial output value far surpassed the level of the pre-liberation year of 1944, but the production of nonferrous metals failed to reach the level of that year. This shortfall is not because our country lacks the resources of nonferrous metals. Since the past, our country has been internationally renowned as a country abounding in gold, silver and other treasures. In our country there are inexhaustible deposits of gold, silver, copper, lead and other nonferrous metals everywhere. The shortfall in the production of nonferrous metals is entirely because the state has concentrated on providing equipment, materials, funds and manpower for the rehabilitation and re-equipment of ferrous ore mines, while making only a small amount of investment in the rebuilding and reequipping nonferrous ore mines. Once we make concentrated investments in the production of nonferrous ores, we will be able to fulfil not only this year’s basic plan for the production of nonferrous metals but also the plan for the increased production.

Then, what is to be done to increase the production of nonferrous metals quickly?

First, we should increase the production capacity for nonferrous ores.

In order to produce more, we must, of course, exert our primary efforts for the proper management of existing nonferrous ore mines. However, their proper management alone can never meet the ever-increasing demand of the national economy and defence for nonferrous metals. Therefore, we must strive to increase the production capacity, while laying primary emphasis on the proper management of the ore mines now in operation. We should modernize and expand Songhung, Suan, Holtong and other existing nonferrous ore mines and increase their production capacities. We should quickly
complete the projects now under way for the development of ore mines. Meanwhile, we should inspect the closed mines and pits and rebuild those which appear promising. In order to do this, we should concentrate state investments and intensify prospecting activities.

With a correct understanding of the importance of the production of nonferrous metals the State Planning Commission and the ministries concerned should give priority to providing necessary equipment, materials, funds and manpower for the modernization and expansion of existing ore mines and the development of new ones. The equipment and materials which cannot be produced at home should be imported. The Ministry of Industry should promptly inspect the closed mines and pits and report to the Cabinet about those which are worth rebuilding.

Prospecting is the first process of ore production. Once this work is given precedence, we can then discern the different kinds of ores, their locations and the quantity of the deposit and, accordingly, the mines can secure an adequate deposit of ores in advance and correctly choose suitable locations for new mines to be developed. Therefore, it is extremely important to intensify prospecting.

The Ministry of Industry should make great efforts to prospect the ore mines being developed at present and the closed mines. They should prospect the Komdok, Kaun, Suan and Kanggye areas particularly well.

At present, some officials, basing themselves on the prospecting data left over by the Japanese imperialists, claim that there are not large deposits of nonferrous ores in the Komdok area. They are wrong. The Japanese imperialists were engrossed in plundering our country of its natural resources; they had not conducted any overall, systematic prospecting. Therefore, their data are unreliable. Immediately after liberation a certain official said that our country did not have large deposits of iron sulfide, and proposed to reorganize the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory for another purpose. We told him this was impossible. What would happen, if we rely upon the data on prospecting left by the Japanese imperialists or on stupid people and
do not ourselves conduct prospecting, hastily concluding instead, that our country has no mineral resources? It would prevent us from developing the unlimited natural resources in our country and making effective use of them.

I think the Komdok area is most promising as a centre of nonferrous ore production. We should conduct prospecting at this zone first.

The Ministry of Industry should set up prospecting stations in the areas of Komdok, Kaun, Suan and Kanggye and provide them with a sufficient amount of equipment and materials for this purpose.

Secondly, we should normalize production at the ore mines and increase the concentration rate.

We should give priority to removing overburden in open-cast mining and to tunnelling down in the pits. This is an important guarantee for normalizing production at the mines. At present some mines are unable to overcome fluctuations in production. This is only because of the imbalance between tunnelling and extracting. Without giving priority to removing overburden and tunnelling before extracting, the mines cannot secure an adequate amount of ores in stock, prepare diggings and, accordingly, cannot normalize production. Therefore, the mines should establish a system under which precedence is given to removing overburden and tunnelling before extracting and should follow this system strictly.

In order to increase the speed of tunnelling and extract ores in large quantities, the mines should actively introduce advanced methods of tunnelling and extracting and carry out an extensive campaign among the drillers to handle many machines. At today’s meeting an official of the Ministry of Industry claimed that in order to fulfil this year’s plan for the production of gold and lead alone, more than 10,000 men are required. But we must not attempt to fulfil this year’s nonferrous ore production plan through increasing the manpower. At present we do not have sufficient manpower resources. Therefore, the ore mines should introduce advanced techniques and require the drillers to operate a number of drills at a time in order to
raise labour productivity. This will effectively increase ore production. They say that at present in a certain country a driller operates more than two drills. We can do this, too, if we use drill jumbos. All ore mines should wage a widespread campaign to make a driller handle more than two drills at a time, by using the jumbos.

Increasing the concentration rate is very important. Even if the dressing plants raise it by just one per cent, we can obtain several thousand tons of valuable ores with the existing equipment and manpower and without additional investment. Therefore, raising the concentration rate means, in the last analysis, securing a huge reserve for the production of ores. At present, however, the dressing plants do not raise the rate, so that a considerable amount of valuable ores mined at tremendous expense and using a lot of manpower are mixed together with tailings and thus lost. This is deplorable, indeed. The dressing plants must improve the existing dressing facilities and make effective use of them and maximize the concentration rate, so as not to waste even a gramme of the minerals which the miners have had a hard time in digging out. Henceforth, ores containing more than 20 per cent of lead should not be dressed but sent to the smelteries directly by screening them well.

Thirdly, we should reequip and expand smelteries.

In the past the Japanese imperialists did not develop the smelting industry in our country. They built a few smelteries such as those in Nampho, Munphyong and Hungnam, but they were all lopsided. The Japanese imperialists smelted crude copper and lead there before shipping them out to their country for reprocessing. Even this small number of lopsided smelteries was all destroyed by them in their flight after surrender.

Following liberation we strove to rebuild and reequip the Nampho, Munphyong and Hungnam Smelteries. But they still have quite a few defects. The smelteries should reequip and increase the facilities for the production of copper and lead. They should perfect the processes for extracting all the incidental minerals such as gold and silver. The Munphyong Smeltery should increase the lead-electrolysing facilities
within the first half of this year and the Hungnam Smeltery should transform the copper-electrolysing facilities into lead-electrolysing ones before September this year. The Nampho Smeltery should expand the copper-electrolysing facilities beyond the limits envisaged by this year’s plan, and complete the construction of a converter now under way and put it into commission as soon as possible.

Fourthly, we should improve labour protection and safety facilities and intensify the education of the workers in safety measures.

In the past the Japanese imperialists concentrated only on exploiting the Korean workers as much as possible, and paid no attention to providing them with labour protection and safety facilities. As a result, many innocent Korean workers were killed or disabled due to accidents during work. But, now that our country was liberated and the working class have become masters of the country and state power, the disasters of the Japanese imperialist days must not recur. We must direct special concern to perfecting labour protection and safety facilities and must not spare any efforts in this direction. At the same time, we should regularly conduct education in labour safety among the workers so that they will voluntarily abide by the labour safety regulations. Then there will be no accidents or disasters occurring at the ore mines.

The Minister of Industry should send leading officials to major ore mines who, in turn, should develop close contacts with officials of local Party and power organizations in order to wage a mass movement to increase the production of nonferrous metals.

I am sure that you will carry out all the above-mentioned tasks without fail so as to exceed the targets of this year’s plan for the increased production of nonferrous metals.
Nearly five years have elapsed since our country was liberated from the protracted colonial oppression of Japanese imperialism and a broad avenue opened up before our people for building an independent and sovereign democratic state. Korea is now a free country and for the first time the Korean people have established their government on their land.

Immediately after liberation local people’s committees were formed in all parts of Korea. Formed of representatives of the workers, peasants, men in the cultural field, small tradesmen, entrepreneurs and people of various other strata, the people’s committees were a genuinely people’s power. Under the leadership of the people’s committees the Korean people set out to build up democracy in their country.

But the Korean people’s unanimous desire to develop their country into a unified independent and sovereign state has not been fulfilled.

One month after Soviet troops had routed the Japanese army the aggressive army of US imperialism entered south Korea. As soon as the aggressive army of US imperialism arrived, the reactionaries began to raise their heads in south Korea. It was not long before the Korean
people clearly realized that the US imperialists had no desire to see Korea independent and were plotting to turn Korea into their colony.

It was evident immediately after liberation that north Korea, to which the Soviet army had come, and south Korea, which the US army had entered, were moving in opposite directions.

In August 1945 the Soviet army issued its first declaration to the Korean people. It read in part:

“Korean people! ... Korea has become a country of freedom. However, this marks only the first page in Korean history. An abundant, fruitful orchard is the results of man’s efforts and vigour. Therefore, the happiness of Korea, too, can only be achieved by the heroic efforts that you Korean people will exert. Remember, Korean people! You have happiness in your own hands. You have attained liberty and liberation. Now everything is up to you. The Soviet army will provide the Korean people with all conditions for the free and creative labour you are bound to embark on. Koreans must make themselves the creators of their own happiness.”

The Soviet army, as it had promised in this declaration, supported the people’s committees in every way and provided all conditions for the Korean people to carry out democratic reforms and build a new happy life by their own hands.

In south Korea, however, the situation was totally different. The moment it arrived in south Korea, the US army issued a proclamation in the name of MacArthur, which read in part:

“All powers of government over the territory of Korea south of 38 degrees north latitude and the people thereof will be for the present exercised under my authority. Persons will obey my orders and orders issued under my authority. Acts of resistance to the occupying forces or any acts which may disturb public peace and safety will be punished severely.

“For all purposes during the military control, English will be the official language.”

Carrying this proclamation into effect in south Korea, the US military government authorities dissolved the people’s committees,
which had been established by the people themselves according to their own will, deprived our people of their freedom of speech, the press, assembly and association, and imprisoned and murdered patriotic people. The US imperialists pursued the reactionary policy of turning the southern half of our country into their colony.

When the USSR-US Joint Commission met to carry out the decision of the Moscow Three Foreign Ministers Conference adopted in December 1945, the Soviet delegation made strong efforts for the establishment of a unified democratic government in Korea.

The US imperialists, however, considered that if such a democratic united government were to be established in Korea, this would prevent them from putting their aggressive policy into effect. So, they stubbornly objected to the just Soviet proposal and torpedoed the decision of the Moscow conference.

The quisling Syngman Rhee and other reactionary elements in Korea are despicable traitors who have betrayed the interests of the country and the people; acting upon the US military government’s directive, they came out against the decision of the Moscow conference from the beginning under the slogan of “anti-trusteeship”. They helped the US imperialists to frustrate the implementation of the decision of the Moscow conference which fully conformed to the Korean people’s interests and to wreck the work of the USSR-US Joint Commission.

Thus, Korea, freed from Japanese occupationist oppression, has been artificially divided, with the 38th parallel as the demarcation line, and the south Korean people find themselves again groaning under the rule of foreign invaders, the US imperialists.

The most vital task facing the north Korean people in building a unified and independent democratic state, in the political situation
prevailing in our country after liberation, was to rally all the
democratic and patriotic forces and lay a solid political and economic
base in the northern half of our country for the building of a unified
and democratic state.

In order to carry out this task successfully our Party put forward a
fighting programme, which was:

1. To strengthen the people’s committees, genuinely people’s
government bodies, firmly relying on the Democratic National United
Front which rallies all democratic parties, public organizations and
patriotic forces;

2. To liquidate the evil aftermath of Japanese imperialist rule, the
main obstacle to the building of a democratic state, grant democratic
liberties–freedom of speech, the press, assembly, association and so
forth, establish and strengthen the trade union and other democratic
public organizations;

3. To abolish the feudal tenant system once and for all by
enforcing an agrarian reform to confiscate the land owned by the
Japanese imperialists and the landlords, and distribute it gratis to the
peasants with no land at all or little land. To nationalize factories,
mills, transport services, banks, mines and forests of the Japanese
imperialists and traitors to the nation, to restore the factories, other
enterprises and the railways which had been destroyed by Japanese
imperialism and to improve the people’s life;

4. To train our own cadres for running the state and introduce a
democratic educational system and expand the network of schools.

This fighting programme for the democratization of Korea
conformed to the interests of all sections of the Korean people and
had their unreserved support and approval. Our Party unwaveringly
led our people in their struggle to carry this programme into effect.

In 1946 democratic elections to the local people’s committees
were held and, on this basis, the North Korean People’s Committee,
the central organ of power, was established for the purpose of
strengthening the people’s committees–people’s government
bodies–and enhancing their role in building up democracy.
The elections to the people’s committees were held on the basis of universal, equal and direct suffrage by secret ballot. The elections were held under conditions in which the broadest masses of the people could freely express their true will. These were the first democratic elections in the history of Korea.

In the elections to the local people’s committees 99.6 per cent of the voters went to the polls. Those who were barred from taking part in the elections according to the election rules numbered only 4,387 persons, and these were pro-Japanese elements, insane persons or people who had lost their right to vote by a court ruling.

People elected to the provincial, city and county people’s committees were 3,459, of whom 510 were workers, 1,256–peasants, 1,056–office workers, 311–workers in the field of culture, 145–tradesmen, 73–entrepreneurs, 94–religious believers and 14–from other fields.

Consequently, the people’s committees are genuinely people’s organs of power composed of representatives of all strata of the Korean people based on a strong alliance of the workers and peasants led by the working class. The people’s committees were set up by the people themselves.

The elections to the local people’s committees and the North Korean People’s Committee legally consolidated the people’s committees as organs of state power.

The people’s committees rely on the broad masses of the people in conducting their work, invariably defend the people’s interests, faithfully serve the people, enjoy the unqualified support of all the people and maintain ties of kinship with them.

We had to carry out the democratic reforms without fail in order to assure the successful building of an independent democratic state. Without the democratic reforms we would have been unable either to rehabilitate and develop the ruined national economy and radically improve the working people’s life or to establish a people’s democratic system in our country.

The first democratic reform was the agrarian reform, the aim of
which was to emancipate the peasants who made up some 80 per cent of the population from the oppression and exploitation of the feudal landlords.

In March 1946 the Provisional People’s Committee of North Korea announced the Agrarian Reform Law and confiscated 1,000,325 hectares of land belonging to the Japanese imperialists, traitors to the nation and landlords, which was distributed free to the peasants with no land at all or little land.

As a result of the agrarian reform, feudal landownership, which was an obstacle to the advancement of our countryside, was liquidated, and the economic footholds of the landlords and local usurers, the pillar of reaction in the countryside, were wiped out.

The agrarian reform emancipated the peasants once and for all from feudal exploitation and subjugation and made them the owners of the land, thus realizing the centuries-old desire of our peasants, increasing their political enthusiasm, patriotism and zeal for production, and providing conditions for raising their material and cultural standards.

The agrarian reform opened up a new path for the development of our agriculture. The agrarian reform strengthened the ties between town and countryside and made it possible to solve with ease the problem of supplying food to the people and raw materials to industry.

The agrarian reform was followed by the nationalization of major industries, transport facilities, communications and banks formerly owned by the Japanese and the traitors to the nation.

On August 10, 1946 the Provisional People’s Committee of North Korea promulgated the Law on the Nationalization of Industries. Under this law, the factories, mills, banks, transport and communications facilities, formerly owned by the Japanese imperialists, pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation, became the property of the state, of all the people.

All these enterprises were built up on the Japanese imperialists’ cruel exploitation of the Korean people and their plunder of Korea.
For nearly half a century the Korean people were compelled to work for the Japanese imperialists and their stooges, pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation, suffering poverty and hunger.

The production facilities, which became the property of the people with the nationalization of industries, are used for the good of the working masses and constitute the basis for the rehabilitation and development of our national economy.

The nationalization of industries in north Korea deprived the reactionaries and pro-Japanese elements of their economic footholds there and made the state sector predominant in the national economy. Nationalization of industries created the conditions for the planned development of the national economy. The workers now work for themselves and for their country. A broad patriotic movement for increasing production unfolded among them, the like of which our country had never known.

Along with the Law on the Nationalization of Industries, the Labour Law was promulgated.

During the occupation by Japanese imperialism the Korean workers were severely exploited and worked 12-14 hours a day. The conditions of women and juvenile workers were even more wretched. Labour protection and social insurance were nonexistent.

The Labour Law announced by the Provisional People’s Committee of North Korea brought about a radical improvement in the working conditions and material standards of the workers and office employees.

According to the Labour Law an 8-hour working day was introduced for factory and office workers and a 7-hour day for those engaged in harmful labour. A 5-6 hour working day was introduced for children between the ages of 14 and 16 and child labour under the age of 14 was prohibited. A paid holiday of two weeks to one month a year is granted to factory and office workers and all measures are taken for social insurance and labour protection.

With the introduction of the Law on Sex Equality women, who make up a half of the Korean population, came to take part in the
political, economic and cultural life of the state on an equal footing with men. Today 11,509 women are on the people’s committees at all levels and 69 are deputies to the Supreme People’s Assembly.

As you see, as early as 1946 democratic reforms were carried out in all spheres of politics, the economy and culture in the northern half of our country. We were confronted with the tasks of consolidating the major results of the historic democratic reforms, rehabilitating and developing the national economy in the shortest possible time and improving the material and cultural standards of the people. In the five years since liberation a vast amount of work has been done in our country to carry out these tasks.

The difficulties encountered in rehabilitating and developing our industry were manifold. When they were defeated the Japanese imperialists destroyed industrial and transport facilities and flooded mines.

As a consequence of the colonial rule of Japanese imperialism, our people had no cadres of their own when liberation came. We had neither competent technical personnel to rehabilitate and develop industry nor cadres to manage enterprises skilfully.

During Japanese imperialist rule the industry of Korea was subordinated to the Japanese economy as its appendage. Our industry, which was characterized by extreme colonial lopsidedness, could not produce the necessary machines, raw materials and other supplies on its own and its technical equipment was obsolete and worn-out.

All the difficulties, however, were overcome by the patriotic struggle of all the Korean people. By their great creative labour the Korean people bravely surmounted all these difficulties and achieved major successes in the struggle for the rehabilitation and development of the national economy.

We successfully accomplished the 1947 and 1948 plans for the rehabilitation and development of the national economy and embarked on the Two-Year National Economic Plan for 1949 and 1950. The Two-Year Plan adopted at the Second Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly set forth the following important tasks:
1. To increase the growth rate of production in order to exceed the prewar level of industrial production;

2. To liquidate the colonial one-sidedness of industry, a baneful aftermath of Japanese imperialist rule, and lay the foundations of an independent national economy;

3. To create the material conditions for rehabilitating speedily, after the reunification of the country, the south Korean economy which has been devastated by US imperialism;

4. To raise the material and cultural standards of the people by increasing the production of major consumer goods.

The working masses in north Korea have risen as one man in the effort to implement the Two-Year National Economic Plan. At factories and other enterprises and on construction sites the workers are actively conducting emulation campaigns for increased production to fulfil the Two-Year Plan before the set time. More than 300,000 workers and technicians are now participating in the emulation campaigns and many enterprises fulfilled their 1949 plans ahead of schedule.

In industry the target for 1949, the first year of the Two-Year Plan, was exceeded by 2.8 per cent and the 1950 plan is also being carried out successfully. At present, in response to the call of workers at the Hungnam Chemical Factory and the other three major enterprises in South Hamgyong Province, production emulation campaigns are in full swing throughout north Korea to mark the fifth anniversary of the country’s liberation. Many enterprises decided to complete their plans for the current year before August 15 and the Unryul Mine, the Hamhung Lorry Station and many other enterprises had fulfilled their assignments under the Two-Year Plan by the end of February.

In the past few years industry, the main sector of the national economy in north Korea, has made remarkable progress.

As compared with 1946 industrial output grew by 53.3 per cent in 1947, by 117.9 per cent in 1948 and by 236.7 per cent in 1949.

We have not only rehabilitated industry but also built many new factories and mines and rebuilt and expanded others with modern
techniques. In 1949 a glass factory was built in Nampho, the first of its kind in our country. This factory will supply various glass products to the building industry and to the population. The Kilju Paper Mill and the Pyongyang Electric Bulb Factory have been enlarged. The construction of the Munphyong Zinc Factory is successfully under way, and it will be one of the major enterprises in our nonferrous metallurgical industry. The Kangso Electrical Appliances Factory, due to start operation at the end of this year, will contribute greatly to the development of the national economy of our Republic.

New big hydroelectric power stations, metallurgical plants, machine-building factories and textile mills are under construction. The Pyongyang Textile Mill, to be completed this year, will produce over four times as much fabrics as was produced by the textile industry of north Korea during Japanese imperialist rule.

Some industries have already increased their production beyond the level of 1944, a record year during Japanese imperialist rule.

The production of machinery increased by 146.9 per cent compared with 1944 and the production of light industry goods grew by 52.7 per cent. The colonial lopsidedness of industry is gradually being eliminated and the foundation of the national economy is being laid. Industrial output is increasing from day to day, the internal accumulations of industries are rising, and all the weaknesses which remained in the industrial field are being rapidly eliminated.

However, it must be pointed out here that the artificial division of our country by the demarcation line at the 38th parallel is seriously interfering with the development of Korea’s economy, too.

Today south Korea has no supplies of electric power, coal and various goods produced largely in north Korea, and north Korea gets no supplies of various industrial raw materials and farm produce from south Korea. The division of the country into north and south has greatly affected the economy of south Korea in particular.

In the past five years we have also achieved notable results in the rural economy. Enthusiasm for production has developed considerably among the peasants who became the owners of land.
following the agrarian reform. Among the broad masses of the rural population brisk efforts are being made to increase crop yields, and irrigation projects are in progress as a movement of all the people.

In the past the northern half was the industrial zone of our country and south Korea, its granary. However, owing to the aggressive policy of the US imperialists, a reactionary ruling system has been established in south Korea and the people of the northern half are unable to get food from the southern half. Under these conditions our people were confronted with the urgent task of converting the northern half of our country into a region fully capable of attaining self-sufficiency in food and raw materials.

Thanks to the correct policy of the Government of the Republic for the development of agriculture and the patriotic campaigns of the peasants for increasing production, we have solved the food problem in the main.

Grain production in the northern half of Korea well exceeded the level of 1939, the year of the highest crop yield during Japanese imperialist rule. Compared with 1944, grain output grew by 10.4 per cent in 1948 and by 9.8 per cent even in 1949, a year of severe drought. In 1949 cotton output increased by 91 per cent compared with 1944.

Due to the agrarian reform there was a marked improvement in the material and cultural standards of the peasants.

According to a survey conducted in 1949 by the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea in 42 farm villages containing 2,466 peasant families, the number of primary schools was 7 times larger than that before liberation, clubs and libraries—48 times, primary school children—2.5 times, secondary school boys and girls—10 times and university students—6 times.

Grain output in these villages totalled 150,000 sacks in 1949, whereas it was 117,000 sacks in 1944. In 1944 the peasants in these villages received a loan of 8,000 sacks of food grain from the landlords because they were short of provisions after they had paid
their farm rent. In 1949, however, they paid 33,000 sacks of tax in kind to the state and kept all the rest of the grain harvest for their own use. Of this 10,000 sacks will remain in stock till the next harvest, even if they market 22,000 sacks.

The new houses which have been built in these villages in the past three years represent 18 per cent of all the farmhouses there, and the number of the cattle bought in by the peasants is 628.

These facts, which are common in our rural areas, show clearly the extent of agricultural progress in the northern half of our country and of the improvement in the material and cultural standards of the peasants in the five years since liberation.

The state farms also play an important role in the development of our agriculture at present.

The northern half of our country has 15 state crop and stock farms and nine breeding stock farms. They disseminate new farming methods and stock-raising techniques among the peasants and demonstrate the superiority of large-scale mechanized farming. They supply large amounts of select seed and breeding stock to the rural villages.

On the decision of the Government of the Republic, farm machine hire stations were set up for the first time in the northern half in 1950. This makes it possible to improve farming methods and quickly introduce advanced agricultural techniques in the rural districts. Through the work of the farm machine hire stations, our peasants get the personal knowledge of the advantages of farm mechanization.

One of the tasks we are confronted with is that of training our own cadres.

The future development and prosperity of our country depends entirely on whether or not we train competent cadres capable of running the state and building up the economy and culture. This is because cadres decide everything and, moreover, we are very short of our own cadres.

Accordingly, we are giving profound attention to public education and the building up of culture and have gained considerable results in this field.
In 1949 there were 2.8 times more primary schools in the northern half of Korea than in 1944 and the number of pupils in them was 1.7 times bigger. The number of junior and senior secondary schools increased 22-fold and their student body 23-fold. The number of specialized schools grew 12-fold and their enrolment 10-fold.

In the years of Japanese imperialist rule we did not have a single college. Today, however, over 18,000 students are studying at 15 institutions of higher learning.

What is more, we are training tens of thousands of cadres at technical schools in factories and training centres for cadres on the job.

In the past we had no experience in training technical cadres on our own. But beginning from this year we are sending to the workplaces engineers and assistant engineers that we have trained ourselves. In 1949 the number of graduates of specialized technical schools exceeded 3,500 and more than 1,100 graduated from higher educational institutions.

The campaign against illiteracy, which was unfolded extensively among the masses of the people, has now ended on the whole. At present over 2,300 elementary and middle schools for adults have been set up to give them systematic education, and about 160,000 working men and women are studying there.

Considerable success has also been achieved with regard to the public health service. Medical establishments have been set up in all parts of the northern half of Korea; various infectious diseases which were evil aftermaths of Japanese imperialist rule have been wiped out and many holiday camps and sanatoria have been opened for the workers.

As you see, enormous successes have been attained in the five years since liberation in building up an independent democratic state.

What has brought our people such brilliant success?

First, it is the establishment of the people’s government in the northern half of Korea, the fact that the democratic reforms carried out by this government are perfectly in accord with the interests of our people and that these reforms guarantee a democratic
development of our country; secondly, the Government of our Republic has the support of all the people who are united in the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea, and the Workers’ Party, which enjoys the support of the broadest masses of the people and is the most powerful political party in Korea, is the guiding force of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea; thirdly, we correctly assimilated the rich experiences of the Soviet Union and the People’s Democracies in our work.

All this guaranteed the victory of the people’s democratic system in the northern half of our country.

The people in the northern half of our country are now advancing, with firm confidence, for the building of a unified and independent democratic state.

3

The situation in the southern half of our country is diametrically different from that in the northern half.

The US imperialists rejected the decision of the Moscow Three Foreign Ministers Conference on Korea and deliberately frustrated the work of the USSR-US Joint Commission. They are converting south Korea into a military base for invading the East and into a supplier of raw materials and a market for the monopoly capitalists of Wall Street.

They turned down the just proposal put forward by the Government of the Soviet Union on simultaneously withdrawing the troops of the Soviet Union and the United States from Korea early in 1948 and leaving the solution of the Korean question to the Korean people themselves.

They brought up the Korean question illegally in the UN General Assembly, fabricated the UN Temporary Commission on Korea by
using their voting machine and, assisted by this commission, held separate elections in south Korea on May 10, 1948.

All the patriotic political parties, public organizations and people of Korea put up stubborn opposition to the holding of separate elections in south Korea and the establishment of a separate puppet government.

A joint conference of representatives of political parties and public organizations of north and south Korea was held in April 1948 on the proposal of the Workers’ Party. The conference was attended by representatives of 56 Right, Left and middle-of-the-road political parties and public organizations with a total membership of over 10 million. Only traitors like Syngman Rhee did not participate in it.

The April north-south joint conference fully exposed the UN Temporary Commission on Korea as a tool for carrying out the US imperialists’ policy of colonial plunder. It decided on rejecting the separate elections to be held in south Korea on May 10 and declared that the Korean people would not recognize a government established by these separate elections that were ruinous for the nation, and that such a government could in no way represent the Korean people.

However, the south Korean reactionary clique and the US imperialists held separate elections in south Korea by force of arms, terrorism and blackmail and concocted a reactionary Syngman Rhee puppet government composed of traitors to the nation, former lackeys of Japanese imperialism and the stooges of US imperialism.

Among the so-called “members of the National Assembly” there is not a single representative of the workers or the peasants, who constitute the overwhelming majority of the Korean people. This alone is enough to show the anti-popular nature of the reactionary puppet regime.

The establishment of a puppet regime through separate elections in south Korea is a trick of the US imperialists and their lackeys to perpetuate the artificial division of Korea. That is why the leaders of some 30 patriotic political parties and public organizations in north and south Korea held another conference in June 1948 and declared
the separate elections illegal and, at the same time, decided on holding general elections throughout north and south Korea, founding a unified Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and establishing a democratic central government.

The general elections to the Supreme People’s Assembly of Korea were held throughout north and south Korea on August 25, 1948. Although the pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation, relying on the arms of the US imperialists, resorted to harsh repression and terrorism, 77.52 per cent of the voters participated in the elections in the southern half. In the north, where the elections were held in an atmosphere of freedom, 99.97 per cent of the voters went to the polls.

As you see, the Supreme People’s Assembly is the supreme legislative body of Korea established through all-Korea elections. The First Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly proclaimed our country to be the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, adopted the Constitution and formed the Government of the DPRK.

The Constitution of the DPRK confirmed by law the successes of all the democratic reforms carried out in the northern half of our country, granted true democratic rights to the working people and opened up broad vistas for founding a unified, democratic state. The Constitution expresses the centuries-old desire of our people.

The Government of the Republic which was approved at the First Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly of Korea consisted of a coalition cabinet, and embraced representatives of major political parties and public organizations of north and south Korea. Thus, the Government of the DPRK, formed as a result of the general elections, is the only legal government in Korea and enjoys the support of the entire Korean people.

At the request of the First Session of the Supreme People’s Assembly of Korea, the Soviet Government withdrew its troops from our territory, recognized the DPRK and established diplomatic relations with our country.

The founding of the DPRK marked a new stage in the struggle of our people to build a unified, independent country. All the patriotic
political parties, public organizations and masses of Korea, firmly rallied around the Government of the People’s Republic, are making a renewed effort to consolidate the political and economic base of the Republic and promote national reunification.

The heroic people of south Korea are stepping up a vigorous nationwide struggle to overthrow the Syngman Rhee puppet regime which the US imperialists and their stooges have rigged up against the will of the people.

North and south Korea are treading different paths. As the days go by, the sharp contrast between the political and economic situations in north and south Korea reveals more convincingly which is the right path leading the country and the people to prosperity.

US troops still remain in south Korea even though Soviet troops have withdrawn from north Korea. The US imperialists have concluded the ROK-US Military Agreement and the ROK-US Agreement on Economic Assistance with the anti-popular puppet regime and have converted the southern half of our country into their colony.

The southern half of our country ruled by the treacherous Syngman Rhee clique has been transformed into a land of darkness where reactionary terrorism and violent repression prevail.

Under the patronage of the US imperialists and their agent, the “UN Commission on Korea”, the treacherous Syngman Rhee clique is harshly suppressing not only the Left forces but also the Right elements who are discontented with its reactionary rule. The Syngman Rhee police have arrested and imprisoned 12 “national assemblymen” in violation of the law which provides for the “inviolability” of their person.
Syngman Rhee murdered Kim Ku, a Right-wing leader, simply because he had advocated the peaceful reunification of the country. The Syngman Rhee clique has slaughtered many progressives in the field of culture for not issuing a statement in support of the puppet government.

Backed up by the bayonets of the US imperialists, this clique is trying desperately to maintain its rule in south Korea by means of suppression, terrorism and massacre, and is even going as far as destroying people en masse.

The appalling situation in south Korea brought about by the reactionary rule of the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee clique, their stooge, is calling forth the indignation and strong resistance of the working masses.

An extensive popular guerrilla struggle to oppose the colonial policy of the US imperialists and overthrow Syngman Rhee’s reactionary ruling system is now under way throughout south Korea.

In this situation, an urgent need arose for all patriotic political parties and public organizations of our country to take further steps to promote the struggle for territorial integrity and national reunification.

With a view to rallying all the patriotic, democratic forces in a more vigorous struggle against reaction, late in June 1949, we organized the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea, which embraced 71 political parties and public organizations of north and south Korea.

The inaugural meeting of the DFRK discussed the situation in our country and put forward a proposal for attaining peaceful reunification in order to liberate the people in the southern half who are groaning under the terrorist rule of the Syngman Rhee puppet regime, foil the scheme of the Syngman Rhee clique to launch a fratricidal war at the instigation of the US imperialists and save the country and the people.

The justness of this proposal is clear for all to see. It demanded the immediate withdrawal of US troops from south Korea and the UN
Commission on Korea, a tool serving the aggressive ends of the US imperialists, and the guaranteeing of the legal status of the democratic political parties and public organizations and freedom of activity for them. It demanded that Korea be reunified peacefully through general elections throughout north and south Korea free from foreign interference, and that all the Korean people be left alone to choose their own state system.

This proposal on peaceful reunification won the enthusiastic support of all the Korean people. But it did not tally in the least with the aggressive and anti-popular aims of the US imperialists and the reactionaries, their lackeys, who were pursuing a colonial enslavement policy in south Korea. The Syngman Rhee clique could not accept this proposal because they were aware that they could only maintain their rule under the patronage of the US armed forces. By turning down this proposal, they betrayed their true colours ever more clearly as they feared and opposed the Korean people.

The Korean people have risen in a struggle to overthrow the Syngman Rhee puppet regime that is obstructing the peaceful reunification of the country. This greatly alarms the US imperialists. The US imperialists have instigated the Syngman Rhee clique to launch frequent armed clashes along the 38th parallel in order to seek a pretext to interfere in the internal affairs of Korea. At the same time, they have resorted to such underhand moves as getting the Korean question illegally placed again on the agenda of the Fourth Session of the UN General Assembly and dispatching the third UN Commission on Korea by using their voting machine.

The Korean people are well aware of the objectives of the UN Commission on Korea.

The first UN Temporary Commission on Korea, a tool of the US imperialists in carrying out their colonial enslavement policy in Korea, was sent to our country to legalize the separate elections in south Korea and the establishment of the Syngman Rhee puppet regime. The mission of the second UN Commission on Korea was to justify the Syngman Rhee puppet regime terrorizing and massacring
the people under the manipulation of the US imperialists. And the third UN Commission on Korea aims at saving the Syngman Rhee puppet regime from ruin and making Korea a permanent colony of US imperialism.

Of late, with the start of aggressive acts by the new UN Commission on Korea, the treacherous Syngman Rhee clique has been fussing about introducing a “UN police force” into south Korea under the manipulation of the US imperialists and is even preparing for the “formation of an alliance” with the Japanese imperialists.

However, none of the aggressive intrigues of the US imperialists will ever be realized. The Korean people do not want uninvited guests who are encroaching upon the independence and freedom of their country.

It must be obvious to the US imperialists that the Korean people today are different from what they were yesterday.

Our people are not a flock of sheep that allows a pack of wolves to eat them up.

Today the Korean people have their motherland, the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, and a powerful political and economic base. In the course of building up democracy in the northern half of Korea in the five years since liberation, our people have personally experienced true freedom and happiness as a people in power. The Korean people, who have been freed from 36 years of colonial oppression by Japanese imperialism, will not yield to anyone the rights and freedom they have won and will not become colonial slaves again. The Korean people will never allow the US imperialists to subjugate and plunder their country.

Our people have now risen in a struggle to implement the proposal of the DFRK on the country’s peaceful reunification in order to attain complete national independence, develop the country along democratic lines and win peaceful reunification. A graphic illustration of this struggle can be seen in the fact that the people in the northern half of Korea are energetically building democracy to strengthen the political and economic base of our Republic and that the people in the
southern half are putting up mass resistance and a constantly mounting guerrilla struggle against the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee treacherous clique, their lackeys.

The Korean people are not alone by any means in their just struggle to win their country’s complete freedom and independence. People all over the world who love peace and democracy are supporting our struggle.

The Workers’ Party, the DFRK led by the Party, the Government of the DPRK and all the Korean people rallied around it, will advance vigorously for the complete independence and reunification of their country and for peace and democracy, and they will certainly win the final victory.
I am glad to hear that your company is on a regular footing and you are all in good health.

If you have received three or four months of training, you must be able to drive motorcycles pretty well by now.

Drivers should be trained to drive on narrow lanes besides highways. When their machines break down, they should be able to locate the fault at once and repair them by themselves. In wartime mechanics cannot set right every disabled car. So, drivers must be able not only to run their vehicles expertly, but also repair them in time, when they are out of order. Your machines have simple air-pressure gauges and various tools, so you can repair any mechanical failure if only you have the technical know-how. Drivers should do their utmost to learn the techniques and be familiar with their cars.

Machine-gunners and their assistants should also learn how to drive. In battle drivers may get wounded or be absent. If the others do not know how to drive the machines, what would then happen? The motorcycles will be redundant and all their crews cannot but drop out of the ranks. Therefore, both the driver and the rest of the crew should be able to drive.
The motorcycle is a good combat equipment that can take you to Seoul from here with just a tankful of gasoline. You must look after such fine equipment with utmost care.

The machine guns you have are also powerful, precious weapons, indeed. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle many comrades shed their blood to possess a machine gun. At that time, one machine gun was enough to contain an entire enemy company or battalion.

We have these good modern weapons and equipment today. How fortunate this is! As those who have combat experience know, a weapon, however powerful, cannot display its might to the full if the soldier who handles it is not proficient enough. If you cannot repair your weapons on the battlefield, it is most exasperating and, in the long run, you get so confused that you cannot fight the way you should. So, you must always study the efficiency and technical property of your machine guns and train yourselves to mend them promptly whenever they need repairs.

Your motorcycles are excellent for pursuing the enemy and for street fighting. They already demonstrated their power in chasing the enemy during World War II.

In order to hit more foes by using these vehicles, you must first be skilled in shooting while at a standstill and, particularly, while on the run as well. Then, you can pursue the enemy well. This is good because we can hit the retreating enemies, being right at their heels, and without our forces suffering any casualties. It is no easy task, of course, to shoot well while on the run. Without hard training, it is impossible to accurately hit a target from a moving motorcycle. Therefore, you should have greater practice in firing when on the move.

I was told that 78 per cent of your company have combat experience. This is an excellent company. Many of you fought for the Chinese revolution; in fact, we Koreans shed much blood for the Chinese revolution in the past. What a great honour it is that you took part in the Chinese revolution and are now taking part in the Korean revolution! If you fought well for the Chinese revolution in the past,
you should do the same for the Korean revolution today.

You must clearly understand why your parents and brothers had to leave their homes and live pitiable lives in an alien land. We Koreans were obliged to go abroad because we had no power. Because of this, they led miserable lives, were harshly exploited and oppressed and were finally forced out of their own country to live in foreign lands.

Today our people have regained their lost country and seized power in their own hands. The exploited and humiliated are masters of their land and factories now due to the democratic reforms and enjoy happy life.

You are sons and daughters of workers and peasants. In order not to undergo again the slavery of the past, you comrades should firmly safeguard the results of the democratic reforms and strongly defend the motherland. This is what your fathers and mothers want and what the country and the people want. You should be fully aware of the reason why you serve the People’s Army and should strive to carry out the revolutionary tasks given to you by the country and the people.

At present the Syngman Rhee puppet clique are running wild to swallow up the northern half of Korea at the instigation of the US imperialists. If the US imperialists and their stooges attack us recklessly, we will wipe them out, liberate the south Korean people and reunify the country.

For this purpose, you should firmly arm yourselves politically and ideologically and be prepared well militarily. Of course, this is no easy task. You should keep enhancing your political and ideological preparedness by taking an active part in political lessons and political life, get energetic military training to learn a lot of things necessary for actual battle and strengthen your bodies. The more you sweat while exercising, the less blood will you shed and more enemies will you kill in battle. You have done well so far, but you must do better in future. Because you have combat experience and good equipment your company will be a very strong one, if only you attain skills through proper training. Both drivers and machine-gunners should
train themselves intensively so as to know their weapons and equipment inside out.

In particular, officers of the company must raise their technical level. They must not be complacent just because they have acquired some knowledge. We need to learn more. Only when officers are well versed in the structures and functions of combat equipment and have a high technical level, can they teach their men well. All officers of the company are young and very promising, so they should continue to train themselves well, acquire techniques actively and study hard.

Next, the company’s barrack life should be strengthened and the living conditions of the soldiers adequately guaranteed.

Your barracks are very good; they are large and clean. The berths and beddings are well-arranged and the rooms are neat and tidy. The company is like a family, so the whole company should live in a room rather than live by platoons.

The sergeant major of the company should always be with the men and even sleep in the same room. Only then can he understand their living conditions down to the minutest detail, help solve their knotty problems promptly and guide their barrack service correctly.

Particularly, the squad leaders should set example in barrack service. Then the soldiers will follow their example and live in accordance with the regulations. But it is regrettable that the squad leaders do not even know how to wear foot cloths properly, which seems quite a simple thing to do. You are mistaken if you think you need not use foot cloths in accordance with the regulation because you are mechanized troops. All troops, whether mechanized or infantry, should put on their foot cloths as required by the regulation. Otherwise, they get footsore and cannot march.

The company’s armoury should be arranged in such a way that the soldiers can pick up their rifles easily when going out of the barracks.

The repair and maintenance shop is well built, but the defect is that it has no door. You should fix it right away. It will prevent dust from coming into the shop and be convenient in guarding it also.

The soldiers should be issued another sheet each, so that they can
spread one over the mattress and one under the blanket. This will be a more hygienic way of sleeping.

The soldiers should be issued cigarettes instead of tobacco. Tobacco causes considerable inconvenience because paper has to be carried to roll cigarettes. Tobacco is good for old folk smoking pipes, but not for the young. Cigarettes are better for them.

I was told that the soldiers wash their own clothes. The regiment should have washing machines and do all the laundry for them.

You are not yet skilled in boiling rice. You have scorched the rice and made the soup too salty. Salty soup kills your appetite. If you do not know how to boil the rice on a coal fire, you should learn to do it on a wood fire and, when you get skilful enough, you should start using coal. It is very hot in the mess hall. The temperature should be adjusted so that the soldiers can take their meals in a refreshing atmosphere, after training.

The soldiers should be supplied with an adequate amount of meat, fish and vegetables. In the light of the present situation in our country there is no reason why we cannot provide them in time with meat, fish and the like. We can certainly do so. Sugar, too, should be regularly issued. When the soldiers are well-fed they can register successes in training and display Herculean strength.
LET US STEP UP COMBAT PREPARATIONS

Talk to Soldiers of Unit No. 749
of the Korean People’s Army
June 5, 1950

You have done many things in a short span of time. The unit has been built up, perfect preparations have been made for mobilization and the morale of the soldiers is high. I am satisfied with this and express my thanks to all the soldiers of the unit.

At present the situation in our country is very tense. The US imperialist aggressors and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique have stepped up war preparations on a full-scale basis and embarked on more undisguised military provocations against the northern half of Korea. Of late, the enemy has been making regular armed intrusions into the areas of Yangyang, Ongjin and Mt. Songak. Needless to say, they are severely punished and repulsed every time by our brave soldiers of the Security Forces and the People’s Army.

But the enemy does not give up his aggressive designs. He runs as wild as ever, manning enormous forces of aggression along the 38th demarcation line, thus leading the situation to the brink of war. There is every indication that an all-out war unleashed by the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique may break out in our country at any moment.

In the light of this tense situation, the units of the People’s Army have the Herculean task of making full preparations to go into battle at any time. In order to meet the present situation you should keep
yourselves alert, and ready as never before, and increase combat preparedness of the unit so as to counter the enemy whenever he attacks us.

For the unit to be more combat ready, it is essential to groom the soldiers firmly on political and ideological lines. By intensifying their ideological education you must make sure that all the soldiers are clearly aware of the justness of our revolutionary cause, that they have a firm conviction of victory in the revolution—a conviction that we shall triumph, and imperialism will fall inevitably. They should also be educated to love their country and people ardently, and give up their lives readily so as to safeguard the motherland from the enemy’s encroachment.

Next, we must increase combat training. At present, certain units are somewhat negligent in this. They cannot raise their combat efficiency or perfect their combat readiness if they neglect their training. You should make the most of time and intensify combat training. The unit should never be allowed to allocate just a little time to training, or to take it lightly.

In training, attention should be primarily paid to helping all soldiers in getting to know their weapons and equipment, and acquire the most accurate marksmanship. Artillerymen especially should be skilled in the use of their guns, and trained to be good shots. To improve the rate of hits they should fire their guns or rifles frequently. It is necessary to intensify firing practice and conduct different kinds of ball firing repeatedly, so as to train soldiers in firing. They should have plenty of practice also in grenade-throwing.

It is also necessary to intensify marching practice. Thus, all the soldiers will be able to march quickly with a load of 30-40 kilograms on the back, and learn how to forestall and wipe out the enemy whom they may encounter on the march.

You should have a lot of attack and defence training in mountainous regions. You should intensify training in offence tactics in populated areas and training in crossing rivers by using personal equipment. Anti-aircraft training should be given properly, too.
A lot of training, particularly, should be given to toughen soldiers in field conditions. They should be made to cover long distances often, driving the kitchen cart. They should also camp in deep forests and cook their meals in the open. It is a good idea to make every soldier build huts or pitch tents after a march, and dig wells for drinking water, just as the anti-Japanese guerrillas did. Through these practices, they will be more toughened and equipped with a lot of experience which can be applied to actual battle.

By strengthening combat and political training, all the soldiers should be so prepared as to be able to fight the enemy bravely at any time and also be able to undertake the duties of a higher rank. This will enable every man and noncommissioned officer to perform the duties of a higher rank satisfactorily, should the Party find it necessary in case of emergency. In particular, noncommissioned officers must be capable of assuming the duties of the platoon leader at any time.

Next, the unit should have all the men, weapons and equipment according to the footing and hand grenades should be issued to every soldier. You should put all the guns in good order so that you can use them at any time. You should get more shells in order to keep the required quantity for battle in a few days.

Logistical supplies should be prepared in plenty. You should make sure that provisions and clothes are issued in time and that the horses and fodder are ready. Sufficient means of transport should be procured and be in good condition so as to get going at any moment.

By doing this, you can make sure that the whole unit is fully ready to battle with the drawing of a trigger, the moment the enemy attacks us. If the US imperialists and their stooges dare to unleash a war of aggression against the northern half of Korea, we must take a decisive counteroffensive at once and deal a deadly blow to the enemy, and drive the US imperialists out of our territory and reunify the country.

In the light of the situation which is getting tenser every day, the Party demands that all units of the People’s Army further strengthen their combat preparation. I hope that you will inform all members of the unit of the prevailing situation and this demand of the Party.
In the light of the acute situation prevailing in our country today, I am going to refer to some immediate tasks facing the interior service organizations.

The situation in the country has now reached a very grave stage because of the war policy and military provocations of the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique.

The US imperialists have for a long time now cherished a wild dream of occupying the whole of Korea to use it as a stepping stone for their aggression in Asia. In order to realize their aggressive ambition the US imperialists have pushed ahead in earnest with preparations to invade the whole of Korea, since the first days of their landing in south Korea, while at the same time carrying out their policy of colonial enslavement.

The US imperialists deliberately baffled the work of the USSR-US Joint Commission and caused the May 10 separate elections to be held in south Korea to rig up the puppet regime, in wanton violation of the international commitments on the Korean question. They instigated the Syngman Rhee puppet clique to set up the National
Defence Army and expand its troops greatly through a forcible conscription of young people. They have also shipped into south Korea various kinds of weapons with which to arm the puppet forces. Furthermore, they have built military installations on a large scale and deployed massive troops along the 38th parallel. The enemies are running recklessly “like a puppy unafraid of a tiger”, bringing the situation to the brink of war. Nowadays the Syngman Rhee puppet gang are raising the “march north” racket more vociferously; they are bragging, “We will take breakfast at Haeju, lunch at Pyongyang and supper at Sinuiju.” Meanwhile, they have proclaimed “martial law” all over the south Korean territory and are inciting military provocations more maliciously than ever before along the 38th parallel and on the east and west coasts. A few days ago, they intruded into the area of Pyoksong County in Hwanghae Province; they set fire to a village and kidnapped some inhabitants and mercilessly bombarded the Pyoksong County seat.

At a time when the enemy’s military provocations against the northern half of Korea were ceaselessly going on, the US imperialist warmongers headed by Dulles sneaked into south Korea on a “mission” and inspected the 38th parallel on June 18. Now, because of the moves of the US imperialists and the puppet Syngman Rheeites, the situation in our country is so tense that war may break out at any moment.

What shall we do if the US imperialists and Syngman Rhee puppet clique start a reckless war against the northern half of Korea?

Of course, we have made sincere efforts up till now to reunify our country in a peaceful way, and we will do the same in the future, too. However, if the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee puppet gang dare to start a war, we cannot sit back with folded arms; we will deliver strong counterblows to the enemy.

If there is a war, we shall surely win. The enemy’s force is not so strong, although they are presently boasting about it. South Korean puppet troops have one fatal weakness. They were enlisted against their will, so they are ideologically weak, cowardly and servile.
Therefore, we have nothing to fear even if the enemy makes a reckless attack upon us. And yet, we must not sit idle.

In the face of the enemy’s manoeuvres to unleash a war, interior service personnel should intensify revolutionary vigilance and closely watch their movements, keeping themselves fully ready. Only then can we hit back immediately whenever the enemy unleashes war and safeguard our Party and the Government of the Republic, as well as the lives and property of the people.

First of all, you must intensify the struggle against the class enemies and counterrevolutionaries who are opposed to our Party, the Government of the Republic and our people.

Of course, this is part of the daily routine of the interior service personnel. But the more acute the country’s situation becomes, the more intensified it must be. The class enemies and counter-revolutionaries work secretly in a peacetime but, once the war breaks out, they may come out openly against our Party, the Government of the Republic and our people. This could cause irretrievably grave consequences. Bearing this in mind, you, interior servicemen, must strengthen the struggle against the class enemies and counterrevolutionaries and expose all of them. Now that the situation in the country is tense, they may resort to all sorts of tricks. They may set false rumours afloat to cause war phobia among the population and throw our work out of gear. Therefore, any false rumours must not be taken lightly. No matter how cunningly the class enemies and counterrevolutionaries hide and work among us, they will be exposed to a man, if the interior servicemen maintain vigilance and work hard relying on the masses.

Our defences along the 38th parallel and coastlines must be further strengthened.

The US imperialists and Syngman Rhee puppet clique infiltrate many spies through the 38th parallel and coastlines into the northern half of Korea. You must intensify your guard along the 38th parallel and coastlines. Then you would never miss a spy. Our interior servicemen have so far arrested quite a few spies who have come
through the 38th parallel and coastlines. They wiped out in a wink the Horim Unit, an armed espionage band of the puppet army dispatched into Kangwon Province, and thus demonstrated our might to the enemy. This is excellent. But you must not rest content with this success. The enemy may resort to other methods hereafter, for they have met with many setbacks in their infiltration. You, interior servicemen, should strengthen the defences on the 38th parallel and coastlines and continue to study the enemy’s methods of sending spies in order to capture all of them, despite whatever means they may adopt to infiltrate.

Keen attention should be paid to the protection of industrial establishments.

Before unleashing war, the enemy are hatching a plot to destroy our key industrial establishments through their agents and saboteurs. If the protection of the industrial establishments is taken lightly these days, they cannot be defended from the subversive activities of the secret agents and saboteurs and it will be a great hindrance in the rehabilitation and development of the national economy and in laying the foundation for an independent national economy. Hence, you, interior servicemen, should pay special attention to protecting the major industrial establishments.

At the same time, you must protect the railways properly. You must strictly guard such important points of railways as bridges and tunnels and keep necessary supplies in reserve to repair them promptly in case they are destroyed by war, so that there will be no drawback to the punctual running of trains and transport in an emergency.

In order to wage an effective struggle against the class enemies, counterrevolutionaries, spies and saboteurs, you must closely check and assess the composition of the population. If you are well acquainted with it, you will be able to distinguish friends from foe and forestall the insidious manoeuvres of the hostile elements. So, the interior servicemen must know the composition of the population in their charge like the palms of their hands.
The work of the self-defence corps should be improved. Its ranks should be increased and ideological education and military training among its members intensified, so that they can defend their native places by themselves.

One of the important tasks of the interior service organs is to protect state property and the lives and possessions of the people. To carry out this task, the interior servicemen should maintain social order and ensure complete social security. You should establish a well-regulated order and tighten control over all practices against it and prevent illegal activities.

An important task to be carried out right away is that of taking thorough anti-aircraft measures. Without taking such measures, we cannot protect the lives and property of the people from the enemy’s air raids, nor, in the long run, win the war. Therefore, taking flawless anti-aircraft measures is a factor that will guarantee victory in war. Henceforth, you, interior servicemen, should start taking such measures. You should repair and rearrange the existing air-raid shelters and dig new ones. You should also establish an air-raid alarm system and apprise the population of it, and have them regularly undergo anti-aircraft training. By intensifying this training, you can sharpen the vigilance of the people and evacuate them promptly in an organized way in case of an emergency.

You should intensify fire-drills and keep fire-extinguishers and other equipment in good shape, so that you can use them at a moment’s notice.

Full preparations should be made to mobilize vehicles immediately in case of an emergency. Each provincial interior service department must take charge of all trucks in the province and form a mobile transport unit. They should keep them on the alert, with a view to mobilizing them instantly if, in case of an emergency, transport vehicles are required by the People’s Army. While forming mobile transport units with the trucks in your provinces, you should open short-term teaching centres to train a large number of drivers.

You should improve the secret communications service and
properly reequip the telephone communications networks. The ranks of the confidential messengers must be augmented, and promptness and correctness ensured in the secret communications services. You must maintain communication equipment in good order and set up a communication post at every important place. This will effectively guarantee prompt and correct communications from the interior service substations up to the ministry.

Secrecy is life. The more acute the situation, the more important the problem of observing secrecy. Interior servicemen should guard their secrets with their own lives.

You should train many reserves of interior servicemen and thoroughly guarantee the purity of their ranks. Experience shows that an enemy lurking among us is more dangerous than a hundred enemies outside our ranks. Therefore, the affairs relating to personnel should be undertaken meticulously, so that no alien element can worm himself into the ranks of the interior servicemen.

You must reinforce the provincial security guards with good men and improve the organization of their guard duties.

In the light of the existing situation an emergency mobilization system must be established and interior servicemen should lodge together, so that they can be mobilized at a moment’s notice.

Today I have referred to a few points which interior servicemen must be aware of in their work with regard to the prevailing situation. Of course, we can hardly predict when war will start, because it will be unleashed not by us but by the war fanatics—the US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique. But there is every indication that the enemy may attack soon. As the situation is very critical, you must go back immediately and report to the provincial Party committees on the tasks we have assigned to you today and promptly carry them out.